

MSX2 TECHNICAL HANDBOOK

Edited by: ASCII Systems Division
Published by: ASCII Corporation - JAPAN
First edition: March 1987

Text files typed by: Nestor Soriano (Konami Man) - SPAIN
March 1997

Changes from the original:

none

==

CHAPTER 1 - MSX SYSTEM OVERVIEW

The MSX2 was designed to be fully compatible with the MSX1, but there are many enhanced features in the MSX2. Chapter 1 introduces the enhanced features of the MSX2, and shows block figures and standard tables. This information is conceptual, but will be needed to understand descriptions in volume 2 and later.

1. FROM MSX1 TO MSX2

To begin with, let us look back to the original purpose or intention of MSX and then sum up the transition from MSX1 to MSX2.

1.1 What is MSX?

MSX was announced as a new 8-bit computer standard in the autumn of 1983. In early days the word "compatibility" was not understood correctly and there were misunderstandings that MSX could execute programs from other computers. Since MSX can execute programs only for MSX, it was said that there was no difference from the PC series (NEC) or FM series (Fujitsu) personal computers, which could only execute programs using their format.

Several years passed before personal computers became popular. In the early days only dedicated enthusiasts bought computers, which were difficult to use, and, needless to say, incompatible. They were satisfied to tinker with the computer and study it. But now computer use has expanded to include several classes of users. In other words, the personal computer is becoming a commodity item such as televisions or radio cassette recorders. Therefore, "compatibility" is coming to be a problem. If each TV station needs a different television set or if each radio cassette recorder needs a different tape, do you suppose they would be popular? Software or programs of the computer as a home electric product must be compatible.

The design team for MSX considered these problems. Since a computer is most powerful when left flexible and easy to expand, a "final" standard format was not practical. There are too many matters to define and hardware is constantly improving. Therefore MSX started with fixing format of the most

fundamental hardware and software such as DOS and BASIC, and the hardware bus which is the basis for expansion. Since the computer is used by itself and does not interact with other computers, the problem is small. But formats must be fixed if the computer is to be connected to "peripherals" and handle or accumulate various data. Fortunately MSX had the approval of many home appliance electric companies and an MSX format was established early. This allowed the system to be well known so that several manufacturers could make compatible peripherals for the MSX standard.

Some of the useful features included in the MSX system include the use of double precision BCD for normal BASIC arithmetic and the same file format as MS-DOS. The real capabilities of the MSX machine will come to light as it is used across several fields.

1.2 Environment of the MSX

Over one million MSX machines had been sold by December 1985 and are used mainly as game machines or primers by primary and junior high school students. But MSX use has gradually spread to include such uses as communication terminals, Japanese word processing, factory automation, and audio visual control. For improving its capabilities, a disk system and MSX-DOS have been prepared, and languages such as C, FORTH, and LOGO are available. BIOS, which is the collection of input/output routines in BASIC ROM, and BDOS, which resides in the disk interface ROM and has compatibility with CP/M system calls have both been improved. So an excellent programming environment is now available. Chinese Character input, light pen and mouse input, and the RS-232C interface have been standardised, and standardisation of other peripherals is proceeding. The keyboard and character set are consistent with international standards, and there are minor variations to satisfy the needs of individual countries.

Several new peripherals have been developed. Standard devices include printers, disk drives, and mice; audio/visual devices include laser drives, VTRs, synthesizer controllers, and video acquisition systems. Factory Automation devices include robot controllers, room temperature controllers, various adaptors for modem and telephone lines, and a health controller combined with a hemadynamometer has been developed. So you can see that the potential uses for MSX computers has really grown.

Many applications other than games are now supplied on disks and are becoming more practical. There are now Japanese word processors capable of clause transformation, data bases which can exchange data with higher-level systems, and CAI and CAD systems.

1.3 Extended Contents of MSX2

MSX2 was announced in May 1985 as a system having upgraded compatibility with MSX. Programs created under the MSX environment can be executed on MSX2 without any modifications, even at the assembly language level. Data and

programs stored on cassette tapes or disks can be used without modification.

Features added by the MSX2 system are improved screen display, higher resolution, more colours available, and higher graphics speed. A battery-powered clock and RAMDISK feature have also been added. In this manual the name MSX2 refers to the computer made along the MSX2 standard and the name MSX1 refers to the computer made along the previous MSX standard.

System configuration is shown in Figures 1.1 and 1.2 and Table 1.1 and indicate the differences between MSX1 and MSX2. The differences are described as follows:

Table 1.1 MSX2/MSX1 standard comparison

		MSX2	|	MSX1	
CPU		Z80A or equivalent (clock 3.579545 MHz +- 1%)	|		
		48K (MSX-BASIC version 2.0)	|	32K (MSX-BASIC ver 1.0)	
ROM		MAIN-ROM 32K	|	MAIN-ROM 32K	
		SUB-ROM 16K	|		
MEMORY	RAM	64K or more	|	8K or more	
	VRAM	64K or 128K	|	16K	
LSI for VDP		V-9938 (MSX-VIDEO)	|	TMS9918 or equivalent	
CMT		FSK 1200/2400 baud	|		
PSG		8 octaves tri-chord output (AY-3-8910 compatible)	|		
Keyboard		Alphanumeric	|	Alphanumeric	
		Graphic symbols	|	Graphic symbols	
Floppy disk (*)		Based on MS-DOS format	|		
Printer		8-bit parallel	|	(*)	
ROM cartridge		I/O bus with slot for game cartridge and expansion bus	|		
Joystick		2	|	1 or 2 (*)	
CLOCK-IC		Standard	|	(*)	
RAM disk feature		Standard	|	Different for each maker	

(*) Optional

Figure 1.1 MSX2 system configuration

1. Minimum configuration

Sound I/O <--+ Video I/O Printer I/O Cartridge Slot x 1
| ^ ^ |


```
| Cassette | --> |           | Keyboard |           |
-----
```

2. Software support range

```
Sound I/O <--+ Video I/O      Printer I/O      Cartridge Slot x 3
      |         ^             ^             |
      |         |             |             |
      |         +-----+-----+-----+
      |         | Z80A                      V   V   V | : : : : : : : : : : : :
      |         | ROM 32K                    | | | | | | | | | | | | | | :
      |         | RAM 64K                    | | | | | | | | | | | | | | :
Joystick x 2 --> | VDP(TMS9918)VRAM 16K      | | | | | | | | | | | | | | :
Trackball,      |                               +:-----+-----+-----+
:                               | : : : : : : : : : : : :
mouse, etc      | PPI   PSG                               | Extended Cartridge
      |         |                               | Slot x 4
-----+-----+-----+-----+
| Cassette | --> |           | Keyboard |           |
-----
```

* MSX-BASIC

BASIC has also been extended from version 1.0 to version 2.0 in order to support a new VDP, backup RAM, CLOCK-IC, and so on. Compatibility with MSX1 is maintained. When using the newly extended screen mode, be careful when specifying range, since ranges are slightly different in MSX2.

MSX2 has three types of memory, ROM, RAM, VRAM, which are described below.

ROM

Standard ROM size is 48K bytes. The MSX ROM uses only 32K bytes. The extra 16K bytes portion of the MSX2 contains routines supporting the extended features.

The "MAIN-ROM" consists of 32K bytes and contains the BASIC interpreter, and the "extended ROM" or "SUB-ROM" consists of 16K bytes and contains routines for the extended features.

RAM

Standard RAM size is 64K bytes, which is large enough so that MSX-DOS can be executed. The RAM size of MSX1 varied from 8K to 64K bytes, so in some cases large programs could not be executed without expanding RAM. MSX2 does not have this problem.

VRAM

A minimum of 64K bytes are required for VRAM in order to execute the added features of the screen display. VRAM is thus four times larger than in MSX1, which had only 16 K bytes VRAM. But many machines actually use a VRAM size of 128K bytes, which is eight times larger. Machines with 128K bytes VRAM can display 256 colours at the same time.

MSX machines which have 64K bytes VRAM but cannot be expanded to 128K bytes are marked "VRAM64K" on their catalogue or packaging.

* VDP

The MSX series computers use a video display processor (VDP) type LSI chip for controlling the screen output. The VDP used for MSX1 was the TMS9918, but the MSX2 uses the V9938 (MSX-VIDEO), which has upper and full compatibility with the TMS9918 and can execute software for TMS9918 without any modification.

Table 1.2 shows the VDP standard and Table 1.3 shows each screen mode. V9938

is an excellent LSI chip with digitising, superimposing, and hardware scrolling features. Chapter 4 of this manual describes it in detail.

Table 1.2 VDP specifications

		V9938		TMS9918
Screen mode		10 (see table 1.3)		4
Number of dots (horizontal x vertical)		512 x 212 maximum		256 x 192 maximum
		424 dots for vertical		
		can be achieved by		
		interlace feature		
Colour	Number of colours to specify	512 maximum		16 maximum
	Number of colours to display at the same time	256 maximum		16 maximum
Character set		alphanumeric + graphic symbols 256 characters 8 x 8 dots		
Sprite colour		16 maximum per sprite		1 per sprite
Palette feature		Yes		No

Table 1.3 V9938 screen mode

Mode	Number of characters	Dots	Colours	Palette	Sprite
------	-------------------------	------	---------	---------	--------

* Text 1	| 40 x 24	|	| 2 from 512	| Yes	| No
Text 2	| 80 x 24	|	| 4 from 512	| Yes	| No
* Multi-colour	|	| 64 x 48	| 16 from 512	| Yes	| Mode 1
* Graphic 1	| 32 x 24	|	| 16 from 512	| Yes	| Mode 1
* Graphic 2	|	| 256 x 192	| 16 from 512	| Yes	| Mode 1
Graphic 3	|	| 256 x 192	| 16 from 512	| Yes	| Mode 2
Graphic 4	|	| 256 x 212	| 16 from 512	| Yes	| Mode 2
Graphic 5	|	| 512 x 212	| 4 from 512	| Yes	| Mode 2
Graphic 6	|	| 512 x 212	| 16 from 512	| Yes	| Mode 2
Graphic 7	|	| 256 x 212	| 256 from 256	| No	| Mode 2

(*) Feature modes available from TMS9918 (however, palette feature only from V9938).

* Battery-powered Clock-IC

Battery-powered RAM is connected to the I/O port and is used for storage of setup information and for keeping track of the date and time. Setup information specifies the screen colour and mode at reset. This allows the user to set up the desired environment when the system is booted.

The CLOCK-IC works independently of the main power supply. After being set once new time settings are no longer required.

* RAM Disk Feature

When using BASIC on MSX1 machines which had 64K bytes RAM, only 32K bytes of RAM were used; the other 32K bytes were unused since the BASIC interpreter occupied the address space. On MSX2 machines this unused RAM can be used as a RAMDISK. For users who do not have a disk drive, this feature is very useful when loading or saving BASIC programs temporarily.

2. MSX2 SYSTEM OVERVIEW

This section gives a simple overview of the MSX2 software and hardware systems. To help you understand the concepts, diagrams which would be useful when developping software, such as VRAM map, the I/O map, and the interface standard, are found in the APPENDIX of this manual.

2.1 Hardware overview

First of all, look at the block diagram in Figure 1.3 to understand the hardware configuration of the MSX2 as a whole.

Figure 1.3 MSX2 block diagram

```

-----
| CPU Z80A |
-----

```

```
|
|-----|
+--|   |--| ROM 48K (MSX-BASIC ver 2.0) |
|   |   |-----| |
|   | S |-----|
|   | |--| MAIN RAM 64K |
|   | L |-----|
|   |   | :::::::::::::::::::: :
|   | O |::: MEMORY MAPPER ::: RAM 64K to 4M :
|   |   | :::::::::::::::::::: :
|   | T | :::::::::::::::::::: :
|   |   | ::: CARTRIDGE : I/O Cartridge (Disk, RS-232C)
|   |   | :::::::::::::::::::: RAM Cartridge
|-----| ROM Cartridge (Game, Application)
|                               Slot Expansion Box, Etc.
|
|-----| --- Joystick Input
+--| PSG AY-3 8910 |---|
|-----| --- Audio Output
|
| :::::::::::::::::::: :
|::: MSX-AUDIO (FM sound) ::: Audio Memory Maximum of 256K :
| :::::::::::::::::::: :
|
|-----|
+--| CASSETTE INTERFACE |::: Cassette
|-----|
|
|-----|
+--| PRINTER INTERFACE |::: Printer
|-----|
|
|-----|
+--| BATTERY BACKUP RAM + CLOCK IC |
|-----|
|
|-----| -----|
+--| PPI 8255A |-----+----| Keyboard |
|-----| |-----|
|           | |-----|
|           +----| Slot Holder |
|           |-----|
|
|-----|
| MSX-VIDEO |----- RGB/Video/Rf Output
|-----|
|
|-----: ::::::::::::::::::::
+--| VRAM 64K | VRAM 64K : Expansion RAM :
|-----: ::::::::::::::::::::
|
| ::::::::::::::::::::
|--: SUMPERIMPOSE :-----+--- Video Input
| :::::::::::::::::::: |
| |
| :::::::::::::::::::: |
+--: DIGITISE :-----+
| ::::::::::::::::::::
```


2.1.1.1 Address map

* Memory map

The MSX2 has three kinds of memory: MAIN-ROM, SUB-ROM, and RAM. Each memory resides in an independent 64K address space and is allocated as shown in Figure 1.4 (1) (each 64K space is called a "slot", which consists of four 16K areas called "pages"). Figures 1.3 (2) and (3) show memory usage when using BASIC and MSX-DOS, respectively.

For each class of memory, Figure 1.5 shows the memory map of Figure 1.4 (1)(a), Figure 1.6 for Figure 1.4 (1)(b), and Figure 1.7 for Figure 1.4 (1)(c). There is also a VRAM map and I/O map whose standards are defined. They are found in the APPENDIX.

Figure 1.4 MSX2 standard memory

(1) Physical allocation of standard memories

	(a)	(b)	(c)
0000H	-----	-----	-----
Page 0	| (1) |	| (3) |	| (4) |
	| MAIN-ROM |	| SUB-ROM |	| RAM |
4000H	| - - - - |	| - - - - |	| - - - - |
Page 1	| (2) |	| not |	| (5) |
	| MAIN-ROM |	| used |	| RAM |
8000H	| - - - - |	| - - - - |	| - - - - |
Page 2	| not |	| not |	| (6) |
	| used |	| used |	| RAM |
C000H	| - - - - |	| - - - - |	| - - - - |
Page 3	| not |	| not |	| (7) |
	| used |	| used |	| RAM |
	-----	-----	-----
	MAIN-ROM SLOT	SUB-ROM SLOT	64K-RAM SLOT

(2) CPU memory space when using BASIC

0000H	-----	-----
Page 0	| (1) |	| (3) |
	| MAIN-ROM |	| SUB-ROM |
4000H	| - - - - |	| - - - - |
Page 1	| (2) |	| 1 and 3 are
	| MAIN-ROM |	| switched
8000H	| - - - - |	| under certain
Page 2	| (6) |	| circumstances
	| RAM |	
C000H	| - - - - |	
Page 3	| (6) |	
	| RAM |	

(3) CPU memory space when using MSX-DOS

	| (4) |
	| RAM |
	- - - -
	| (5) |
	| RAM |
	- - - -
	| (6) |
	| RAM |
	- - - -
	| (7) |
	| RAM |

Note: Four pages (4 to 7) of 64K RAM are not always in the same slot.

Figure 1.5 MAIN-ROM memory map

0000H	-----
	| BIOS |

	| Entry |
015CH	|-----|
	| Additional |
	| BIOS Entry |
017AH	|-----|
	| Empty |
01B6H	|-----|
	| BASIC |
	| Interpreter |
7FFDH	|-----|
	| BDOS |
7FFFH	| Entry |
8000H	|-----|

Figure 1.6 SUB-ROM memory map

0000h	-----
	| BIOS |
	| Entry |
01FDH	|-----|
	| SLOT |
	| Management |
	| Control |
0336H	|-----|
	| BASIC |
	| Interpreter |
3FFFH	| and BIOS |

Figure 1.7 MAIN-RAM memory map

0000H	-----	
	| RAM Disk |	
	| Area |	
8000H	|-----|	
	| User |	
	| Area |	
F380H	|-----|	
	| System |	
	| Work Area |	
FD9AH	|-----|	
	| RAM Hook |	
	| Area |	
FFCAH	|-----|	
	| Expanded |	
	| BIOS call |	
	| Entry |	
FFCFH	|-----|	
	| Interrupt |	
	| Control |	--> Note: Used for the disk
	| Hook Area |	and RS-232 interface
FFD9H	|-----|	
	| Interrupt |	

	| Control |	--> Note: Used for the RS-232
	| Program |	interface
	| Area |	
FFE7H	|-----|	
	| New VDP |	
	| Register |	
	| Subroutine |	
	| Area |	
FFF7H	|-----|	
	| Main ROM |	
	| Slot |	
	| Address |	
FFF8H	|-----|	
	| Reserved |	
FFFCH	|-----|	
	| Slot |	
	| Selection |	
FFFFH	| Register |	

2.1.2 Interfacing with peripherals

MSX2 interfacing with peripherals is standardised in detail.

The following is a list of standardised interfaces:

- Display interface
- Audio interface
- Cassette interface
- General-purpose input/output interface
- Printer interface

The printer interface was optional on the MSX1 but is standard on the MSX2.

The disk drive interface is still an option but may be considered part of the standard specification because the MSX2 has 64K bytes of RAM.

For detailed information about the cartridge specifications, see the appendix.

2.2 Software Overview

The MSX has two software environments: BASIC mode and DOS mode. BASIC mode enables easy development and execution of MSX-BASIC program and is the mode most often used by most users. A major reason why the use of personal computers has grown is that BASIC is easy to use.

The DOS mode enables various languages, utilities, and applications using MSX-DOS. Most programs in DOS can be executed on different machines. The computers automatically compensate for any differences in hardware. This allows the user to use accumulated software resources efficiently. MSX-DOS uses the same disk format as MS-DOS, which is popular on 16-bit machines.

You

should also note that software for CP/M, which has a great deal of applications available for 8-bit machines, can be executed only by doing file conversions.

MSX2 TECHNICAL HANDBOOK

Edited by: ASCII Systems Division
Published by: ASCII Corporation - JAPAN
First edition: March 1987

Text files typed by: Nestor Soriano (Konami Man) - SPAIN
March 1997

Changes from the original:

- In description of REM statement, [<comment>] field has been added.
- In description of SGN function, "Examines the sign and returns..." has been substituted for "Examines the sign of <expression> and returns..."
- Descriptions for MSX DISK-BASIC statements DSKI\$ and DSKO\$ have been added.
- Descriptions for new commands on MSX DISK-BASIC version 2 have been added.
- In Table 2.20 (List of intermediate codes), the code "FC" is shown as assigned to "\" as it is actually, and not to "\$" as in the original text.
- In List 2.3 (Changing error handling routine), the third line of "command initialize", which is "LD HL,CMDHDAT" in the original, is corrected and substituted by "LD HL,HDAT".
- In section 5, "Notes on Software Development", subsection "BASIC version number", the part "and so on" has been added in point 1.
- In error code list, description of errors 72 to 75 have been added.

==

CHAPTER 2 - BASIC

The BASIC of MSX2 has been upgraded: the new version is called MSX BASIC version 2.0. And, when using a disk system, MSX DISK-BASIC can be used, which consists of MSX BASIC version 2.0 and additional instructions for disk operations. The following sections describe these two versions of BASIC.

1. LIST OF INSTRUCTIONS

First of all, the sentence and function for each instruction of BASIC are listed. Each instruction is listed in the format shown in Figure 2.1.

Figure 2.1 Instruction list format

----- Instruction format -----		
Instruction type	Function or action of instruction	

(a) Syntax of instructions

If there is an "*" followed by a keyword, it indicates that the syntax or function of the instruction has just been modified after version 1.0, or that the instruction has been added to version 2.0.

Descriptions of sentences use the following notational conventions.

- * [item] the item is optional
- * [, item ...] more items having the same form may appear
- * [item1 | item2] choose item1 or item2

And <filename>, which is used in the sentence, is a string specifying I/O devices or files for input/output in the format listed below. <Filename> for

a cassette files is a string consisting of any combination of up to 6 characters. <filename> for disk or RAM disk is a string, whose form is "<filename (up to 8 characters)> + <filename extension (up to 3 characters)>". <drive> is one of characters from A to H (depending on the number of drives connected).

```
"CAS: <filename>" ..... Cassette file
"MEM: <filename>" ..... RAM disk
"CRT:" ..... Text screen
"GRP:" ..... Graphic screen
"LPT:" ..... Printer
"<drive>:<filename>" .. Disk file
```

(b) Instruction type

There are four types of instructions:

- * Function Returns a certain value depending on the given parameter(s).
- * System variable Variables available from BASIC. Generally, assignment is allowed.
- * Statement Takes a certain action.
- * Command Gives an instruction to BASIC interpreter itself.

(c) Function or action of instruction

The following list gives a brief description of the action for each instruction. More detailed descriptions about instructions which have been modified or added at version 2.0 are given in section 2.

1.1 Instructions of MSX BASIC version 2.0

--- A ---

ABS (<expression>)
Function Returns absolute value of <expression>.

ASC (<string>)
Function Returns the code of the first character of <string>.

ATN (<expression>)
Function Returns arc tangent of <expression> in radians.

AUTO [<linenumber>[, <increment>]]
Command Produces line numbers automatically.

--- B ---

* BASE (<expression>)
System variable Contains the table address of the screen assigned on VRAM.

BEEP
Statement Produces beep to the audio terminal.

BIN\$ (<expression>)
Function Converts the value of <expression> to a string of binary expression, then returns its result.

BLOAD "<filename>"[,R[,offset]]
Command Loads an assembly language program.

BSAVE "<filename>",<start address>,<end address>[,<execution address>]
Command Saves an assembly language program.

--- C ---

CALL <extended statement name>[(<argument>[,<argument>...])]
Statement Calls the extended statements by inserting various cartridges.

* CALL MEMINI [(<upper limitation of RAM disk>)]
Statement Specifies the upper limit of memory for Ram disk.

* CALL MFILES
Statement Lists file names in RAM disk.

* CALL MKILL ("<filename>")
Statement Deletes a file in RAM disk.

* CALL MNAME ("<old filename>" AS "<new filename>")
Statement Renames a file in RAM disk.

CDBL (<expression>)
Function Converts the value of <expression> to a double precision real value and returns its result.

CHR\$ (<expression>)
Function Returns a character which has the code of <expression> value.

CINT (<expression>)
Function Converts the value of <expression> to an integer value and returns its result.

* CIRCLE {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)},<radius>[, <colour>[, <start angle>[, <end angle>[, <proportion>]]]]

Statement	Draws a circle whose center is at (X,Y) and whose size depends on <radius>.
CLEAR [<size of string area>[, <upper limitation of memory>]]	
Statement	Initialises variables and sets the size of memory area.
CLOAD ["<filename>"]	
Command	Loads a program from cassette.
CLOAD? ["<filename>"]	
Command	Compares a program on cassette with the one in memory.
CLOSE [[#]<filename>[, [#]<filename>...]]	
Command	Closes a file represented by <filename>.
CLS	
Statement	Clears screen.
* COLOR [<foreground colour>[, <background colour>[, <border colour>]]]	
Statement	Specifies the colours of each part of the screen.
* COLOR [=NEW]	
Statement	Initialises the palette.
* COLOR = (<palette number>, <red brightness>, <green brightness>, <blue brightness>)	
Statement	Sets the palette colour.
* COLOR = RESTORE	
Statement	Puts the contents of the colour palette storage table
table	into the palette register.
* COLOR SPRITE (<sprite plane number>)=<colour>	
Statement	Sets the colour to the sprite of <sprite plane number> to the specified colour.
* COLOR SPRITE\$ (<sprite plane number>)=<string expression>	
Statement	Sets the colour of each horizontal line of the sprite using <string expression>.
CONT	
Command	Resumes the execution of the program which has been stopped.
* COPY <source> TO <destination>	
Statement	Transfers the screen data among the screen, array, and disk file.
* COPY SCREEN [<mode>]	
Statement	Writes colour bus data into VRAM (optional).
COS (<expression>)	
Function	Returns the cosine value of <expression> (in radians)>.
CSAVE "<filename>"[, <baud rate>]	
Command	Saves a program to cassette.

CSGN (<expression>)	
Function	Converts the value of <expression> to a single precision real value, and returns its result.
CSRLIN	
System variable	Contains the vertical screen location of the cursor. No assignment is allowed.
--- D ---	
DATA <constant>[, <constant>...]	
Statement	Prepares data to be read by READ statement.
DEF FN <name> [(<argument>[, <argument>...])]=<function-definitive expression>	
Statement	Defines a user-defined function.
DEFINT <character range>[, <character range>...]	
Statement	Declares the specified variable(s) as integer type.
DEFSNG <character range>[, <character range>...]	
Statement	Declares the specified variable(s) as single precision real type.
DEFDBL <character range>[, <character range>...]	
Statement	Declares the specified variable(s) as double precision real type.
DEFSTR <character range>[, <character range>...]	
Statement	Declares the specified variable(s) as character type.
DEF USR [<number>]=<start address>	
Statement	Defines the starting address for the execution of assembly language routine, called by USR function.
DELETE {[<start linenumber>-<end linenumber>] | <linenumber> | -<end linenumber>}	
Command	Deletes the specified portion of the program.
DIM <variable name> (<maximum subscript value>[, <maximum subscript value>...])	
Statement	Defines an array variable and allocates it into memory.
DRAW <string expression>	
Statement	Draws a line or lines on the screen according to <string expression (DRAW macro)>.
--- E ---	
END	
Statement	Ens the program, close all files, and returns to the command level.
EOF (<filenumber>)	
Function	Checks if the file is finished and returns -1 if at the end of file.

ERASE <array variable name>[, <array variable name>...]
Statement Deletes the array variable(s).

ERL
System variable Contains the error code for the preceding error.
No assignment is allowed.

ERR
System variable Contains the line number of the previous error.
No assignment is allowed.

ERROR <error code>
Statement Puts the program into the error condition.

EXP (<expression>)
Function Returns the exponent (power) of the natural
exponential form of <expression>.

--- F ---

FIX (<expression>)
Function Returns the value of <expression>, without any
decimal fractions.

FOR <variable name> = <initial value> TO <end value> [STEP <increment>]
Statement Repeats the execution from FOR statement to NEXT
statement for the specified times.

FRE ((<expression> | <string expression>))
Function Returns the size of unused user's area or unused
character area.

--- G ---

* GET DATE <string variable name>[, A]
Statement Assigns date into a string variable.

* GET TIME <string variable name>[, A]
Statement Assigns time into a string variable.

GOSUB <linenumber>
Statement Calls the subroutine at <linenumber>.

GOTO <linenumber>
Statement Jumps to <linenumber>.

--- H ---

HEX\$ (<expression>)
Function Converts the value of <expression> to a string of
hexadecimal expression, then returns its result.

--- I ---

IF <condition> THEN {<statement> | <linenumber>} [ELSE {<statement> |
<linenumber>}]
Statement Judges the condition. If <condition> is not zero,

it is true.

IF <condition> GOTO <linenumber> [ELSE {<statement> | <linenumber>}]
Statement Judges the condition. If <condition> is not zero,
it is true.

INKEY\$
Function Returns a character when a key is being pressed,
or when not, returns null string.

INP (<port number>)
Function Reads the port specified by <port number> and
returns its result.

INPUT ["<prompt statement>";]<variable name>[, <variable name>...]
Statement Assigns data input from keyboard into the specified
variable(s).

INPUT #<filenumber>, <variable name>[, <variable name>...]
Statement Reads data from the file and assigns the data into
the specified variable(s).

INPUT\$ (<number of characters>[, [#]<filenumber>])
Function Reads the specified size of string from the keyboard
or file.

INSTR ([<expression>,<string expression 1>,<string expression 2>)
Function Searches <string expression 2> from the left of
<string expression 1>, and returns its location if
found, otherwise zero. <Expression> is the character
location to start searching.

INT (<expression>)
Function Returns the largest integer less than <expression>.

INTERVAL {ON | OFF | STOP}
Statement Allows, suppresses, or suspends the timer interrupt.

--- K ---

KEY <key number>,<string>
Command Redefines a function key.

KEY LIST
Command Displays the contents of function keys.

KEY (<key number>){ON | OFF | STOP}
Statement Allows, suppresses, or suspends the function key
interrupt.

KEY {ON | OFF}
Statement Specifies whether to display the contents of
function keys at the bottom of the screen.

--- L ---

LEFT\$ (<string expression>,<expression>)
function Gets <expression> characters from the left of
<string expression>.

LEN (<string expression>)
Function Returns the number of characters of <string expression>.

[LET] <variable name> = <expression>
Statement Assigns the value of <expression> to the variable.

* LINE [{(X1,Y1) | STEP(X1,Y1)}] - {(X2,Y2) | STEP(X2,Y2)}[, <colour>[, {B|BF}{[, <logical operation>}}]
Statement Draws a line or a rectangle on the screen.

LINE INPUT ["<prompt statement>";]<string variable name>
Statement Assigns a whole line of string data from the keyboard into the string variable.

LINE INPUT# <filename>, <string variable name>
Statement Reads data in lines from the file and assigns the data into the string variable.

LIST [[<linenumber>] - [<linenumber>]]
Command Displays the program in memory on the screen.

LLIST [[<linenumber>] - [<linenumber>]]
Command Sends the program in memory to the printer.

LOAD "<filename>" [,R]
Command Loads a program saved in ASCII format.

* LOCATE [<X-coordinate>[, <Y-coordinate>[, <cursor switch>]]]
Statement Locates the cursor on the text screen.

LOG (<expression>)
Function Returns the natural logarithm of <expression>.

LPOS (<expression>)
System variable Contains the location of the printer head.
No assignment is allowed.

LPRINT [<expression>[{: | ,}<expression>...]
Statement Outputs characters or numerical values to the printer.

LPRINT USING <form>; <expression>[{: | ,}<expression>...]
Statement Outputs characters or numerical values through the printer according to <form>.

--- M ---

MAXFILES = <number of files>
Statement Sets the number of files to be opened.

MERGE "<filename>"
Command Merges the program in memory with the program saved in ASCII format (in external storage device).

MID\$ (<string expression>, <expression 1>[, <expression 2>])
Function Returns <expression 2> character(s) starting from the <expression 1>th position of <string expression>.

MID\$ (<string variable name>, <expression 1>[, <expression 2>])
 = <string expression>
 Statement Defines <string expression> using <expression 2>
 character(s) from the <expression 1>th position
 of <string variable name>.

MOTOR [{ON | OFF}]
 Statement Turns the motor of cassette ON and OFF.

--- N ---

NEW
 Command Deletes the program in meory and clears variables.

NEXT [<variable name>[, <variable name>...]]
 Statement Indicates the end of FOR statement.

--- O ---

OCT\$ (<expression>)
 Function Converts the value of <expression> to the string of
 octal expression and returns its result.

ON ERROR GOTO <linenumber>
 Statement Defines the line to begin the error handling
 routine.

ON <expression> GOSUB <linenumber>[, <linenumber>...]
 Statement Executes the subroutine at <linenumber> according to
 <expression>.

ON <expression> GOTO <linenumber>[, <linenumber>...]
 Statement Jumps to <linenumber> according to <expression>.

ON INTERVAL = <time> GOSUB <linenumber>
 Statement Defines the timer interrupt interval and the line to
 begin the interrupt handling routine.

ON KEY GOSUB <linenumber>[, <linenumber>...]
 Statament Defines the line to begin the function key interrupt
 handling routine.

ON SPRITE GOSUB <linenumber>
 Statement Defines the line to begin the piled-sprite interrupt
 handling routine.

ON STOP GOSUB <linenumber>
 Statament Defines the line to begin the CTRL+STOP key
 interrupt handling routine.

ON STRING GOSUB <linenumber>[, <linenumber>...]
 Statement Defines the line to begin the trigger button
 interrupt handling routine.

OPEN "<filename>" [FOR <mode>] AS #<filenumber>
 Statement Opens the file in the specified mode.

OUT <port number>,<expression>

Statement	Sends data to the output port specified by <port number>.

P	

* PAD (<expression>)	
Function	Examines the state of tablet, mouse, light pen, or track ball specified by <expression>, then returns its result.
* PAINT {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)}[, <colour>[, <border colour>]]	
Statement	Paints the area surrounded by specified <border colour> using <colour>.
PDL (<paddle number>)	
Function	Returns the state of the paddle which has the specified number.
PEEK (<address>)	
Function	Returns the contents of one byte of the memory specified by <address>.
PLAY <string expression 1>[, <string expression 2>[, <string expression 3>]]	
Statement	Plays the music by <string expression (music macro)>.
PLAY (<voice channel>)	
Function	Examines whether the music is being played and returns its result (if in play, -1 is returned).
POINT (X,Y)	
Function	Returns the colour of the dot specified by coordinate (X,Y).
POKE <address>,<data>	
Statement	Writes one byte of <data> into the memory specified by <address>.
POS (<expression>)	
System variable	Contains the horizontal location of the cursor on the
the	text screen. No assignment is allowed.
* PRESET {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)}[, <colour>[, <logical operation>]]	
Statement	Erases the dot specified by coordinate (X,Y) on the graphic screen
PRINT [<expression> [{; | ,}<expression>...]	
Statement	Displays characters of numbers on the screen.
PRINT USING <form>; <expression>[{; | ,}<expression>...]	
Statement	Displays characters or numbers on the screen according to <form>.
PRINT #<filenumber>, [<expression>[{; | ,}<expression>...]	
Statement	Writes characters or numbers to the file specified by <file number>.
PRINT #<filenumber>, USING <form>; <expression>[{; | ,}<expression>...]	

Statement Writes characters or numbers to the file specified by <file number> according to <form>.

PSET {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)}[, <colour>[, <logical operation>]]
Statement Draws the dot in the coordinate specified by (X,Y) on the graphic screen.

* PUT KANJI [(X,Y)],<JIS kanji code>[, <colour>[, <logical operation>[, <mode>]]]
Statement Displays the kanji on the screen (KANJI ROM is required).

* PUT SPRITE <sprite plane number>[, {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)}[, <colour>[, <sprite pattern number>]]]
Statement Displays the sprite pattern.

--- R ---

READ <variable name>[, <variable name>...]
Statement Reads data from DATA statement(s) and assigns the data to the variable(s).

REM [<comment>]
Statement Puts the comment in the program.

RENUM [<new linenumber>[, <old linenumber>[, <increment>]]]
Command Renumbers the line numbers.

RESTORE [<linenumber>]
Statement Specifies the line to begin reading DATA by READ statement.

RESUME {[0] | NEXT | <linenumber>}
Statement Ends the error recovery routine and resumes execution of the program.

RETURN [<linenumber>]
Statement Returns from a subroutine.

RIGHT\$ (<string expression>, <expression>)
Function Gets <expression> characters from the right of <string expression>.

RND [(<expression>)]
Function Returns a random number between 0 and 1.

RUN [<linenumber>]
Command Executes the program from <linenumber>.

--- S ---

SAVE "<filename>"
Command Saves the program in ASCII format.

* SCREEN <screen mode>[, <sprite size>[, <key click switch>[, <cassette baud rate>[, <printer option>[, <interlace mode>]]]]]

Statement Sets the screen mode and so on.

* SET ADJUST (<X-coordinate offset>, <Y-coordinate offset>)
statement Changes the display location of the screen. Ranges from -7 to 8.

* SET BEEP <timbre>, <volume>
Statement Selects the BEEP tone. Ranges from 1 to 4.

* SET DATE <string expression>[, A]
Statement Sets a date. "A" is the specification of alarm.

* SET PAGE <display page>, <active page>
Statement Specifies the page to display and the page to read and write data to.

* SET PASSWORD <string expression>
Statement Sets a password.

* SET PROMPT <string expression>
Statement Sets a prompt (up to 8 characters).

* SET SCREEN
Statement Reserves the parameters of the current settings of SCREEN statement.

* SET TIME <string expression>[, A]
Statement Sets time. "A" is the alarm specification.

* SET VIDEO [<mode>[, <Ym>[, <CB>[, <sync>[, <voice>[, <video input>[, <AV control>]]]]]]]
Statement Sets superimposing and other modes (optional).

SGN (<expression>)
Function Examines the sign of <expression> and returns its result (positive=1, zero=0, negative=-1).

SIN (<expression>)
Function Returns the sine of <expression> in radians.

SOUND <register number>,<data>
Statement Writes data to the register of PSG.

SPACE\$ (<expression>)
Function Returns a string containing <expression> spaces.

SPC (<expression>)
Function Produces <expression> spaces; used in the instructions of PRINT family.

SPRITE {ON | OFF | STOP}
Statement Allows, supresses, or suspends the piled-sprite interrupt.

SPRITE\$ (<sprite pattern number>)
System variable Contains the sprite pattern.

SQR (<expression>)
Function Returns the square root of <expression>.

STICK (<joystick number>)

Function	Examines the direction of the joystick and returns its result.
STOP	
Statement	Stops the execution of the program.
STRIG (<joystick number>)	
Function	Examines the state of the trigger button and returns its result.
STRIG (<joystick number>) {ON | OFF | STOP}	
Statement	Allows, supresses, or suspends interrupts from the trigger button.
STR\$ (<expression>)	
Function	Converts the value of <expression> to a string decimal expression and returns its result.
STRING\$ (<expression 1>, {<string expression> | <expression 2>})	
Function	Converts the leading character of <string expression>
	or the character containing the code <expression 2> to a string whose length is <expression 1>, and returns the string.
SWAP <variable name>, <variable name>	
Statement	Exchanges the value of two variables.
--- T ---	
TAB (<expression>)	
Function	Produces the specified spaces in PRINT instructions.
TAN (<expression>)	
Function	Returns the tangent of <expression> in radians.
TIME	
System variable	Contains the value of the interval timer.
TRON	
Command	Keeps displaying the line numbers of the program currently being executed.
TROFF	
Command	Cancels TRON and stops displaying the line numbers.
--- U ---	
USR [<number>](<argument>)	
Function	Calls the assembly language routine.
--- V ---	
VAL (<string expression>)	
Function	Converts <string expression> to a numerical value and returns its result.
VARPTR (<variable name>)	

Function	Returns the address containing the variable.
VARPTR (#<filename>)	
Function	Returns the starting address of the file control block.
* VDP (<register number>)	
System variable	Writes/reads data to/from the VDP registers.
* VPEEK (<address>)	
Function	Reads data from <address> in VRAM.
* VPOKE (<address>)	
Statement	Writes data to <address> in VRAM.

--- W ---

WAIT <port number>, <expression 1>[, <expression 2>]	
Statement	Stops the execution until data of the input port grows to the specified value.
* WIDTH <number>	
Statement	Specifies the number of characters per line in the display screen.

1.2 Instructions of MSX DISK-BASIC

Note: Instructions marked with "***" have been added to version 2 of MSX DISK-BASIC and are not available in version 1.

--- B ---

* BLOAD "<filename>"[[[, R] | [, S]][, <offset>]]	
Command	Loads the assembly language program or screen data from a file.
* BSAVE "<filename>", <start address>, <end address>[, {<execution address> | S}]	
Command	Saves the assembly language program or screen data in a file.

--- C ---

CLOSE [[#]<filename>[, [#]<filename>...]]	
Statement	Closes the file specified by <filename>.
** CALL CHDRV ("<drive name>:")	
Command	Sets the drive specified by <drive name> as the default drive.
** CALL CHDIR ("<directory path>")	
Command	Changes to the directory specified by <directory path>.
CALL FORMAT	
Command	Formats the floppy disk.

```

** CALL MKDIR ("")
Command          Creates the directory with the name specified
                  in <directory name> in the current directory.

** CALL RAMDISK (<size in kilobytes>[, <variable name>])
Command          Tries to create the DOS 2 RAM disk of the specified
                  size, and returns in the variable (if specified) the
                  actual size of the RAM disk created.

** CALL RMDIR ("")
Command          Deletes the directory specified in <directory name>.
                  If the directory is not empty, "File already exists"
                  error will be returned.

CALL SYSTEM
Command          Returns to MSX-DOS.

** CALL SYSTEM [("") ]
Command          Returns to MSX-DOS and executes the DOS command
                  <filename> if it is specified.

COPY "<filename 1>"[ TO "<filename 2>"]
Command          Copies the contents of <filename 1> to the file
                  specified by <filename 2>.

CVD (<8-byte string>)
Function         Converts the string to the double precision real
                  value and returns its result.

CVI (<2-byte string>)
Function         Converts the string to the integer value and returns
                  its result.

CVS (<4-byte string>)
Function         Converts the string to the single precision real
                  value and returns its result.

--- D ---

DSKF (<drive number>)
Function         Returns the unused portions of the disk in clusters.

DSKI$ (<drive number>, <sector number>)
Function         Reads the specified sector of the specified drive
                  to the memory area indicated by address &HF351, and
                  returns a null string.

DSKO$ (<drive number>, <sector number>)
Statement        Writes 512 bytes starting from address indicated by
                  &HF351 to the specified sector of the specified
                  drive.

--- E ---

EOF (<filenumber>)
Function         Checks if the file has ended and returns -1 if at
the              the
                  end of file.

```

--- F ---

FIELD [#]<filename>, <field width> AS <string variable name>[, <field width> AS <string variable name>...]

Statement Assigns the string variable name to the random input/output buffer.

FILES ["<filename>"]

Command Displays the name of the file matched with
<filename>
 on the screen.

** FILES ["<filename>"][,L]

Command Displays the name of the file matched with
<filename>
 on the screen, and also the attributes and the size
 of the file if "L" is specified.

--- G ---

GET[#]<filename>[, <record number>]

Statement Reads one record from the random file to the random input/output buffer.

--- I ---

INPUT #<filename>, <variable name>[, <variable name>...]

Statement Reads data from the file.

INPUT\$ (<the number of characters>[, [#]<filename>])

Function Gets the string of the specified length from the file.

--- K ---

KILL "<filename>"

Command Deletes the file specified by <filename>.

--- L ---

LFILES ["<filename>"]

Command Sends the name of the file matched with <filename> to the printer.

** LFILES ["<filename>"][,L]

Command Sends the name of the file matched with <filename> to the printer, and also the attributes and the size of the file if "L" is specified.

LINE INPUT #<file number>, <string variable name>

Statement Reads lines of data from the file to the string variable.

LOAD "<filename>"[, R]

Command Loads the program into memory.

LOC (<filenumber>)
Function Returns the record number of the most recently accessed location of the file.

LOF (<filenumber>)
Function Returns the size of the specified file in bytes.

LSET <string variable name>=<string expression>
Statement Stores data padded on the left in the random input/output buffer.

--- M ---

MAXFILES = <the number of files>
Statement Declares the maximum number of files that can be opened.

MERGE "<filename>"
Command Merges the program in memory with the program saved in ASCII format.

MKD\$ (<double precision real value>)
Function Converts the double precision real value to the character code corresponding to the internal expression.

MKI\$ (<integer value>)
Function Converts the integer value to the character code corresponding to the internal expression.

MKS\$ (<single precision real value>)
Function Converts the single precision real value to the character code corresponding to the internal expression.

--- N ---

NAME "<filename 1>" AS "<filename 2>"
Command Renames the name of a file.

--- O ---

OPEN "<filename>"[FOR <mode>] AS #<filenumber>[LEN = <record length>]
Statement Opens the file.

--- P ---

PRINT #<filenumber>, [<expression>[{}; | ,}<expression>...]]
Statement Sends data to the sequential file.

PRINT #<filenumber>, USING <form>; <expression>[{}; | ,}<expression>...]]
Statement Sends data to the sequential file according to the form.

PUT [#]<filenumber>[, <record number>]
Statement Sends data of the random input/output buffer to the random file.

--- R ---

RSET <string varibale name>=<string expression>
Statement Stores data padded on the right in the random
input/output buffer.

RUN "<filename>"[, R]
Command Loads a program from the disk and executes it.

--- S ---

SAVE "<filename>"[, A]
Command Saves a program. The program is saved in ASCII
format when "A" is specified.

--- V ---

VARPTR (#<filenumber>)
Function Returns the starting address of the file control
block.

2. DIFFERENCES IN MSX BASIC VERSION 2.0

A great deal of functions in MSX BASIC version 2.0 have been added or modified when compared with MSX BASIC version 1.0. They are either the functions that are added or modified with the version-up of VDP (Video Display Processor) or the functions that are added or modified because of the various hardware features such as RAM disk, clock, or memory switch; especially, the alternation of VDP affects, most of the statement for the screen display.

This section picks up these statements and indicates the additions or the modifications. In the following descriptions, "MSX1" means MSX BASIC version 1.0 and "MSX2" for MSX BASIC version 2.0.

2.1 Additions or Modifications to Screen Mode

* SCREEN <screen mode>[, <sprite size>[, <key click switch>[, <cassette
baud rate>[, <printer option>[, <interlace mode>]]]]]

<Screen mode> and <interlace mode> have been modified.

<Screen mode> may be specified from 0 to 8. Modes from 0 to 3 are the same as MSX1 and the rest have been added. When specifying a screen mode, in BASIC it is called "SCREEN MODE", which is somewhat different from "screen mode" which is used by VDP internally. Table 2.1 shows these correspondences and meanings. The difference between screen modes 2 and 4 is only in the sprite display functions.

Table 2.1 Correspondances of BASIC screen (SCREEN) modes and VDP screen modess

--				
BASIC	VDP	Meaning		
mode	mode	Dots or characters	Display colours at a time	Screen format
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 0 (1)	TEXT 1	40 x 24 chars	2 from 512	Text
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 0 (2)	TEXT 2	80 x 24 chars	2 from 512	Text
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 1	GRAPHIC 1	32 x 24 chars	16 from 512	Text
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 2	GRAPHIC 2	256 x 192 dots	16 from 512	High res. graphics
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 3	MULTICOLOUR	64 x 48 dots	16 from 512	Low res. graphics
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 4	GRAPHIC 3	256 x 192 dots	16 from 512	High res. graphics
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 5	GRAPHIC 4	256 x 212 dots	16 from 512	Bit map graphics
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 6	GRAPHIC 5	512 x 212 dots	4 from 512	Bit map graphics
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 7	GRAPHIC 6	512 x 212 dots	16 from 512	Bit map graphics
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
SCREEN 8	GRAPHIC 7	256 x 212 dots	256	Bit map graphics
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----				
--				

Specifying <interlace mode> enables to set the interlace functions of VDP (see Table 2.2). In the alternate screen display mode, the display page specified in "SET PAGE" must be odd. In this case the display page and the page of which the number is smaller by one is displayed alternately.

Table 2.2 Differences of display function in the interlace mode

Interlace mode	Display function
0	Normal non-interlaced display (default)
1	Interlaced display
2	Non interlaced, Even/Odd alternate display
3	Interlaced, Even/Odd alternate display

* SET PAGE <display page>, <active page>

This statement is new. It allows users to set the page to display and the page to read and write data to. This is valid when the screen mode is between 5 and 8, and the value specified depends on the VRAM capacity and the screen mode (see Table 2.3).

Table 2.3 Page values to be specified depending on the screen mode and the VRAM capacity

Screen mode	VRAM 64K	VRAM 128K
SCREEN 5	0 to 1	0 to 3
SCREEN 6	0 to 1	0 to 3
SCREEN 7	Unusable	0 to 1
SCREEN 8	Unusable	0 to 1

See the VRAM map in the APPENDIX for the page assignment on VRAM.

2.2 Additions or Modifications for the Colour Specification

* COLOR [<foreground colour>[, <background colour>[, <border colour>]]

In MSX2, with its colour palette feature, the ranges and meanings of values specifying colours in the screen mode are different (see Table 2.4). The <background colour> except that of the text display changes when the CLS statement is executed. If the display mode is 0, specification of a <border colour> is ignored.

The "border colour" in screen mode 6 has special meanings. Figure 2.2 shows the bitwise meanings of <border colour> in the mode. In this mode, by changing the flag (bit 4), the colour of vertical lines at odd X-coordinates and the colour of those at even coordinates can be specified differently.

When the flag is 0 (the value of border colour is one of the values from 0 to 15), different colours cannot be specified and the border colour is set as the colour of vertical odd lines. When the flag is 1 (the value of border colour is one of the values from 16 to 31), the border colours are set as the colour of vertical odd lines and that of vertical even lines; when these two

colours are different, the screen shows a vertically-striped pattern.

Figure 2.2 Bitwise meanings for the border colour on screen mode 6

4	3	2	1	0
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
| flag	| colour of even lines	| colour of odd lines	|	|
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

Bits 7 to 5 are unused

```
* COLOR = (<palette number>, <red brightness>, <green brightness>, <blue
           brightness>)
```

This statement sets the colour of the specified palette. See Table 2.4 for the specification of <palette number>. Note that nothing happens and no error

occurs when the screen mode is 8, which has no palette feature. Though palette number 0 is ordinarily fixed to a transparent colour (that is, border

space is seen transparently), it can be dealt in the same way as other palettes by changing the register of VDP:

```
VDP(9)=VDP(9) OR &H20      (when dealing as with other palettes)
VDP(9)=VDP(9) AND &HDF     (when fixing it to a transparent colour)
```

Table 2.4 Colour specifications for the screen mode.

Screen mode	Colour specification	Range of number
-----	-----	-----
SCREEN 0	Palette number	0 to 15
SCREEN 1	Palette number	0 to 15
SCREEN 2	Palette number	0 to 15
SCREEN 3	Palette number	0 to 15
SCREEN 4	Palette number	0 to 15
SCREEN 5	Palette number	0 to 15
SCREEN 6	Palette number	0 to 3
SCREEN 7	Palette number	0 to 15
SCREEN 8	Colour number	0 to 255
-----	-----	-----

Brightness of each colour can be set to one of eight steps from 0 to 7 and combining them enables to display 512 colours; 8 (red) x 8 (green) x 8 (blue).

```
* COLOR=RESTORE
```

This statement resets the colour palette register according to the contents of the colour palette storage table (see APPENDIX VRAM MAP). For example, if

image data written under unusual colour palette settings is BSAVED, the original images cannot be reproduced because BLOADing the data does not change the colour palettes. Therefore, the image data should be BSAVED with the colour palette storage table. To obtain the colours of the original images, BLOAD the data and reset the palettes with the COLOR=RESTORE instruction.

* COLOR [=NEW]

This statement initialises the colour palette to the same state as when the power of the computer is turned on (see Table 2.5). It is a good idea to place this statement at the beginning and the end of the program.

Table 2.5 Initial colours of colour palettes and palette setting values

Palette number	Colour	Brightness of red	Brightness of blue	Brightness of green
0	transparent	0	0	0
1	black	0	0	0
2	bright green	1	1	6
3	light green	3	3	7
4	deep blue	1	7	1
5	bright blue	2	7	3
6	deep red	5	1	1
7	light blue	2	7	6
8	bright red	7	1	1
9	light red	7	3	3
10	bright yellow	6	1	6
11	pale yellow	6	3	6
12	deep green	1	1	4
13	purple	6	5	2
14	grey	5	5	5
15	white	7	7	7

2.3 Additions or Modifications for the Character Display

* LOCATE [<X-coordinate>[, <Y-coordinate>[, <cursor switch>]]]

This statement specifies the location to display a character in the text display screen.

Since an 80-character display feature has been added to the screen mode 0, the X-coordinate value can be specified up to 79.

2.4 Additions or Modifications for the Graphics Display

* LINE [{(X1,Y1) | STEP(X1,Y1)}] - {(X2,Y2) | STEP(X2,Y2)}[, <colour>[, {B|BF}[, <logical operation>]]]
 * PSET {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)}[, <colour>[, <logical operation>]]
 * PRESET {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)}[, <colour>[, <logical operation>]]

The specifiable coordinate range of these statements varies according to the screen mode (see Table 2.6).

Table 2.6 Range of coordinates for each screen mode

Screen mode	X-coordinate	Y-coordinate
SCREEN 2	0 to 255	0 to 191
SCREEN 3	0 to 255	0 to 191
SCREEN 4	0 to 255	0 to 191
SCREEN 5	0 to 255	0 to 211
SCREEN 6	0 to 511	0 to 211
SCREEN 7	0 to 511	0 to 211
SCREEN 8	0 to 255	0 to 211

The logical operation feature is new. When <logical operation> is specified, a logical operation is done between the specified <colour> and the original colour, and the colour of its result will be used to draw. Logical operation types are listed in Table 2.7. <Colour> is specified by the palette number, except for screen mode 8.

Table 2.7 Logical operation

Logical operation	Function to draw
PSET (default) ,TPSET	Use "specified colour"
PRESET ,TPRESET	Use "NOT (specified colour)"
XOR ,TXOR	Use "(background colour) XOR (specified colour)"
OR ,TOR	Use "(background colour) OR (specified colour)"
AND ,AND	Use "(background colour) AND (specified colour)"

Note: The list above assumes that <colour> is (specified colour) and that the original colour of the place to be drawn is (background colour). Specifying a logical operation preceded by "T" causes nothing to be done when <colour> is transparent (colour 0).

* CIRCLE {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)},<radius>[, <colour>[, <start angle>[, <end angle>[, <proportion>]]]]

The coordinate range to be specified depends on the screen mode (see Table 2.6). <colour> is specified by the palette number, except for screen mode 8.

* PAINT {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)}[, <colour>[, <border colour>]]

The coordinate range to be specified depends on the screen mode (see Table 2.6). <Colour> is specified by the palette number, except for screen mode 8.

The specification of <border color> is invalid in screen modes 2 and 4.

2.5 Additions or modifications for VDP access

* BASE (<expression>)

This system variable contains the starting address of each table assigned to VRAM. The contents of <expression> and the screen mode tables correspond as listed in Table 2.8.

The starting address of the table can be read for each <expression>, but can be written only when <expression> is a value from 0 to 19 (that is, from screen mode 0 to screen mode 3).

Note that the table of screen mode 4 changes as you change the table address of screen mode 2.

Address returned for screen mode from 5 to 8 is the offset value from the starting address of the active page.

Table 2.8 Correspondences between BASE set values and VRAM table

Expression	Screen mode	Table
0	0	Pattern name table
1	0	N/A
2	0	Pattern generator table
3	0	N/A
4	0	N/A
5	1	Pattern name table
6	1	Colour table
7	1	Pattern generator table
8	1	Sprite attribute table
9	1	Sprite generator table
10	2	Pattern name table
11	2	Colour table
12	2	Pattern generator table
.	.	.
.	.	.
.	.	.
43	8	Sprite attribute table
44	8	Sprite generator table

* VDP (<n>)

This allows the value of VDP register to be read and written. <n> is slightly different from the actual VDP register number. Their correspondances are

listed in Table 2.9.

Table 2.9 Correspondances with VDP register

n	VDP register number	Access mode
0 to 7	0 to 7 (same as MSX1)	Read/write
8	Status register 0	Read only
9 to 24	8 to 23	Read/write
33 to 47	32 to 46	Write only
-1 to -9	Status register 1 to 9	Read only

* VPEEK (<address>)
* VPOKE <address>, <data>

When the screen mode is from 5 to 8, the offset value from the starting address of the active page should be set for <address>. Valid range for the <address> value is from 0 to 65535 and the valid range for the data value is from 0 to 255.

* BSAVE <filename>, <start address>, <end address>, S
* BLOAD <filename> ,S

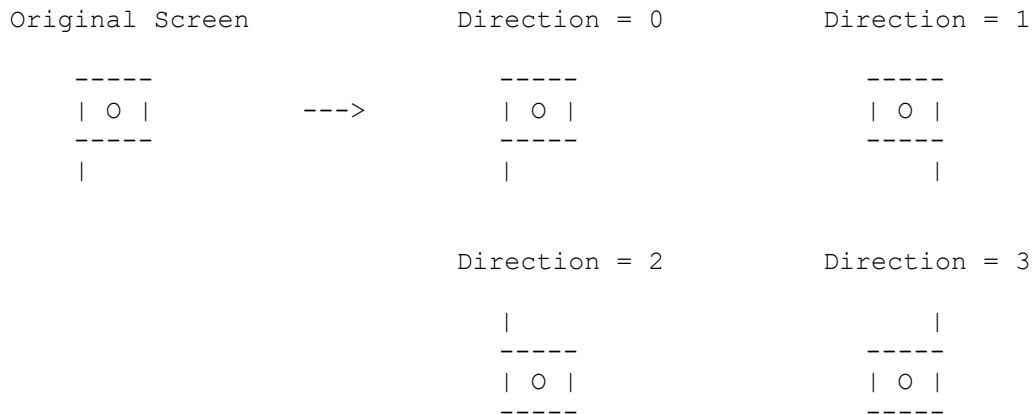
These are statements of DISK BASIC, used to save/load the contents of VRAM to/from disk files. Both can be used in any screen mode, note, however, that only the active pages are valid when the screen mode is from 5 to 8. No cassette tapes can be used. Valid value range of <address> is from -32768 to -2, or from 0 to 65534 (&HFFFE).

* COPY (X1,Y1) - (X2,Y2)[, <source page>] TO (X3,Y3)[, <destination page>][, <logical operation>]]
* COPY (X1,Y1) - (X2,Y2)[, <source page>] TO {<array variable name> | <filename>}
* COPY {<array variable name> | <filename>}[, <direction>] TO (X3,Y3)[, <destination page>][, <logical operation>]]
* COPY <filename> TO <array variable name>
* COPY <array variable name> TO <filename>

The COPY statements transfer screen data and are valid when the screen mode is from 5 to 8. VRAM, array variables, and disk files can be used with these statements, and data can be transferred among these at will.

(X1,Y1) - (X2,Y2) means that the rectangular area, with a diagonal formed by these two coordinates is to be transferred. <Source page> and <destination page> indicate the page to be transferred from and the page to be transferred to, respectively, and if these pages are omitted, the active pages are assumed. <Direction> indicates the direction for writing the screen data to the screen, and is specified by a number from 0 to 3 (see Figure 2.3).

Figure 2.3 Directions for writing the screen data



<Array variable> is of the integer type, or single precision real type, or double precision real type. It should be prepared with enough area to get the screen data. Its size can be calculated by expression 1 as shown below. <Pixel size> is the number of bits to be used to express one dot on the screen. It is 4 when the screen mode is 5 or 7, 2 for mode 6, and 8 for mode 8. Screen data is stored in the format shown in figure 2.4.

Expression 1

INT ((<pixel size>*(ABS (X2-X1)+1)*(ABS (Y2-Y1)+1)+7)/8)+4 bytes

Figure 2.4 Screen data format

| horizontal width low-order byte	| 0

| horizontal width high-order byte	| 1

| vertical height low-order byte	| 2

| vertical height high-order byte	| 3

|	| 4
	.
| screen data (*)	| .
	.
|	| n bytes

(*) If the length of data cannot be divided by byte, excess bits are to be 0.

<Logical operation> specifies a logical operation between the data which resides on the destination and the data to be transferred. See table 2.7 for the parameters to specify.

When operations preceded by "T" are specified, the transparent portions of

the source will not be transferred.

2.7 Additions or Modifications for Sprite

The sprites used in screen mode 4-8 of MSX2 are called sprite mode 2, which has upgraded a great deal as compared with MSX1. On MSX1, for example, one sprite could treat only one colour, while in this mode of MSX2 different colours can be specified for each horizontal line and so multi-coloured characters can be realised with one sprite. Additionally, it is a good idea to combine two sprites as though they were one sprite to paint each dot with different colours. And, on MSX1, when more than five sprites are arrayed on a horizontal line, the sprites after the fifth one were not displayed, but on MSX2 up to eight sprites can be displayed, so a higher flexibility is offered.

Colours which can be specified for sprites are shown in Table 2.4 (colour statement) except for screen mode 8. The sprite in screen mode 8, not capable of using the palette, uses the colour number for the specification, and only 16 colours can be used (see Table 2.10).

Table 2.10 Sprite colours in screen mode 8

| 0: Black	| 1: Deep Blue	| 2: Deep Red	| 3: Deep Purple
-----+-----+-----+-----			
| 4: Deep Green	| 5: Turquoise	| 6: Olive	| 7: Grey
-----+-----+-----+-----			
| 8: Light Orange	| 9: Blue	| 10: Red	| 11: Purple
-----+-----+-----+-----			
| 12: Green	| 13: Light Blue	| 14: Yellow	| 15: White

```
* PUT SPRITE <sprite plane number>[, {(X,Y) | STEP(X,Y)}[, <colour>[,  
<sprite  
    pattern number>]]]
```

In screen modes 1 through 3, Y-coordinate was 209 for erasing the display of the specified sprite and was 208 for erasing the displays of the specified sprite and all sprites following it, but in screen modes 4 through 8, where the limit of Y-coordinate has been increased to 212 dots, the values to be specified are now 217 and 216, respectively.

```
* COLOR SPRITE$ (<sprite plane number>) = <string expression>
```

This statement specifies a colour for each horizontal line (see Figure 2.5).

<String expression> consists of one to sixteen characters. Bits 0 through 3 of

COLOR SPRITE\$ = CHR\$ (colour of the first line) + CHR\$ (colour of the second line) + + CHR\$ (colour of the eight line)

```

Line 1 --> | * |   |   | * | * |   |   | * |
            |---+---+---+---+---+---+---+---|
Line 2 --> | * | * |   |   |   |   |   | * | * |
            |---+---+---+---+---+---+---+---|
            |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
            |---+---+---+---+---+---+---+---|
            | * | * |   |   |   |   |   | * | * |
            |---+---+---+---+---+---+---+---|
            |   |   |   | * |   |   |   | * |   |
            |---+---+---+---+---+---+---+---|
            | * |   |   |   | * | * |   |   | * |
            |---+---+---+---+---+---+---+---|
            | * | * |   |   |   |   |   | * | * |
            |---+---+---+---+---+---+---+---|
Line 8 --> |   |   |   | * | * | * | * |   |   |
            |-----|

```

The colour for each line
can be set.

b7	If 1, move the sprite to left by 32 dots.
b6	The priority and conflict of sprites are ignored, and when sprites are piled up, they are displayed in the colour which is OR-ed with their colour numbers. *
b5	If 1, the conflict of sprites are ignored.
b4	Unused.
b0 to b3	Palette number.

* COLOR SPRITE (<sprite plane number>) = <expression>

This statement sets the whole sprite of the specified plane to the <expression>, this uses <expression> for colour specification. The format of

the colour specification is the same as shown in Table 2.11, but the specification for b7 is disabled. These are valid for screen modes 4 through 8.

2.8 Additions for Optional Features

```
* SET VIDEO [<mode>[, <Ym>[, <CB>[, <sync>[, <voice>[, <video input>[, <AV
control>]]]]]]]
```

This statement is for the superimposer or the digitiser which are optional, so it can be used only for machines which have these features.

<Mode> sets the superimposing mode and can be set to the value listed in Table 2.12.

When <Ym> is 1, the brightness of the television is halved.

When <CB> is 1, the colour bus of VDP is prepared for input, and, when 0, it is prepared for output.

When <sync> is 1, "external sync" is selected, and, when 0, "internal sync" is selected.

<Voice> specifies whether to mix external signal for output, and values are listed in Table 2.13.

<Video input> is used to alternate the input of external video signals.

When

it is 0, the RGB multiconnector is selected; when it is 1, external video signal connector is selected.

<AV control> specifies AV control terminal output of the RGB multiconnector.

When it is 0, the output is OFF; when it is 1, the output is ON.

Table 2.12 Input values for SET VIDEO <mode>.

Mode	S1	S2	TP	Display screen
0	0	0	0	Computer
1	0	1	1	Computer
2	0	1	0	Superimpose
3	1	0	0	Television

Note: In the case of mode 0, external sync cannot be used. In other modes the composite output of VDP is not available. S1, S0, and TP are the names of flags in the VDP register.

Table 2.13 Input values for SET VIDEO <voice>

Voice	Function for external voice signal

|	0	|	No mixing	|
|	1	|	Right channel mixed	|
|	2	|	Left channel mixed	|
|	3	|	Both channels mixed	|

* COPY SCREEN [<mode>]

This statement is used for writing data from the colour bus to VRAM, for example, after digitising. This is valid for screen modes 5 to 8.

In mode 0, one field of signals is digitised and written to the display page;
in mode 1, two successive fields (that is, one frame) of signals are written
to (display page - 1)th page and the display page, so the display page should
be an odd page when the mode is 1. The default mode is 0.

2.9 Additions for Timer Features

* GET DATE <string variable name> [,A]

This statement is for reading the date from the timer and assigning it to the
string variable. The format of date to be read is as follows:

YY/MM/DD (YY = lower two digits of year, MM = month, DD = day)

e.g.) 85/03/23 (March 23, 1985)

When option A is specified, the alarm date is read.

* SET DATE <string expression>[, A]

This statement sets date to timer. The form of parameter and option is the same as "GET DATE"

e.g.) SET DATE "85/03/23"

* GET TIME <string variable>[, A]

This statement is for reading time from the timer and assigning it to a
string variable. The form of time to be read is as follows:

HH:MM:SS (HH = hour, MM = minute, SS = second)

e.g.) 22:15:00 (22 hours 15 minutes 0 seconds)

When A is specified, the time for the alarm is read.

* SET TIME <string expression>[, A]

This statement sets the time to the timer. The form of parameter and option is the same as "GET TIME".

e.g.) SET TIME "22:15:00"

* The Alarm

Since the alarm feature is optional, the action taken at the specified time depends on the machine (ordinarily nothing happens).

When the alarm is to be set in both "SET DATE" and "SET TIME", "SET TIME" should be done first (when "SET TIME" is done, date of the alarm set by "SET DATE" will be erased).

The minimum setting for alarm is in minutes (setting in seconds is ignored).

2.10 Additions for Memory Switch

Using "SET" instructions, various settings described below can be stored to the battery-powered RAM in CLOCK-IC. Settings based on these are done automatically at system startup (when the system is powered or reset). "SET TITLE", "SET PROMPT", and "SET PASSWORD" use the same RAM, so only the most recent instruction is valid.

* SET ADJUST (<X-coordinate offset>, <Y-coordinate offset>)

This statement sets the location to display on the screen. The coordinate offset is from -7 to 8.

* SET BEEP <timbre>, <volume>

This statement sets BEEP sound. <Timbre> and <volume> are from 1 to 4.

Table 2.14 shows the correspondance of <timbre> and to the actual sound.

Table 2.14 Input values for <timbre> of SET BEEP

Timbre	Sound
1	High tone beep (same as MSX1)
2	Low tone beep
3	2 - tone beep
4	3 - tone beep

* SET TITLE <string expression>[, <title colour>]

This statement specifies the title and the colour of the initial screen at system startup. <Title> is set by a string of up to 6 characters and <colour>

is one of the values on Table 2.15. When <title> is 6 characters, keyboard input is awaited just after the title screen is displayed.

Table 2.15 Available colours in SET TITLE

| Color	| 1	| 2	| 3	| 4	|
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----					
| Screen color	| Blue	| Green	| Red	| Orange	|

* SET PROMPT <prompt>

This statement sets the prompt. <Prompt> can have up to 6 characters.

* SET PASSWORD <password>

This statement sets a system password. <Password> is a string expression up to 255 characters. Once this statement is done, input of the password is requested for invoking the system. When the correct password is given, the system is normally invoked; otherwise, correct password input is requested. When the system is invoked by pressing both graphic key and stop key, no password input is requested (in this case, the password setting has been done by the key cartridge; however, password input is always required for system startup). The password is disabled by specifying a null character in SET TITLE.

* SET SCREEN

This statement records the current parameters of the "SCREEN" statement. At the system startup, they are automatically set. Items to be recorded are the following:

Screen number of text mode	Key click switch
Screen width of text mode	Printer option
Foreground, background, and border colours	Cassette baud rate
Function key switch	Display mode

2.11 Additions for RAM Disk

On MSX1 RAM from 0000H to 7FFFH was used only by DOS. On MSX2, however, this portion can be used as a RAM disk of up to 32K bytes. The format of the file name for RAM disk is described below, where <filename> is a string which consists of 1 to 8 characters and <extension> is one which consists of 1 to 3 characters. Note that ";" (colon), "." (period), control characters of character codes 00H-1FH, and graphic symbols consisting of two bytes cannot be used.

MEM: <filename>[.<extension>]

The following are executable operations for the RAM disk:

1. Load/save a BASIC program (always saved in ASCII format)
SAVE, LOAD, RUN, MERGE

When any of the above commands is executed from the program, control returns to the command level.

2. Read/write a sequential file
OPEN, CLOSE
PRINT #, PRINT USING #
INPUT #, LINE INPUT #, INPUT\$
EOF, LOC, LOF

The RAM disk does not support the following instructions:

1. Random file Read/Write
2. BLOAD, BSAVE
3. COPY

* CALL MEMINI [(*<size>*)]

This statement specifies the amount of memory to be used as a RAM disk, initialises the RAM disk, and deletes all files. When the RAM disk is to be used, this statement should always be executed.

<Size> is "the amount of memory to be used as RAM disk minus 1". By default, the maximum size is allocated for RAM disk. "CALL MEMINI(0)" causes the RAM disk feature to be disabled.

* CALL MFILES

This statement displays file names on the RAM disk.

* CALL MKILL ("*<filename>*")

This statement deletes the specified file.

* CALL MNAME ("*<old filename>*" AS "*<new filename>*")

This statement renames the specified file.

2.12 Other Additions

* PAD (*<expression>*)

This function returns status to touch pad (touch panel), light pen, mouse, or track ball.

When *<expression>* is 0 to 7, it returns the status to touch pad as on MSX1, and, when *<expression>* is 8 to 11, it returns the status to light pen.

Since

the coordinates and the value of the switch are read when "PAD(8)" is executed, other data should be read after confirming that the value of PAD(8)

is -1 (see Table 2.16).

Table 2.16 <Expression> returning status to light pen

Expression	The value returned
8	-1 when data of light open is valid; otherwise, 0
9	X - coordinate of light pen
10	Y - coordinate of light pen
11	-1 when switch of light pen is pressed; otherwise, 0

This statement returns the status of the mouse or the track ball connected to port 1 when <expression> is 12 to 15 or connected to port 2 when it is 16 to 19 (see Table 2.17). The mouse and track ball are automatically distinguished from each other.

Table 2.17 <Expression> returning status to mouse or track ball

Expression	The value returned
12, 16	- 1; for input request
13, 17	X - coordinate
14, 18	Y - coordinate
15, 19	0 (unused)

Coordinate data is read when PAD(12) or PAD(16) is examined. Coordinate data should be obtained after examining these. The STRIG function is used with the joystick to input the status of the trigger button.

3. INTERNAL STRUCTURE OF BASIC

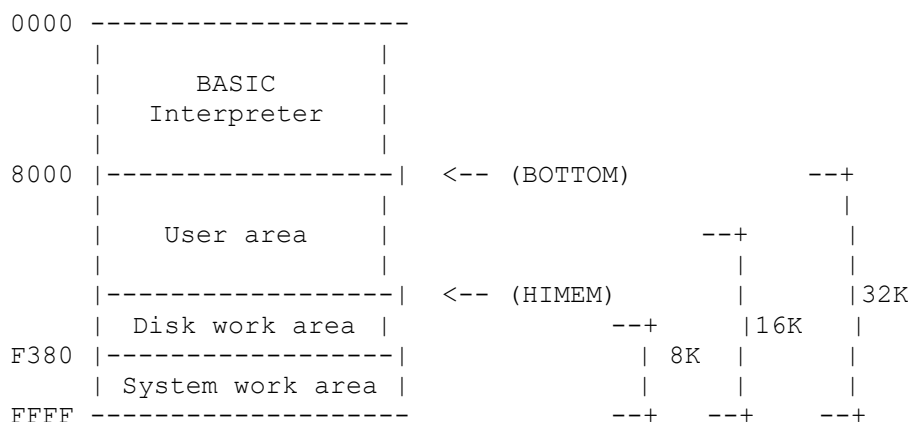
Knowledge of how the BASIC interpreter controls and executes programs is necessary for more advanced use of BASIC. The internal structure of BASIC is discussed next.

3.1 User's Area

The lowest address of the user's area was different in the MSX1 machine whose amount of RAM was 8K, 16K, 32K, or 64K; in MSX2, it is always 8000H, because MSX2 machines have at least 64K of RAM. It can be obtained from the content of BOTTOM (FC48H).

The highest address of the user's area when no disk drives are connected is F380H; when disk drives are connected (using DISK-BASIC), it depends on the number of disk drives or on the disk capacity. It can be obtained from the content of HIMEM (FC4AH) after reset and before executing CLEAR statement.

Figure 2.6 shows the state of memory when MSX is invoked.



When developping a program on MSX2, we recommend you create it at addresses 8000H to DE3FH as if to install a 2DD-2 drive whose highest address of the user's area is the lowest. The work area of the disk can grow even larger, therefore, HIMEM of the application program should be checked to prevent disasters even in the worst situation. The following are ways to prevent this:

On MSX, even when disks are mounted, they can be cut off by resetting while pressing the SHIFT key. When only one drive is mounted, the normal invocation causes the work area for two drives to be allocated (mainly for 2 drive simulator): in such a case, invoking the works area for only one drive is possible by resetting while pressing the CTRL key. If these steps are taken, more user's area can be allocated.

Figure 2.7 shows how the user's area will be used in BASIC, and Table 2.18 shows the work area with information about where these areas start. This work area is read-only (the initialising routine sets it when reset), so actions when it is changed are not guaranteed.

```
BOTTOM --> ----- The lowest of the user's area
           |               | (8000H on MSX2)
TXTTAB --> |-----|
```

	|	BASIC	V	|	
	|	program area		|	
VARTAB -->	|	-----	|	|	Depends on the amount of text
	|	Simple variable	|	|	
	|	area	V	|	
ARYTAB -->	|	-----	|	|	
	|	Array variable	|	|	
	|	area	V	|	
STREND -->	|	-----	|	|	Depends on the number of variables
	|		V	|	
	|	Free area		|	
			^		
SP -->	|	-----	|	|	Area pointed by SP register
	|	Stack	^	|	
	|	area	|	|	
STKTOP -->	|	-----	|	|	--+
	|	String	^	|	| Set by 1st parameter
	|	area	|	|	| of CLEAR
MEMSIZ -->	|	-----	|	|	--+
	|	File	^	|	
	|	control block	|	|	
HIMEM -->	|	-----	|	|	Set by 2nd parameter of CLEAR
	|	Assembly language	|	|	
	|	area	|	|	
	|	-----	|	|	The highest of the user's area
					(depends on the presence of disks)

Table 2.18 Work areas with start and end addresses of each area

Area name	Start address	End address

-		
User's area	| [BOTTOM (FC48H)]	| ([HIMEM (FC4AH)] when reset) - 1
Program area	| [TXTTAB (F676H)]	| [VARTAB (F6C2H)] - 1
Simple variable area	| [VARTAB (F6C2H)]	| [ARYTAB (F6C4H)] - 1
Array variable area	| [ARYTAB (F6C4H)]	| [STREND (F6C6H)] - 1
Free area	| [STREND (F6C6H)]	| [SP register] - 1
Stack area	| [SP register]	| [STKTOP (F674H)] - 1
String area	| [STKTOP (F674H)]	| [MEMSIZ (F672H)] - 1
(start of unused area)	| [FRETOP (F69BH)]	|
File control block	| [MEMSIZ (F672H)]	| [HIMEM (FC4AH)] - 1
Assembly language area	| [HIMEM (FC4AH)]	| to the end of the user's area

-		

Roles of each user's area are described below.

* BASIC program area

A program written in BASIC is stored from the lowest address (8000H on MSX2) of the user's area and its size depends on the amount of the program.

* Variable area

The variable area is located just after the BASIC program area. It is secured to store the name and the value of the variables used when executing the program. The variables storage formats are shown in Figure 2.8 (simple variables) and Figure 2.9 (array variables). Using array variables without declaring in the DIM statement causes the area to be allocated as an array with ten indexes. However, arrays which are more than four dimensional must be declared.

Figure 2.8 Storage format of simple variables

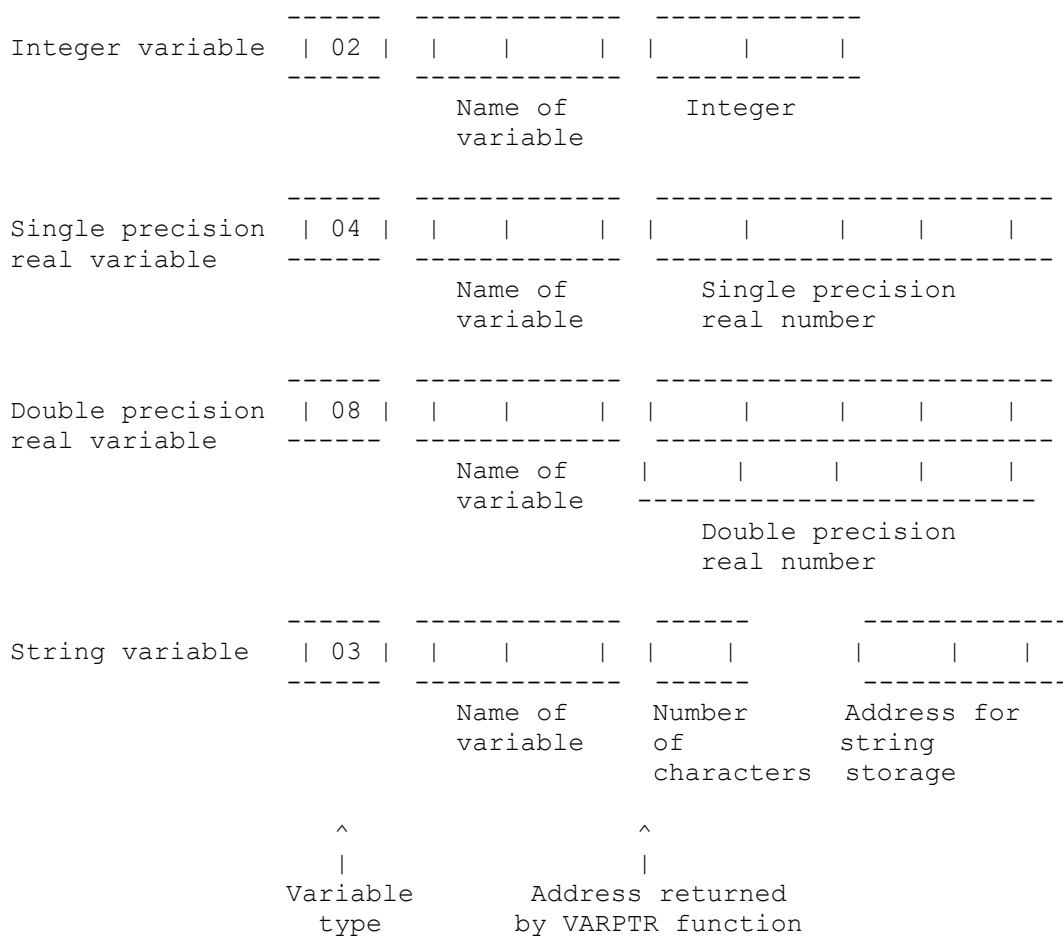
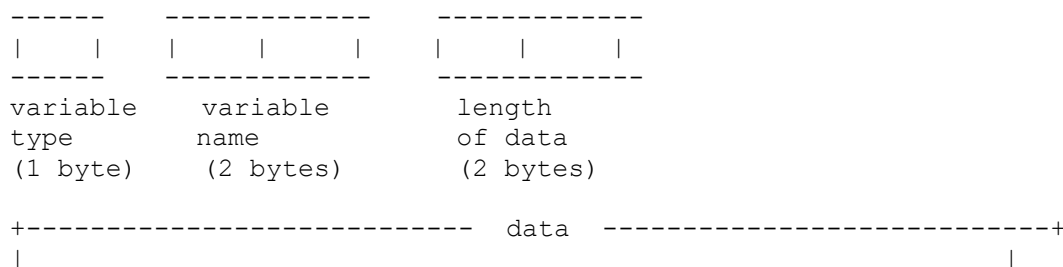


Figure 2.9 Storage format of array variables



file control block.

Table 2.19 File control block (FCB) format

Offset	Label	Meaning
| + 0 |	FL.MOD	Mode of the file opened
| + 1 |	FL.FCA	Pointer (low) to FCB for BDOS
| + 2 |	FL.LCA	Pointer (high) to FCB for BDOS
| + 3 |	FL.LSA	Backup character
| + 4 |	FL.DSK	Device number
| + 5 |	FL.SLB	Internal use for the interpreter
| + 6 |	FL.BPS	FL.BUF location
| + 7 |	FL.FLG	Flag containing various information
| + 8 |	FL.OPS	Virtual head information
| + 9...|	FL.BUF	File buffer (256 bytes)

* Assembly language area

Use this area to write programs in assembly language or to operate from memory directly. To do these, this area should be reserved by CLEAR statement.

* Work area for disk

Figure 2.10 shows the work area allocated when a disk is mounted. Note that this area does not exist when no disk is mounted. Labels to the right of this figure shows the address information which resides there.

Figure 2.10 Work area for disk

	:	User's	:
	:	area	:
BLDCHK + 1 (F377H + 1) -->	|-----|	--+	
	| BLOAD, BSAVE routine |	|	
	| (19H bytes) |	|	
FCBBASE (F353H) -->	|-----|	|	Reserved when a
	| FCB entry |	|	disk is mounted
	| (25H * (FILMAX) bytes) |	|	
HIMSAV (F349H) -->	|-----|	|	
	| Disk interface |	|	
	| work area |	|	
F380H -->	|-----|	--+	
	:	System	:
	:	work area	:

3.3 Storage format of BASIC programs

Programs are stored in memory as shown in Figure 2.11 and the meaning of its contents are described below.

Figure 2.11 Text storage format

Text start code (8000H)

```
-----
| 00 |
-----
```

Link pointer	Line number	Text	Code for the end of line (EOL)
| XX | XX |	| XX | XX |	| XX | XX | . . .	| XX | | 00 |

List of the first line number

```

+-----+
|
| -----
+-->| XX | XX | | XX | XX | | XX | . . . | XX | | 00 |
|-----|
|
+-----+
|
| . . .
+--> . . .
|
| . . . Line number
|
| . . .
|
|
+-----+
|
| -----
+-->| XX | XX | | XX | XX | | XX | . . . | XX | | 00 |
|-----|
|
| List of the last line number
+-----+
|
| -----
+-->| 00 | 00 | Code for the end of text (EOT)
|-----|

```

Note: Link pointers and line numbers are stored with their low bytes first and high bytes last.

* Link pointer

The text pointer to the next line is given in the form of an absolute address.

* Line number

This stores the line number of the program, normally the values from 0 to 65529 (from 0000H to FFF9H). It is possible to make line numbers of 65530 or more, but LIST command does not list them.

* Text

The program body is stored here in the intermediate code format. Reserved words (keywords), operators, numeric values are converted to the intermediate

codes, and others (such as variable names or string constantes) are stored as character codes. Table 2.20 lists the intermediate codes and Figure 2.12 shows the numeric formats in text.

See the appendix at the end of this book for character codes. Graphic characters are stored in 2 bytes (2 characters) of "CHR\$(1) + (graphic character code + 64)", so be careful when defining graphic characters.

Table 2.20 List of intermediate codes

| >	| EE	|	| ERR	| E2	|	| PAINT	| BF	|
| =	| EF	|	| ERROR	| A6	|	| PDL	| FF A4	|
| <	| F0	|	| EXP	| FF 8B	|	| PEEK	| FF 97	|
| +	| F1	|	| FIELD	| B1	|	| PLAY	| C1	|
| -	| F2	|	| FILES	| B7	|	| POINT	| ED	|
| *	| F3	|	| FIX	| FF A1	|	| POKE	| 98	|
| /	| F4	|	| FN	| DE	|	| POS	| FF 91	|
| ^	| F5	|	| FOR	| 82	|	| PRESET	| C3	|
| \	| FC	|	| FPOS	| FF A7	|	| PRINT	| 91	|
| ABS	| FF 86	|	| FRE	| FF 8F	|	| PSET	| C2	|
| AND	| F6	|	| GET	| B2	|	| PUT	| B3	|
| ASC	| FF 95	|	| GOSUB	| 8D	|	| READ	| 87	|
| ATN	| FF 8E	|	| GOTO	| 89	|	| REM	| 3A 8F	|
| ATTR\$	| E9	|	| HEX\$	| FF 9B	|	| RENUM	| AA	|
| AUTO	| A9	|	| IF	| 8B	|	| RESTORE	| 8C	|
| BASE	| C9	|	| IMP	| FA	|	| RESUME	| A7	|
| BEEP	| C0	|	| INKEY\$	| EC	|	| RETURN	| 8E	|
| BIN\$	| FF 9D	|	| INP	| FF 90	|	| RIGHT\$	| FF 82	|
| BLOAD	| CF	|	| INPUT	| 85	|	| RND	| FF 88	|
| BSAVE	| D0	|	| INSTR	| E5	|	| RSET	| B9	|
| CALL	| CA	|	| INT	| FF 85	|	| RUN	| 8A	|
| CDBL	| FF A0	|	| IPL	| D5	|	| SAVE	| BA	|
| CHR\$	| FF 96	|	| KEY	| CC	|	| SCREEN	| C5	|
| CINT	| FF 9E	|	| KILL	| D4	|	| SET	| D2	|
| CIRCLE	| BC	|	| LEFT\$	| FF 81	|	| SGN	| FF 84	|
| CLEAR	| 92	|	| LEN	| FF 92	|	| SIN	| FF 89	|
| CLOAD	| 9B	|	| LET	| 88	|	| SOUND	| C4	|
| CLOSE	| B4	|	| LFILES	| BB	|	| SPACE\$	| FF 99	|
| CLS	| 9F	|	| LINE	| AF	|	| SPC (	| DF	|
| CMD	| D7	|	| LIST	| 93	|	| SPRITE	| C7	|
| COLOR	| BD	|	| LLIST	| 9E	|	| SQR	| FF 87	|
| CONT	| 99	|	| LOAD	| B5	|	| STEP	| DC	|
| COPY	| D6	|	| LOC	| FF AC	|	| STICK	| FF A2	|
| COS	| FF 8C	|	| LOCATE	| D8	|	| STOP	| 90	|
| CSAVE	| 9A	|	| LOF	| FF AD	|	| STR\$	| FF 93	|
| CSNG	| FF 9F	|	| LOG	| FF 8A	|	| STRIG	| FF A3	|
| CSRLIN	| E8	|	| LPOS	| FF 9C	|	| STRING\$	| E3	|
| CVD	| FF AA	|	| LPRINT	| 9D	|	| SWAP	| A4	|
| CVI	| FF A8	|	| LSET	| B8	|	| TAB (	| DB	|
| CVS	| FF A9	|	| MAX	| CD	|	| TAN	| FF 8D	|
| DATA	| 84	|	| MERGE	| B6	|	| THEN	| DA	|
| DEF	| 97	|	| MID\$	| FF 83	|	| TIME	| CB	|
| DEFDBL	| AE	|	| MKD\$	| FF B0	|	| TO	| D9	|
| DEFINT	| AC	|	| MKI\$	| FF AE	|	| TROFF	| A3	|
| DEFSNG	| AD	|	| MKS\$	| FF AF	|	| TRON	| A2	|
| DEFSTR	| AB	|	| MOD	| FB	|	| USING	| E4	|
| DELETE	| A8	|	| MOTOR	| CE	|	| USR	| DD	|
| DIM	| 86	|	| NAME	| D3	|	| VAL	| FF 94	|

| DRAW	|	BE	|	| NEW	|	94	|	|	VARPTR	|	E7	|
| DSKF	|	FF A6	|	| NEXT	|	83	|	|	VDP	|	C8	|
| DSKI\$	|	EA	|	| NOT	|	E0	|	|	VPEEK	|	FF 98	|
| DSKO\$	|	D1	|	| OCT\$	|	FF 9A	|	|	VPOKE	|	C6	|
| ELSE	|	3A A1	|	| OFF	|	EB	|	|	WAIT	|	96	|
| END	|	81	|	| ON	|	95	|	|	WIDTH	|	A0	|
| EOF	|	FF AB	|	| OPEN	|	B0	|	|	XOR	|	F8	|
| EQV	|	F9	|	| OR	|	F7	|	-----				
| ERASE	|	A5	|	| OUT	|	9C	|					
| ERL	|	E1	|	| PAD	|	FF A5	|					

Figure 2.12 Numeral formats in text

Octal number (&O)	| 0B | XX : XX |	
Hexadecimal number (&H)	| 0C | XX : XX |	
Line number (after RUN)	| 0D | XX : XX |	----- Absolute address of the destination line for the branch instruction in memory.
Line number (before RUN)	| 0E | XX : XX |	----- Destination line number for the branch instruction. After RUN, identification code is made 0DH and the line number is changed to the absolute address.
Integer from 10 to 255 (%)	| 0F : XX |	
Integer from 0 to 9 (%)	| | 11 to 1A	
Integer from 256 to 32767 (%)	| 1C | XX : XX |	
Single precision real (!)	| 1D | XX : XX : XX : XX |	
Double precision real (#)	| 1F | XX : XX : XX : XX : : XX : XX : XX : XX |	
Binary (&B)	| "&" | "B" | . . .	----- Characters of "0" or "1" following "&B"

Numbers called "identification codes" are assigned numeric values to distinguish them from reserved words and variable names, and by referring to them the following values can be recognised.

The high and low bytes of a 2-byte numeric value are stored in reverse.

Signed numeric values have only the intermediate codes + or - preceding the identifying codes, numeral values themselves are always stored as positive values. Floating-point notations are almost the same as the descriptions of Math-Pack (Mathematical Package) in the APPENDIX, note that numerical values are always stored as positive. Binary numbers (&B) do not have identifying codes and are stored as ASCII codes.

4. LINKING WITH ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE PROGRAMS

As described so far, MSX BASIC version 2.0 has powerful features, but, if you wish to save execution time even more or to make full use of MSX2 hardware, you should use assembly language. The following sections show how to call assembly language programs from BASIC and gives the information you will need.

4.1 USR Function

To call the assembly language routine from BASIC, follow the steps described below. The value in parenthesis of the USR function is passed to the assembly language routine as an argument. The argument may be either an expression or a string expression.

1. Specify the starting address of the assembly language program for the execution, using DEF USR statement.
2. Call the assembly language program by USR function.
3. Execute RET (C9H) when returning from the assembly language routine to BASIC.

e.g.) To call the assembly language program whose starting address is C000H:

```
DEFUSR=&HC000
A=USR(0)
```

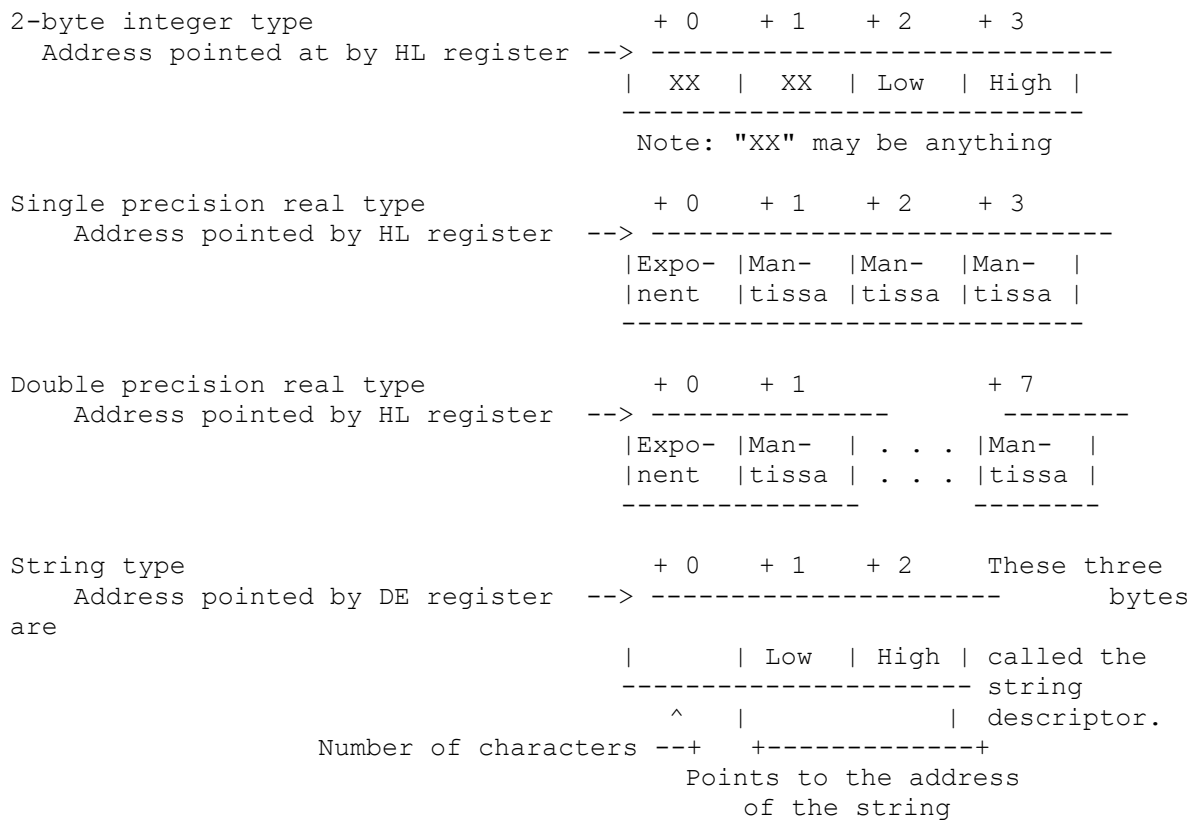
4.2 Data Exchange by the Argument and Return Value of USR Function

When the argument is passed from BASIC to the assembly language program, its type can be checked by examining the contents of register A in the assembly language program (see Table 2.21). Since the object value is stored in the form as shown in Figure 2.13 according to the argument type, you can get the value according to the format. As an example, List 2.1 shows a program which receives an argument of the string type.

Table 2.21 Argument types assigned to register A

|	2	| 2-byte integer type	|
|	3	| String type	|
|	4	| Single precision real type	|
|	8	| Double precision real type	|

Figure 2.13 How values are passed as arguments



List 2.1 Example of the argument of string type

```

;*****
; List 2.1    print string with USR function
;             to use, do DEF USR=&HB000 : A$=USR("STRING")
;*****
;
CHPUT    EQU    00A2H           ;character output

        ORG     0B000H

RDARG:   CP      3
        RET     NZ             ;parameter is not string

        PUSH    DE
        POP     IX             ;IX := string descriptor
        LD      A,(IX+0)       ;get string length
        LD      L,(IX+1)       ;get string pointer (low)
        LD      H,(IX+2)       ;get string pointer (high)
        OR      A
        RET     Z             ;if length = 0

RD1:     PUSH    AF
        LD      A,(HL)         ;get a characetr
        CALL    CHPUT          ;put a character
        POP     AF
  
```



```

DEC    A
RET    Z
INC    HL
JR     RD1

END

```

=====

On the other hand, these values passed as arguments can be passed to BASIC as
 as
 USR function values by changing them in the assembly language program. In
 this case the type of return value can also be changed to types other than
 of
 the argument from BASIC by changing VALTYP (F663H). Note that the amount of
 characters for a string cannot be changed.

4.3 Making New Commands

In MSX the reserved words "CMD" and "IPL" are currently unused and by
 changing the pointers to these words (FE0DH and FE03H) to jump to your own
 assembly language routine, new commands can be built. List 2.2 shows a
 simple
 example.

List 2.2 Making CMD command

```

=====
;*****
; List 2.2 make CMD command ( turn on/off the CAPS LOCK )
; to initialize command:      DEF USR=&HB000 : A=USR(0)
; to use command:            CMD
;*****
;
CHGCAP EQU    0132H          ;CAPS LAMP on/off
CAPST  EQU    0FCABH        ;CAPS LOCK status
HCMD   EQU    0FE9DH        ;CMD HOOK

      ORG     0B000H

;----- CMD initialize ----- Note: Executing this section adds the
                                CMD command

      LD      BC,5           ;NEW HOOK SET
      LD      DE,HCMD
      LD      HL,HDAT
      LDIR
      RET

;----- new HOOK data ----- Note: 5-byte data to be written into
                                hook (FE0DH)

HDAT:  POP     AF
      JP      CAPKEY
      NOP

;----- executed by CMD ----- Note: Actual CMD command

```

```

CAPKEY: CALL    CHGCAP
        LD      A, (CAPST)
        CPL
        LD      (CAPST),A
        RET

        END

```

=====

The first "POP AF" written to the pointer in this case, discards the error handling addresses stacked at "CMD" execution. Without this, the "RET" command would jump to the error handling routine instead of returning to BASIC. It is a way to use this address for printing errors inside of user routine.

These pointers are reserved for future expansion, so should not be used with application programs on the market.

4.4 Expansion of CMD command

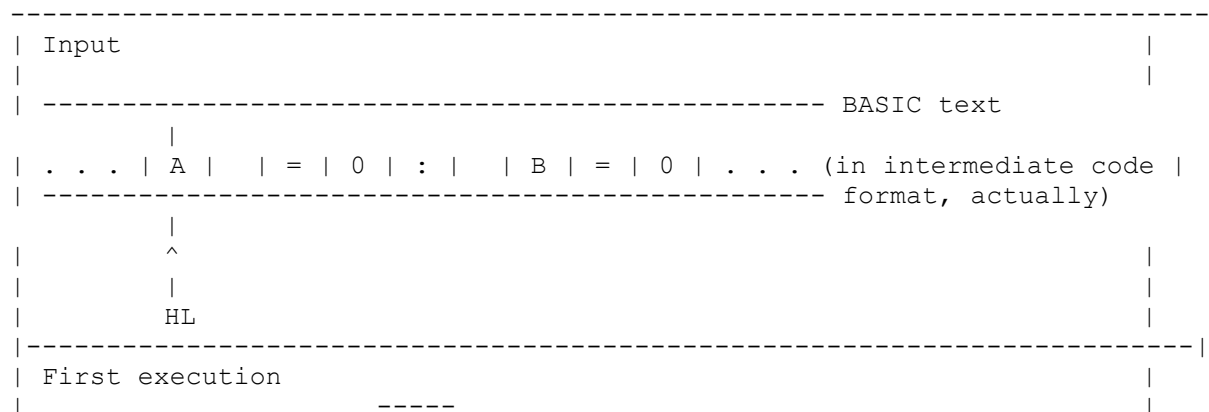
For more sophisticated expansions of statements it is useful if arguments can be passed to the CMD command. As the HL register points to the next location after "CMD" in the BASIC text when the assembly language routine is called, it can be done by appreciating the successive string. The following is a list of internal routines, useful for these.

* CHRGT (4666H/MAIN) ---- Extract one character from text (see Figure 2.14)

Input: HL <-- Address pointing to text
Output: HL <-- Address of the extracted character
A <-- Extracted character
Z flag <-- ON at the end of line (: or 00H)
CY flag <-- ON if 0 to 9

Purpose: Extract one character from the text at (HL + 1). Spaces are skipped.

Figure 2.14 Input/output state of CHRGT



```

+--> A | = |
      |   -----
-----
. . . | A |   | = | 0 | : |   | B | = | 0 | . . . spaces are skipped
-----
      ^
      |
      HL
-----

Second execution

      +--> A | 0 |   CY | 1 |
          |   -----
-----
. . . | A |   | = | 0 | : |   | B | = | 0 | . . . when reading a number |
-----
      ^
      |
      HL
-----

Third execution

      +--> A | : |   Z | 1 |
          |   -----
-----
. . . | A |   | = | 0 | : |   | B | = | 0 | . . . when reading
-----
      ^
      |
      HL
-----
the end of line

```

Figure 2.15 Input/output state of FRMEVL

```

| -----
|
| ...| B | = | A | * | 3 | + | 1 | 0 | 0 | / | 2 | 0 | : | C | = | 0 | ...
|
| -----
|
|                                     | ^
| +-----+-----+-----+-----+ |
|                                     | HL
|
|   -----
|   DAC | calculated |
|       | result   |
|   -----
|
|   ----- The case of double precision
|   VALTYP | 8 | real number, for example
|   -----
|
| -----
--

```

* FRMQNT (542F/MAIN) ---- Evaluate an expression un 2-byte integer type.

Input: HL <-- Starting address of the expression in text

Output: HL <-- Address after the expression

DE <-- Result of evaluation of the expression

Purpose: Evaluate an expression and make output in integer type (INT). When the result is beyond the range of 2-byte integer type, an "Ovwrflow" error occurs and the system returns to the BASIC command level.

* GETBYT (521C/MAIN) ---- Evaluate an expression in 1-byte integer type.

Input: HL <-- Starting address of the expression in text

Output: HL <-- Next address of expression

A, E <-- Result of expression evaluation

(A and E contains the same value.)

Purpose: Evaluate an expression and make 1-byte integer output. When the result is beyond the range of 1-byte integer type, an "Illegal function call"

error occurs and the execution returns to BASIC command level.

* FRESTR (67D0/MAIN) ---- Register a string.

Input: [VALTYP (F663H)] <-- Type (if not string type, an error occurs)

[DAC (F7F6H)] <-- Pointer to string descriptor

Output: HL <-- Pointer to string descriptor

Purpose: Register the result of the string type obtained by FRMEVL and obtain

its string descriptor. When evaluating a string, this is generally combined with FRMEVL described above to use as follows:

```

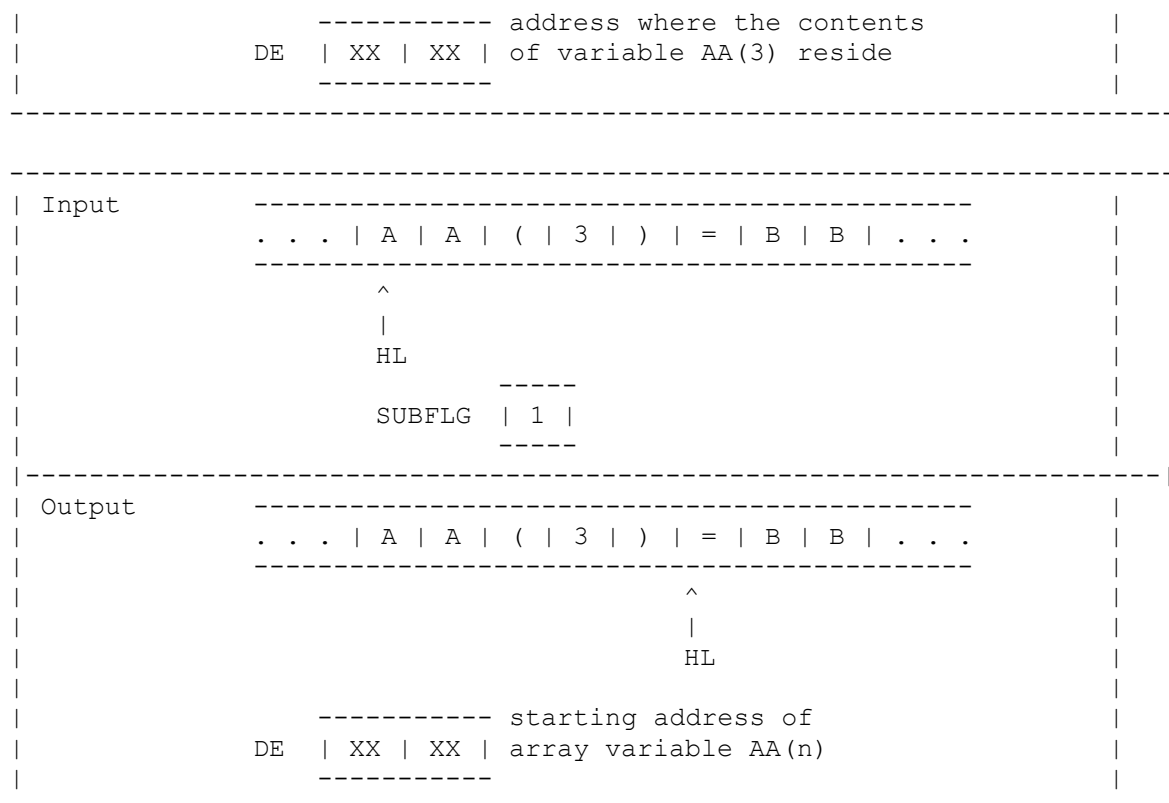
.
.
.
CALL  FRMEVL
PUSH  HL
CALL  FRESTR
EX     DE,HL
POP    HL
LD     A,(DE)
.
.
.

```

```
* PTRGET (5EA4/MAIN) ---- Obtain the address for the storage of a variable
                             (see Figure 2.16).
```

```
Output: HL <-- Address after the variable name
        DE <-- Address where the contents of the objective variable
           is stored
```

Figure 2.16 Input/output state of PTRGET



* NEWSTT (4601H/MAIN) ---- Execute a text

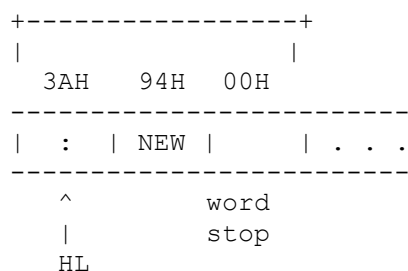
Input: HL <-- Address of the text to be executed

Output: ----

Purpose: Execute a text. The state of the text is necessary to be as same as shown in Figure 2.17.

Figure 2.17 Memory setting for NEWSTT

Intermediate codes of BASIC are contained here.



Since these internal routines are for BASIC texts, the same error handling as

BASIC is done when an error occurs. In this case, by changing H.ERROR (FFB1H), the user can handle the error (the E register contains the error number) (see List 2.3).

List 2.3 Changing error handling routine

=====

```

;*****
; List 2.3 Your own error
; To use, do DEF USR=&HB000 : A=USR(0)
;*****
;
HERR EQU 0FFB1H ;error hook
SYNERR EQU 2 ;syntax error code
CHPUT EQU 0A2H ;character output
NEWSTT EQU 4601H ;run
READYR EQU 409BH

ORG 0B000H

Note:
;----- command initialize ----- When this portion is executed, the error
handling routine is changed.

LD BC,5 ;SET NEW HOOK
LD DE,HERR
LD HL,HDAT
LDIR
RET

HDAT: JP ERROR
NOP
NOP

Note:
;----- error routine ----- Error handling body

ERROR: LD A,E ;when in error, E holds error code
CP SYNERR ;syntax error ?
RET NZ ;no

LD HL,DATA1 ;yes
LOOP: LD A,(HL) ;put new error message
CP "$"
JR Z,EXIT
PUSH HL
CALL CHPUT
POP HL
INC HL
JR LOOP

EXIT: JP READYR ;BASIC hot start

DATA1: DEFM OOHPS!! ;new error message
DB 07H,07H,07H,"$"

END

```

4.5 Interrupt usage

The Z80 CPU has INT and NMI interrupt terminals. The MSX, however, uses only INT. The INT terminal gets 60 [Hz] signals, so timer interrupts are executed 60 times per 1 second. As the interrupt mode of Z80 is set to 1, 38H is called when an interrupt occurs and then the system control jumps to the

timer interrupt routine, where various operations such as key input are done.

The timer interrupt routine jumps to hook H.TIMI (FD9FH) in mid course. Using

this hook enables the user to add a function to this timer interrupt routine.

Though there is ordinarily only a RET command, be careful when peripherals such as disks are connected and this hook is already in use. In this case, careless modifications causes peripherals to be disabled, so prearrangement is necessary to make machines to execute that normally. List 2.4 is an example of this handling and the interrupt usage.

List 2.4 Correct usage of timer interrupt hook

```
=====
;*****
; List 2.4   How to use HOOK safety
;           This routine uses TIMER INTERRUPT HOOK
;           and turn on/off CAPS LOCK
;           To start, do DEF USR=&HB000 : A=USR(0)
;           To end,   do DEF USR=&HB030 : A=USR(0)
;*****
;
CHGCAP EQU    0132H           ;CAPS LAMP on/off
CAPST  EQU    0FCABH         ;CAPS LOCK status
TIMI   EQU    0FD9FH         ;timer interrupt hook
JPCODE EQU    0C3H
TIMER  EQU    020H

      ORG     0B000H

;----- interrupt on ----- Note:  restore the former hook
;                               when changing the hook

INTON: DI
      LD      HL,TIMI         ;OLD HOOK SAVE
      LD      DE,HKSAVE
      LD      BC,5
      LDIR

      LD      A,JPCODE        ;NEW HOOK SET
      LD      (TIMI),A
      LD      HL,INT
      LD      (TIMI+1),HL
      EI
      RET

      ORG     0B030H

;----- interrupt off ----- Note:  restore the reserved hook and exit

INTOFF: DI
      LD      HL,HKSAVE
      LD      DE,TIMI
      LD      BC,5
      LDIR
      EI
      RET
```



```

;----- interrupt routine -----

INT:    PUSH    AF
        LD      A, (CAPST)
        OR      A
        JR      Z,CAPON

CAPOFF: LD      A, (COUNT1)
        DEC     A
        LD      (COUNT1),A
        JR      NZ,FIN
        LD      A,TIMER
        LD      (COUNT1),A
        XOR     A
        LD      (CAPST),A
        LD      A,0FFH
        CALL    CHGCAP
        JR      FIN

CAPON:  LD      A, (COUNT2)
        DEC     A
        LD      (COUNT2),A
        JR      NZ,FIN
        LD      A,TIMER
        LD      (COUNT2),A
        LD      A,0FFH
        LD      (CAPST),A
        XOR     A
        CALL    CHGCAP

FIN:    POP     AF
        CALL    HKSAVE          ;old HOOK call

        RET

COUNT1: DEFB    TIMER
COUNT2: DEFB    TIMER

HKSAVE: NOP                    ;old HOOK save area
        NOP
        NOP
        NOP
        RET

        END

```

```
=====
```

5. NOTES ON SOFTWARE DEVELOPMENT

There are some matters, when developing the software for MSX, that should be followed so as to make the software work without any problems on any MSX machines. The following describes these matters and introduces information that will help you develop software.

* BIOS

The purpose of BIOS is to separate the hardware and the software and to make the software still valid if the hardware changes. Applications for sale which manage input and output should use BIOS (except for VDP).

BIOS is called through the jump table which begins at 0000H of MAIN-ROM. Though MSX2 has a jump table on SUB-ROM, it is used for calling the extended functions. The branch destination of the jump table or, the contents of BIOS may be modified for the hardware modification or the extension of the function, so applications should not call them directly. Though this book has some examples that call addresses other than the BIOS jump table, you should consider them for information only (see BIOS list in APPENDIX). Applications can call Math-Pack and internal routines for the extended statements described above. These will not be changed in the future.

* Work area

F380H to FFFFH of MAIN-RAM cannot be used, as it is a work area for BIOS and BASIC interpreter. Free space in the work area cannot be used, because it is reserved for the future use. See "3.1 User's area" for the work area of the disk.

* Initialisation of RAM and stack pointer

The contents of RAM are unpredictable when the machine is powered and areas other than system work area are not initialised. Applications should initialise the work area. There was once an application which expected the contents of RAM to be 00H and was unusable.

The value of the stack pointer when the INIT routine (see Section 7 of Chapter 5) in the ROM cartridge is called is unpredictable and the value when disk interface has been initialised is smaller than when not. For these reasons some programs which did not initialise the stack pointer had unpredictable results. Programs which are invoked by the INIT routine and continue processing (that is, programs which do not need to use peripherals such as disks or BASIC interpreter) should initialise the stack pointer.

* Work area of extended BIOS

When using extended BIOS calls, a stack should be placed above C000H so that CPU can refer to the work area even if the slot is switched over. For the same reason, FCB of RS-232C should be above 8000H.

* Work area of device drivers, etc.

Special attention should be paid for the allocation of the work area of

programs which reside in memory with another program at the same time, programs such as the device driver or a subroutine called from BASIC.

The INIT routine of the cartridge changes BOTTOM (FC48H), reserves the area between the old BOTTOM and new BOTTOM as its work area, and records the address of the work area to 2-byte area SLTWRK (FD09H) allocated for each slot. For more details, see Section 7 of Chapter 5.

* Hook

When using the RS-232C cartridge, change the hook for an interrupt. For example, if another cartridge uses an interrupt hook, the RS-232C cartridge cannot use the same hook. To prevent this, the previous contents of the hook

(inter-slot call command for the interrupt handling routine of RS-232C cartridge, in the example above) should be copied to another location, and, when called by the hook, it should be called so that all cartridges intending

to use the hook can receive control (see Figure 2.18). For more details, see

Section 7 of Chapter 5.

Figure 2.18 Initialisation of the hook

Initialisation of the hook of program 1

```

-----> -----
| Hook | <---+ | Program 1 |
-----+-----

```

Initialisation of the hook of program 2

```

-----> -----+----> -----
| Hook | <---+ | Program 2 | ---+ | Program 1 |
-----+-----<-----

```

* VRAM capacity

The capacity of VRAM can be found by evaluating bits 1 and 2 of MODE (FAFCH) (see Table 2.22).

Table 2.22 Getting the information about the VRAM capacity

[FAFCH]		VRAM Capacity	
Bit 2	Bit 1		
0	0	16K (MSX1)	
0	1	64K (MSX2)	
1	0	128K (MSX2)	

* BASIC version number

The following methods can be used for applications to find out the version number of BASIC.

1. Read the contents of 2DH of MAIN-ROM (00H = version 1.0, 01H = version 2.0, and so on).
2. In version 2.0 or later versions, EXBRSA (FAF8H) contains the slot address of SUB-ROM. When it has none (00H), the version is version 1.0.

* International MSX

There are different kinds of MSX for various countries. The following items are different by country:

- Keyboard arrangement, character set, PRINT USING format
- Timer interrupt frequency

The version of machine can be found by reading the ID byte information in ROM

(see Figure 2.19) and the correspondence for MSX of each country will be accomplished (see Table 2.23).

Figure 2.19 Contents of ID byte

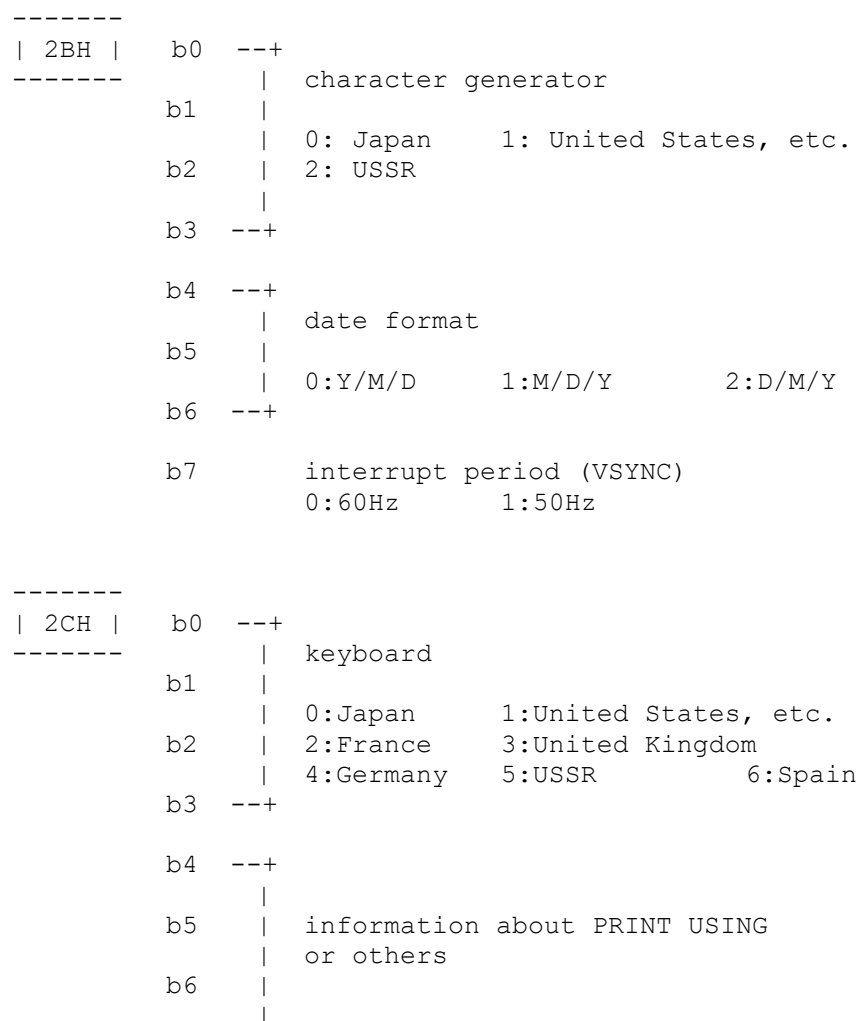


Table 2.23 MSX format for each country

--		PRINT USING					
		Date	-----				
Country	TV set	format	Initial screen mode	String length	Re- place char.	Curren- cy symbol	
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----							
Japan	NTSC (60Hz)	YY/MM/DD	Screen 1		&	@	
(yen)							
UK	PAL (50Hz)	DD/MM/YY	Screen 0		\	&	
(pound)							
Internat.	PAL (50Hz)	MM/DD/YY	Screen 0		\	&	
\$(dollar)							
US	NTSC (60Hz)	MM/DD/YY	Screen 0		\	&	
\$(dollar)							
France	SECAM (50Hz)	DD/MM/YY	Screen 0		\	&	
\$(dollar)							
Germany	PAL (50Hz)	DD/MM/YY	Screen 0		\	&	
\$(dollar)							
USSR	NTSC (60Hz)	MM/DD/YY	Screen 0		\	&	
\$(dollar)							
Spain	PAL (50Hz)	MM/DD/YY	Screen 0		\	&	
\$(dollar)							

--							

* Escape sequence

MSX has the escape sequence feature (see Appendix), which can be used in the PRINT statement of BASIC, and in console output of BIOS or BDOS call (MSX-DOS). The escape sequence feature is a subset of DEC VT52 terminal and Heathkit H19 terminal.

* Returning to BASIC

- Warm start

After selecting a slot of MAIN-ROM, jump to 409BH of MAIN-ROM. If the work area of BASIC has not been destroyed, the BASIC prompt will be displayed. The contents of register and stack at the jump are ignored.

Another way is to execute the next command in internal routine NEWSTT (see 4.4 of Chapter 4) (see Figure 2.20)

Figure 2.20 Input setting of NEWSTT for the warm start

3AH 81H 00H

```

| : | END | | = (:END)
-----
^      word
|      stop
HL

```

* Auto start

In the case of simple game cartridges which do not use the BIOS or BASIC work areas, the program can be invoked by writing a starting address for the program to "INIT" in ROM header. But using this method prevents the initial settings of another cartridge, so disk drives cannot be used.

To prevent this, the hook "H.STKE" is at FEDAH; write the inter-slot call command in the program to be invoked at the execution on "INIT" routine of the cartridge, and return to the system by RET command. Then after initialising all cartridges and after preparing the DISK BASIC environment if there is a disk, the hook is called, so the objective program can be invoked. This method is also effective when there is no disk (see APPENDIX).

Error code list

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. NEXT without FOR | There is no FOR statement corresponding with the NEXT statement. |
| 2. Syntax error | There is an error in syntax. |
| 3. RETURN without GOSUB | The RETURN statement does not correspond to the GOSUB statement. |
| 4. Out of DATA | There is no data to be READ by the READ statement. |
| 5. Illegal function call | There is an error in the function or numeric value specification. |
| 6. Overflow | The numeric value has overflow. |
| 7. Out of memory | The free area has been exhausted. |
| 8. Undefined line number | There is no such a line number in the program. |
| 9. Subscript out of range | The subscript value of the array variable exceeds the declared range. |
| 10. Redimensioned array | The array is declared twice. |
| 11. Division by zero | The attempt to divide by zero is made. The negative exponent of zero is done. |
| 12. Illegal direct | The statement which cannot be executed in the direct mode is carried out directly. |
| 13. Type mismatch | There is a conflict in the data types. |

14. Out of string space	The string space is exhausted.
15. String too long	The length of the string is longer than 255 characters.
16. String formula too complex	The specified string is too complex.
17. Can't CONTINUE	The CONT command cannot be executed.
18. Undefined user function	An attempt was made to use the user-defined function which has not been defined by DEF FN statement.
19. Device I/O error	An error occurred in input/output of device.
20. Verify error	The program on cassette and the one in memory are not the same.
21. No RESUME	There is no RESUME statement in the error handling routine.
22. RESUME without error	The RESUME statement is used other than in the error handling routine.
23. Undefined.	
24. Missing operand	Necessary parameters are not specified.
25. Line buffer overflow	There are too many characters for the input data.
26 to 49. Undefined.	
50. FIELD overflow	The field size defined in FIELD statement exceeds 256 bytes.
51. Internal error	An error occurred inside BASIC.
52. Bad file number	File number which has not been OPENed is specified. The specified file number exceeds the number specified in MAXFILES statement.
53. File not found	The specified file is not found.
54. File already open	The file has already been OPENed.
55. Input past end	The attempt to read the file is made after reading the end of it.
56. Bad file name	There is an error in the specification of the file name.
57. Direct statement	Data other than the program is found while loading the ASCII format program.
58. Sequential I/O only	Random access to the sequential file is made.
59. File not OPEN	The specified file has not been OPENed yet.
60. Bad FAT	Unusual disk format.

61. Bad file mode	An incorrect input/output operation is made in the OPENed mode.
62. Bad drive name	There is an error in the drive name specification.
63. Bad sector number	There is an error in the sector number.
64. File still open	The file has not been closed.
65. File already exists	The file name specified in NAME statement already exists on the disk.
66. Disk full	The free area of the disk has been exhausted.
67. Too many files	The number of files exceeds 112 (the directory space has been exhausted).
68. Disk write protected	The disk is protected from writing.
69. Disk I/O error	Some trouble occurred in the disk input/output.
70. Disk offline	The diskette is not in.
71. Rename accross disk	NAME statement is done across different disks.
72. File write protected	The file has the read-only attribute set.
73. Directory already exists	The directory name specified in CALL MKDIR statement already exists.
74. Directory not found	The specified directory is not found.
75. RAM disk already exists	Attempt to create the DOS 2 RAM disk when it already exists is made.
76 to 255. Undefined.	

* Note: Errors with codes 72 to 75 are added from version 2 of MSX DISK-BASIC. In version 1 they are undefined.

Use larger numbers first for user error definition.

MSX2 TECHNICAL HANDBOOK

Edited by: ASCII Systems Division
Published by: ASCII Corporation - JAPAN
First edition: March 1987

Text files typed by: Nestor Soriano (Konami Man) - SPAIN
March 1997

Changes from the original:

- In Figure 4.3, "Port#17" indication is corrected to "R#17".
- In Figure 4.4, "00" field in R#17 is corrected to "10".
- In section 3.2.2, subsection "Pattern name table", text "12 low order bits of the address (A9 to A0)" is corrected to "12 low order bits of the address (A11 to A0)".
- In Figure 4.17, the numerations of the two last rows in the Screen correspondence table, originally "22" and "23", are corrected to "25" and "26" respectively.
- In section 3.2.2, subsection "Blink table", the text "the 9 low order bits of the address (A9 to A0)" is corrected to "the 8 low order bits of the address (A8 to A0)".
- In Figure 4.25, indication "Specifies the value of the screen (0 to 15)" is changed to "Specifies the border colour (0-15)".
- In Figure 4.34, in the screen correspondance table, the three stages of the screen are named "Upper stage of screen" in the original. This is corrected, and the stages are named "Upper", "Middle" and "Lower".
- The title of section 3.6.3 is "Screen colour mode specification" in the original. The word "mode" is erased.
- In section 3.8.2, the text "by writing the 2 high order bits" is corrected to "by writing the high order bit".
- The title of Figure 4.63 is "Judging the conflict (sprite mode 2)" in the original. This is corrected to "Judging the conflict (sprite mode 1)".
- In Figure 4.68, indication "Color code = 8 or 4 or 12" is changed to "Color code = 8 or 4 = 12".

==

CHAPTER 4 - VDP AND DISPLAY SCREEN (Parts 1 to 5)

The MSX2 machines uses an advanced VDP (video display processor) for its

display screen, the V9938 (MSX-VIDEO). This LSI chip allows for several new graphics features to be accessed by the MSX2 video display. It is also fully compatible with the TMS9918A used in the MSX1.

Chapter 4 describes how to use this video display processor. It describes functions not accessible by BASIC. For mode details (e.g. hardware specifications, see V9938 MSX-VIDEO Technical Data Book (ASCII)).

1. MSX-VIDEO CONFIGURATION

The following features of the MSX-VIDEO give it a better display capabilities than the TMS9918A:

- * 512 colours with a 9-bit colour palette
- * Max. 512 x 424 dot resolution (when using the interlace)
- * Max. 256 colours at the same time
- * Full bitmap mode which makes graphic operations easy
- * Text display mode of 80 characters per line
- * LINE, SEARCH, AREA-MOVE executable by hardware
- * Up to 8 sprites on the same horizontal line
- * Different colours can be specified for each line in a sprite
- * Video signal digitizing feature built-in
- * Superimpose feature built-in

1.1 Registers

MSX-VIDEO uses 49 internal registers for its screen operations. These registers are referred to as "VDP registers" in this book. VDP registers are classified by function into three groups as described below. The control register group and status register group can be referred to using VDP(n) system variables from BASIC.

(1) Control register group (R#0 to R#23, R#32 to R#46)

This is a read-only 8-bit register group controlling MSX-VIDEO actions. Registers are expressed using the notation R#n. R#0 to R#23 are used to set the screen mode. R#32 to R#46 are used to execute VDP commands. These VDP commands will be described in detail in section 5. Control registers R#24 to R#31 do not exist. The roles of the different control registers are listed in Table 4.1.

Table 4.1 Control register list

--			
| R#n	| Corres-	|	|
|	| ponding	|	|
|	| VDP(n)	|	|
-----+-----+-----			
-			
| R#0	| VDP(0)	| mode register #0	|
| R#1	| VDP(1)	| mode register #1	|

| R#2	| VDP(2)	| pattern name table	|
| R#3	| VDP(3)	| colour table (LOW)	|
| R#4	| VDP(4)	| pattern generator table	|
| R#5	| VDP(5)	| sprite attribute table (LOW)	|
| R#6	| VDP(6)	| sprite pattern generator table	|
| R#7	| VDP(7)	| border colour/character colour at text mode	|
| R#8	| VDP(9)	| mode register #2	|
| R#9	| VDP(10)	| mode register #3	|
| R#10	| VDP(11)	| colour table (HIGH)	|
| R#11	| VDP(12)	| sprite attribute table (HIGH)	|
| R#12	| VDP(13)	| character colour at text blinks	|
| R#13	| VDP(14)	| blinking period	|
| R#14	| VDP(15)	| VRAM access address (HIGH)	|
| R#15	| VDP(16)	| indirect specification of S#n	|
| R#16	| VDP(17)	| indirect specification of P#n	|
| R#17	| VDP(18)	| indirect specification of R#n	|
| R#18	| VDP(19)	| screen location adjustment (ADJUST)	|
| R#19	| VDP(20)	| scanning line number when the interrupt occurs	|
| R#20	| VDP(21)	| colour burst signal 1	|
| R#21	| VDP(22)	| colour burst signal 2	|
| R#22	| VDP(23)	| colour burst signal 3	|
| R#23	| VDP(24)	| screen hard scroll	|
| R#32	| VDP(33)	| SX: X-coordinate to be transferred (LOW)	|
| R#33	| VDP(34)	| SX: X-coordinate to be transferred (HIGH)	|
| R#34	| VDP(35)	| SY: Y-coordinate to be transferred (LOW)	|
| R#35	| VDP(36)	| SY: Y-coordinate to be transferred (HIGH)	|
| R#36	| VDP(37)	| DX: X-coordinate to be transferred to (LOW)	|
| R#37	| VDP(38)	| DX: X-coordinate to be transferred to (HIGH)	|
| R#38	| VDP(39)	| DY: Y-coordinate to be transferred to (LOW)	|
| R#39	| VDP(40)	| DY: Y-coordinate to be transferred to (HIGH)	|
| R#40	| VDP(41)	| NX: num. of dots to be transferred in X direction (LOW)	|
| R#41	| VDP(42)	| NX: num. of dots to be transferred in X direction (HIGH)	|
| R#42	| VDP(43)	| NY: num. of dots to be transferred in Y direction (LOW)	|
| R#43	| VDP(44)	| NY: num. of dots to be transferred in Y direction (HIGH)	|
| R#44	| VDP(45)	| CLR: for transferring data to CPU	|
| R#45	| VDP(46)	| ARG: bank switching between VRAM and expanded VRAM	|
| R#46	| VDP(47)	| CMR: send VDP command	|

--			

(2) Status register (S#0 to S#9)

This is a read-only 8-bit register group which reads data from MSX-VIDEO. Registers are expressed using the notation S#n. The functions of the registers are listed in Table 4.2.

Table 4.2 Status register list

--		
| S#n	| Corres- ponding	| Function
|	| VDP(n)	|

-		
| S#0	| VDP(8)	| interrupt information
| S#1	| VDP(-1)	| interrupt information
| S#2	| VDP(-2)	| DP command control information/etc.
| S#3	| VDP(-3)	| coordinate detected (LOW)
| S#4	| VDP(-4)	| coordinate detected (HIGH)
| S#5	| VDP(-5)	| coordinate detected (LOW)
| S#6	| VDP(-6)	| coordinate detected (HIGH)
| S#7	| VDP(-7)	| data obtained by VDP command
| S#8	| VDP(-8)	| X-coordinate obtained by search command (LOW)
| S#9	| VDP(-9)	| X-coordinate obtained by search command (HIGH)

--		

(3) Colour palette register group (P#0 to P#15)

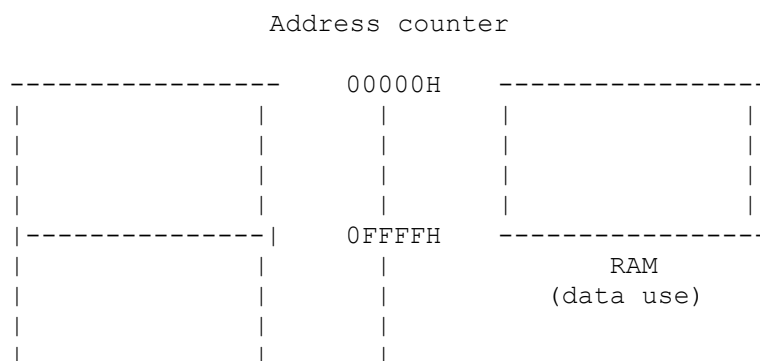
These registers are used to set the colour palette. Registers are expressed using the notation P#n where 'n' is the palette number which represents one of 512 colours. Each palette register has 9 bits allowing three bits to be used for each RGB colour (red, green, and blue).

1.2 VRAM

MSX-VIDEO can be connected with 128K bytes VRAM (Video RAM) and 64K bytes expanded RAM. MSX-VIDEO has a 17-bit counter for accessing this 128K bytes address area. Note that this memory is controlled by MSX-VIDEO and cannot be directly accessed by the CPU.

Expanded RAM memory cannot be directly displayed to the screen as can that of VRAM. However, it can be manipulated the same as VRAM when using the video processor commands. This large work area is very useful when processing screen data. Note that the MSX standard does not include instructions regarding expanded RAM, so taking advantage of this in program design could result in compatibility problems with other MSX machines.

Figure 4.1 VRAM and expanded RAM



```

----- 1FFFFH
      VRAM
    (screen use)

```

1.3 I/O ports

MSX-VIDEO has four I/O ports that send data back and forth the CPU. The functions of these ports are listed in Table 4.3. The ports are accessed by the CPU through its I/O addresses in the table below, addresses expressed as

n , n' are stored at address locations 6 and 7 in MAIN-ROM. Although $n = n' = 98H$ normally, this can be different on some machines, so port addresses should be obtained from these addresses for reliable results.

It is generally recommended that BIOS be used for I/O operations for purposes of compatibility. However, the screen display often requires high speed, so these I/O ports are capable of accessing MSX-VIDEO directly.

Table 4.3 MSX-VIDEO ports

Port	Address	Function
port #0 (READ)	n	read data from VRAM
port #0 (WRITE)	n'	write data to VRAM
port #1 (READ)	$n + 1$	read status register
port #1 (WRITE)	$n' + 1$	write to control register
port #2 (WRITE)	$n' + 2$	write to palette register
port #3 (WRITE)	$n' + 3$	write to indirectly specified register

Note: The value of n should be obtained by referring to address 6 in MAIN-ROM

The value of n' should be obtained by referring to address 7 in MAIN-ROM

2. ACCESS TO MSX-VIDEO

MSX-VIDEO can be accessed directly through the I/O ports without going through BIOS. This chapter describes how to do this.

2.1 Access to Registers

2.1.1 Writing data to control registers

The control registers are write-only registers. As described above, the partial contents of control registers ($R\#0$ to $R\#23$) can be obtained by referring to $VDP(n)$ from BASIC. This only reads the value which has been written in the work area of RAM ($F3DFH$ to $F3E6H$, $FFE7H$ to $FFF6H$) used for writing to registers.

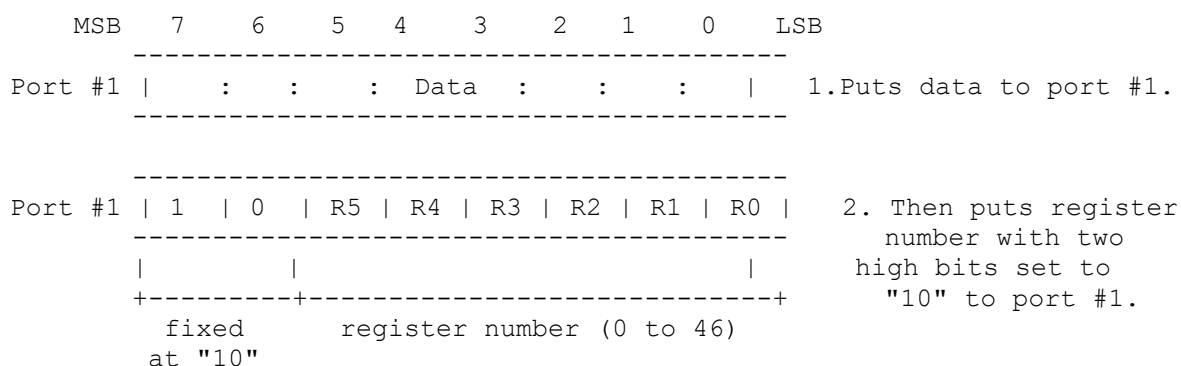
There are three ways, described below, to write data to control registers. Since MSX accesses MSX-VIDEO inside the timer interrupt routine to examine the occurrence of sprite conflicts, note that access procedure will not

inhibiting the interrupt when the registers are accessed in the proper way as described below.

(1) Direct access

The first way is to directly specify the data and where it is to be written to. Figure 4.2 illustrates the procedure. The data is first written to port#1 and then the destination register number is written to port#1 using the five least significant bits. The most significant bit is set to 1 and the second bit is set to 0. Thus the value would be 10XXXXXB in binary notation where XXXXX is the destination register number.

Figure 4.2 Direct access to R#n



Port#1 is also used to set VRAM addresses and is described in section 2.2. The most significant bit of the second byte sent to this port is the address/register flag and determines the operation to take place. When the bit is set to "1", writing data to a control register as described here will take place.

(2) Indirect Access (non-autoincrement mode)

The second way is to write data to the register specified as the objective register (R#17 contains the objective pointer). To begin with, store the register number to be accessed in R#17 by direct access. The most significant bit is set to 1 and the second bit to 0. Thus the value would be 10XXXXXB in binary notation where XXXXX is the objective register number. After this is done, data can be written to the objective register by sending data to port#3. This method is used for sending data to the same register continuously. An example would be for the execution of VDP commands.

Figure 4.3 Indirect access to R#n (non-autoincrement mode)

First byte



R#17	| 1 | 0 | R5 | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 |	1.Set register number n to R#17, with two
high	-----	
	| | | | | | | |	order bits set to "10".
	+-----+-----+	
	fixed n (0 to 46)	
	at "10"	

Port#3	| : : : Data : : : |	2.Send data to port#3.
	-----	The data is stored in register R#n.

Following bytes

Port#3	| : : : Data : : : |	3.After these are done,
	-----	data can be written
to		register R#n only by sending to port #3.

(3) Indirect Access (autoincrement mode)

The third way is to write date to the register indicated by R#17. R#17 is incremented each time data is sent to port#3. To begin with, store the beginning register number to be accessed in R#17 by direct access. The two most significant bits are set to 0. Thus the value would be 00XXXXXB in binary notation where XXXXX is the beginning register number.

Since this method allows writing data to continuous control registers effectively, it is useful when several continuous registers are to be changed at once. One example would be when the screen mode is changed.

Figure 4.4 Indirect access to R#n (autoincrement mode)

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB	
R#17	| 0 | 0 | R5 | R4 | R3 | R2 | R1 | R0 |	1.Set register number n to R#17, with two									
high	-----										
	| | | | | | | |	order bits set to "00".									
	+-----+-----+										
	fixed n (0 to 46)										
	at "00"										
Port#3	| : : : Data : : : |	2.Send data to port#3.									
	-----	The data is stored in register R#n.									
Port#3	| : : : Data : : : |	3.Data sent to next									
	-----	port#3 is stored to register R#(n+1).									
		.									
		.									
		.									

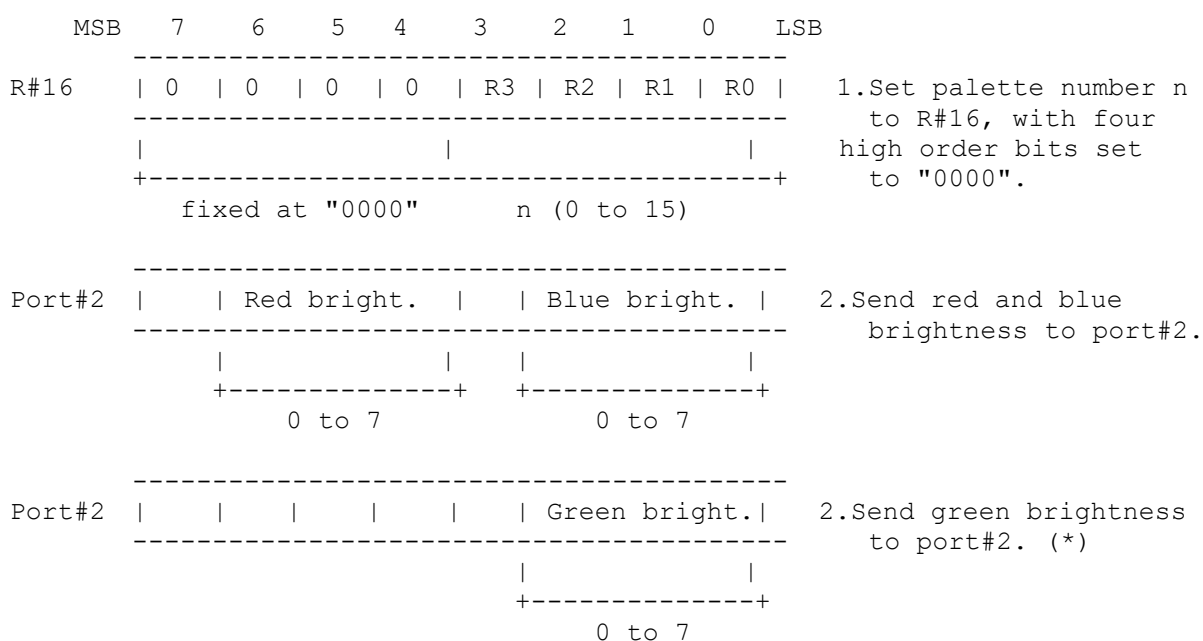
2.1.2 Setting a palette

To set data in the MSX-VIDEO palette registers (P#0 to P#15), specify the palette register number in the four lowest significant bits of R#16 (color palette pointer), and then send the data to port#2. Since palette registers have a length of 9 bits, data must be sent twice; red brightness and blue brightness first, then green brightness. Brightness is specified in the lower

three bits of a four bit segment. Refer to Figure 4.5 for details.

After data is sent to port#2 twice, R#16 is automatically incremented. This feature makes it easy to initialize all the palettes.

Figure 4.5 Setting a colour palette register



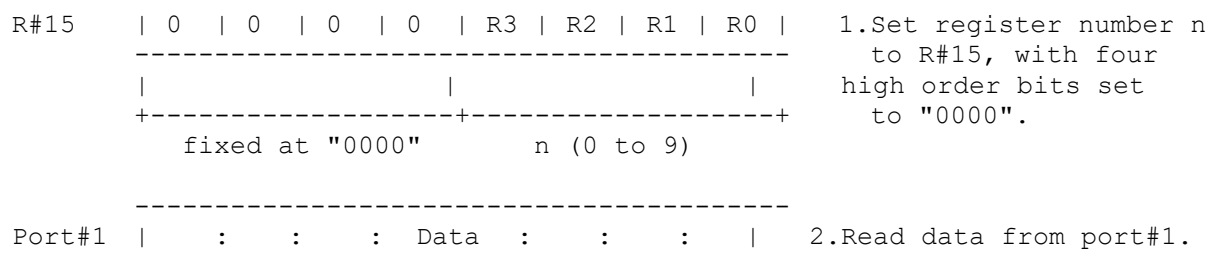
(*) Since R#16 is incremented at this point, setting next palette can be done by sending data to port#2 continuously.

2.1.3 Reading status registers

Status registers are read-only registers. Their contents can be read from port#1 by setting the status register number in the least significant four bits of R#15 (status register pointer) as shown in Figure 4.6. The four most significant bits are set to 0. Thus the value would be 0000XXXXB in binary notation where XXXX is the status register number. Interrupts should be inhibited before the status register is accessed. After the desired task is completed, R#15 should be set to 0 and the interrupts released.

Figure 4.6 Accessing status registers





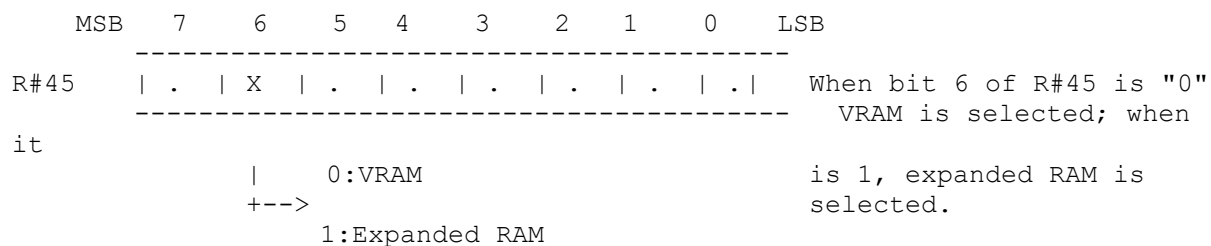
2.2 VRAM Access From the CPU

When a VRAM address is to be accessed from the CPU, follow the procedure described below.

(1) Bank switching

The first 64K bytes of VRAM (00000H to 0FFFFH) and the 64K bytes of expanded RAM both reside at the same address space as viewed by MSX-VIDEO. Bank switching is used so that they can both be online at the same time. Since MSX2 does not to use expanded VRAM, always select the VRAM bank. Bank switching is controlled by bit 6 of R#45.

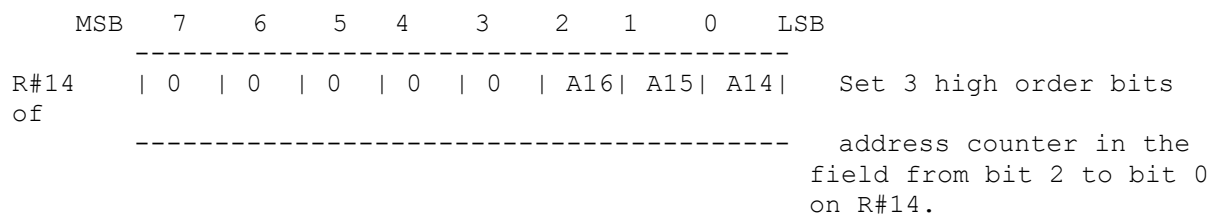
Figure 4.7 VRAM/expanded RAM bank switching



(2) Setting the VRAM page (three high order bits)

The 17-bit address for accessing the 128K bytes of VRAM is set in the address counter (A16 to A0). R#14 contains the three high order bits (A16 to A14). So this register can be viewed as switching between eight 16K byte pages of VRAM.

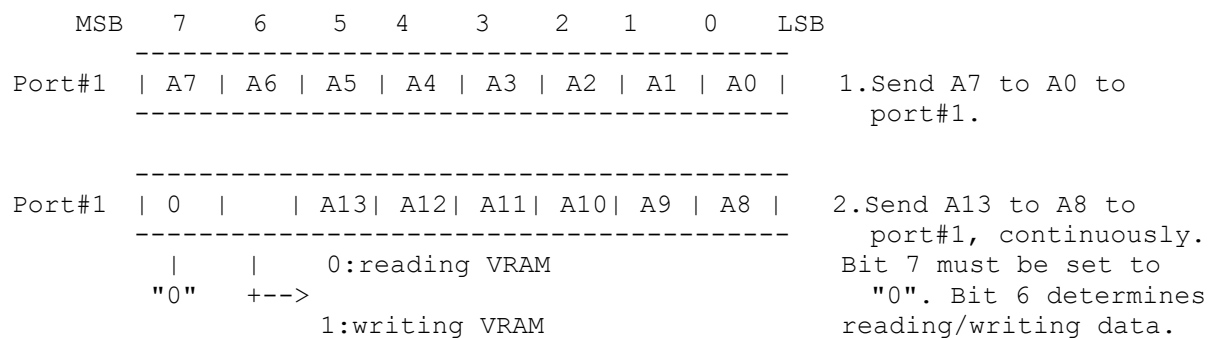
Figure 4.8 Setting the VRAM page (3 high order bits)



(3) Setting the VRAM address (14 low order bits)

The 14 low order bits of the address should be sent to port#1 in two bytes. Figure 4.9 shows the details. Make sure that the most significant bit of the second byte sent is set to 0. This sets the address/register flag to address mode. The second most significant bit sets the read/write flag. 1 signifies writing to VRAM and 2 signifies reading from VRAM.

Figure 4.9 Setting 14 low order bits

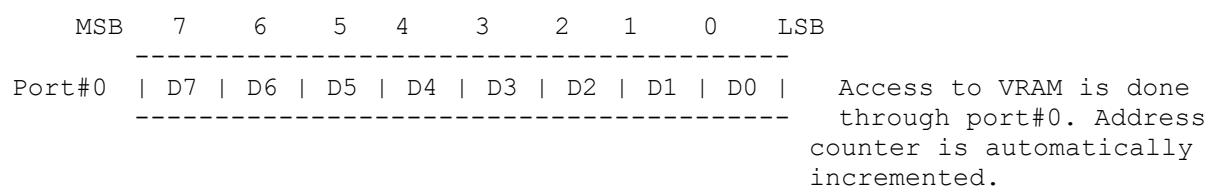


(4) Reading/writing VRAM

After setting the value in the address counter, read or write data through port#0. The read/write flag is set the same time as A13 to A8 of the address counter, as described above.

The address counter is automatically incremented each time a byte of data is read or written to port #0. This feature allows for easy access of continuous memory in VRAM.

Figure 4.10 Access to VRAM through port#0



3. SCREEN MODES OF THE MSX2

The MSX2 has ten different modes as shown in Table 4.4. Six screen modes marked with "*" in the table below (TEXT 2 and GRAPHIC 3 to GRAPHIC 7) have been introduced for the MSX2. The other modes have been improved due to the change from TMS9918A to MSX-VIDEO. Fetures of these ten screen modes and how to use them are described below.

Table 4.4 Screen modes listing of MSX2

Mode Name	SCREEN mode	Description
TEXT 1	SCREEN 0	40 characters per line of text, one colour (width=40) for each character
* TEXT 2	SCREEN 0	80 characters per line of text, character blinkable selection (width=80)
MULTI-COLOR	SCREEN 3	pseudo-graphic, one character divided into four block
GRAPHIC 1	SCREEN 1	32 characters per one line of text, the COLOURED character available
GRAPHIC 2	SCREEN 2	256 x 192, the colour is specified for each 8 dots
* GRAPHIC 3	SCREEN 4	GRAPHIC 2 which can use sprite mode 2
* GRAPHIC 4	SCREEN 5	256 x 212; 16 colours are available for each dot
* GRAPHIC 5	SCREEN 6	512 x 212; 4 colours are available for each dot
* GRAPHIC 6	SCREEN 7	512 x 212; 16 colours are available for each dot
* GRAPHIC 7	SCREEN 8	256 x 212; 256 colours are available for each dot

3.1 TEXT 1 Mode

TEXT 1 screen mode has the following features:

screen:	40 (horizontal) x 24 (vertical)
	background/character colours can be selected from 512 colours
character:	256 characters available
	character size: 6 (horizontal) x 8 (vertical)
memory requirements:	for character font ... 2048 bytes (8 bytes x 256 characters)
	for display 960 bytes (40 characters x 24 lines)
BASIC:	compatible with SCREEN 0 (WIDTH 40)

3.1.1 Setting TEXT 1 mode

3	| # | | | | | # | | | | |	Pattern #0
4	| # | # | # | # | # | | | | |	
5	| # | | | | | # | | | | |	
6	| # | | | | | # | | | | |	----- | = 0 -----
7	| | | | | | | | | | |	
8	| # | # | # | # | | | | |	
9	| # | | | | | # | | | | |	----- | # | = 1 -----
10	| # | | | | | # | | | | |	
11	| # | # | # | # | | | | |	
12	| # | | | | | # | | | | |	Pattern #1
13	| # | | | | | # | | | | |	
14	| # | # | # | # | | | | |	
15	| | | | | | | | | | |	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
2040	| # | | | # | | | # | | | | |	
2041	| | | # | | | # | | | # | | |	
2042	| # | | | # | | | # | | | | |	
2043	| | | # | | | # | | | # | | |	
2044	| # | | | # | | | # | | | | |	Pattern #255
2045	| | | # | | | # | | | # | | |	
2046	| # | | | # | | | # | | | | |	
2047	| | | # | | | # | | | # | | |	
	+-----+	

2 low order bits are not displayed

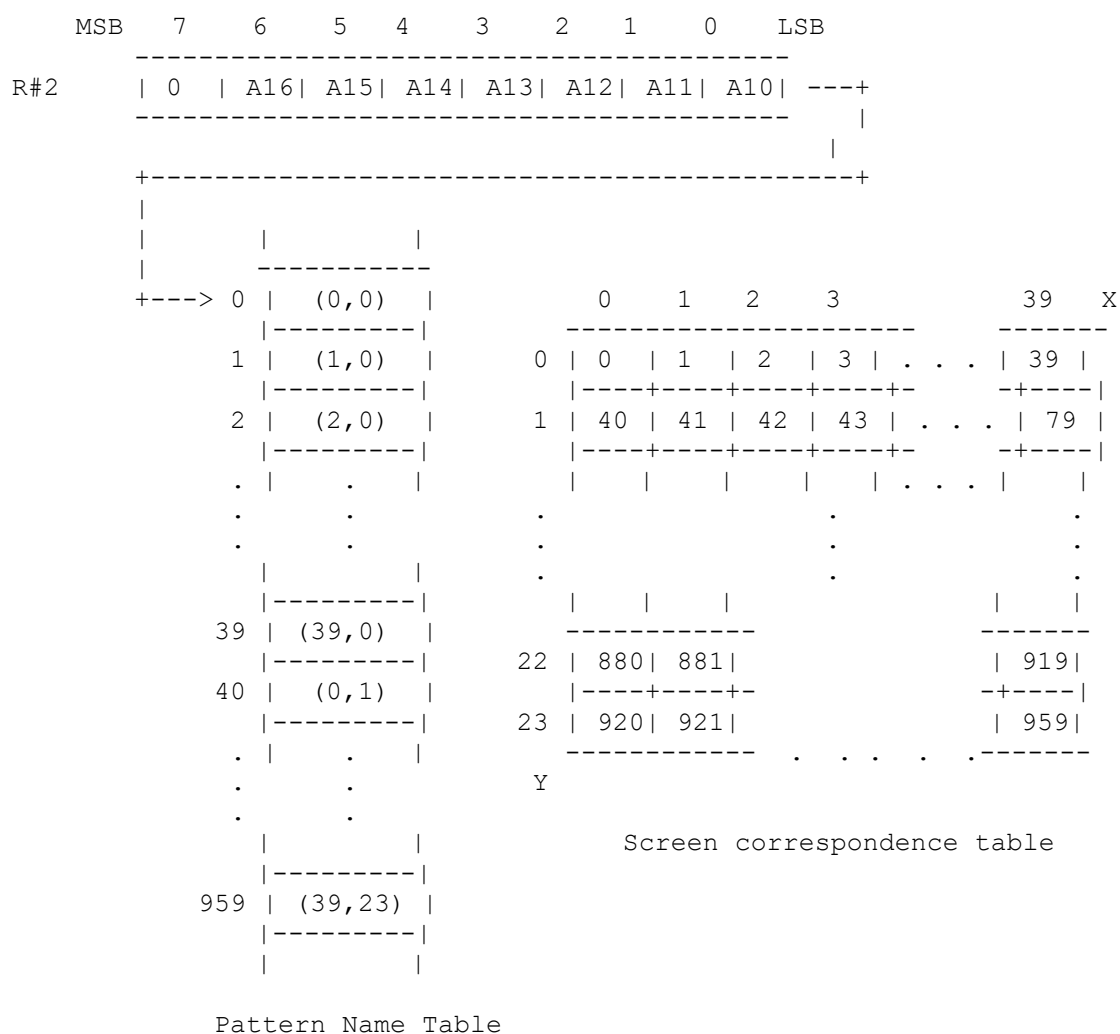
Pattern generator table

* Pattern name table

The pattern name table stores the characters to be displayed at each position on the screen. One byte of memory is used for each character to be displayed. Figure 4.13 shows the correspondence between memory location and screen location.

Specify the location of the pattern generator table in R#2. Note that the 7 high order bits of the address (A16 to A10) are specified and that the 10 low order bits of the address (A9 to A0) are always 0 ("0000000000B"). So the address in which the name table can be set always begins at a multiple of 1K bytes from 00000H. This address can be found by using the system variable BASE(0) from BASIC. Figure 4.13 shows the structure of the pattern generator table.

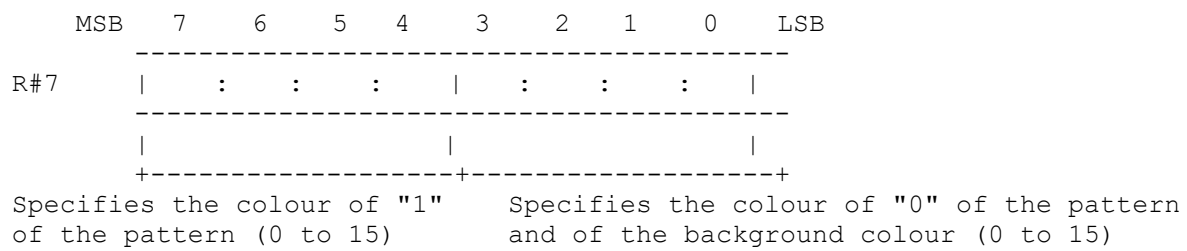
Figure 4.13 Structure of TEXT1 pattern name table



3.1.3 Specifying screen colour

The screen colour is specified by R#7. The background colour is the palette specified by the 4 low-order bits of R#7; the 4 high-order bits specify the foreground colour (see Figure 4.14). A "0" in the font pattern is displayed in the background colour and a "1" is displayed in the foreground colour. Note that in TEXT 1 the border colour of the screen cannot be set and it is the same as the background colour.

Figure 4.14 Colour specification in TEXT 1



3.2 TEXT 2 Mode

The screen mode TEXT 2 has the following features:

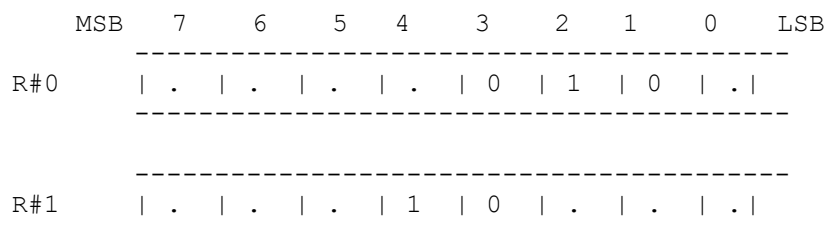
-	
| screen:	80 (horizontal) x 24 (vertical) or 26.5 (vertical) |
|	background colour/character colour can be selected |
|	from 512 colours |
| character:	256 characters available |
|	character size: 6 (horizontal) x 8 (vertical) |
|	each character blinkable |
| memory requirements:	24 lines |
|	for character font ... 2048 bytes |
|	(8 bytes x 256 characters) |
|	for display 1920 bytes |
|	(80 characters x 24 lines) |
|	for blinking 240 bytes (= 1920 bits) |
|	26.5 lines |
|	for character font ... 2048 bytes |
|	(8 bytes x 256 characters) |
|	for display 2160 bytes |
|	(80 characters x 27 lines) |
|	for blinking 270 bytes (= 2160 bits) |
| BASIC:	compatible with SCREEN 0 (WIDTH 80) |

-	

3.2.1 Setting TEXT 2 mode

Set TEXT2 mode as shown in Figure 4.15.

Figure 4.15 Setting TEXT2 mode



TEXT2 mode can switch the screen to 24 lines or 26.5 lines depending on the value of bit 7 in R#9. Note that, when the screen is set to 26.5 lines, only the upper half of the characters at the bottom of the screen are displayed. This mode is not supported by BASIC.

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB
R#9	-----									
	| LN |	.	| . |	.	| . |	.	| . |	.	| . |

	|	0:24 lines								
	+-->									
		1:26.5 lines								

Specify the location of the pattern name table in R#2. The 5 high order bits of the address (A16 to A12) are specified and the 12 low order bits of the address (A11 to A0) are always 0 ("000000000000B"). So the address in which the pattern name table can be set always begins at a multiple of 4K bytes from 00000H.

MSB 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 LSB

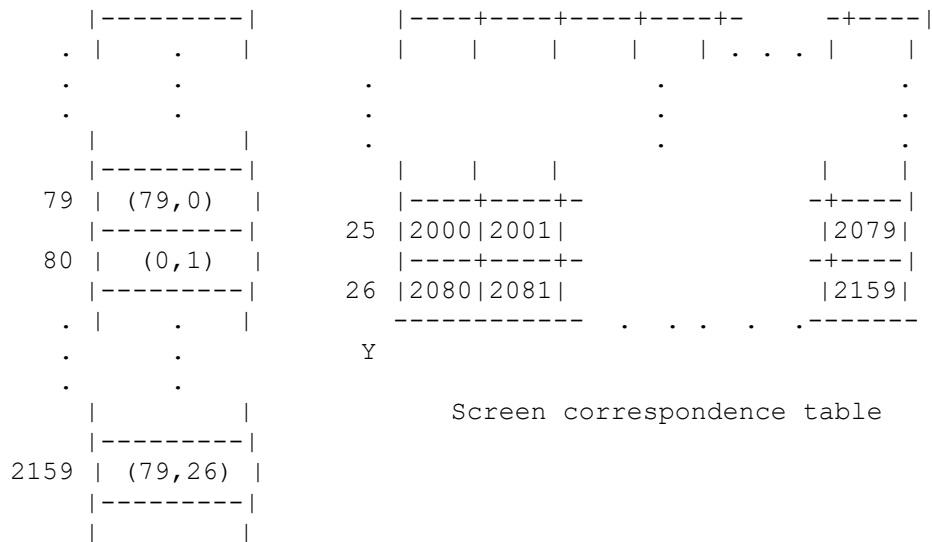
R#2

0 1 2 3 79 X

0 (0,0) 0 0 1 2 3 . . . 79

1 (1,0) 1 80 81 82 83 . . . 159

2 (2,0)



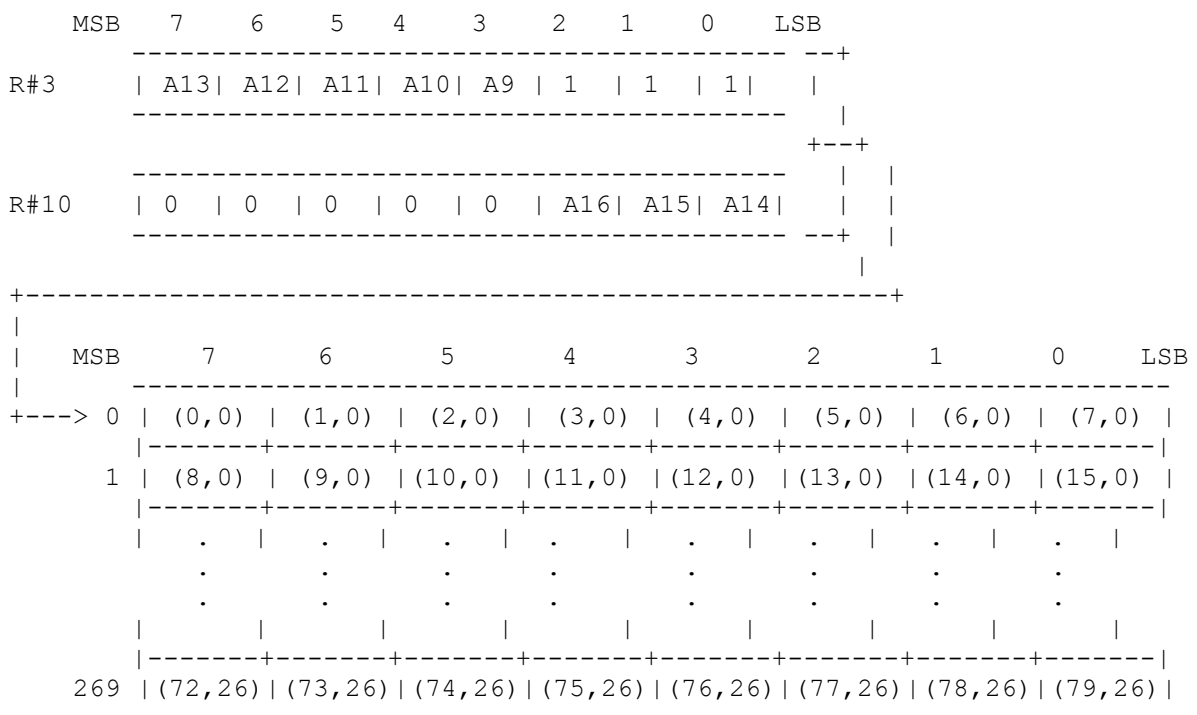
Pattern Name Table

* Blink table

In TEXT2 mode, it is possible to set the blink attribute for each character.

The blink table stores the information of the screen location of the characters blinked. One bit of the blink table corresponds to one character on the screen (that is, on the pattern name table). When the bit is set to "1" blinking is enabled for the corresponding character; when the bit is "0" blinking is disabled.

Figure 4.18 Blink table structure of TEXT2



Blink table

Specify the starting address of the blink table by setting the 8 high order bits (A16 to A9) in R#3 and R#10. The location of the blink table is set by writing the 8 high order bits of the address (A16 to A9) in R#3 and R#10.

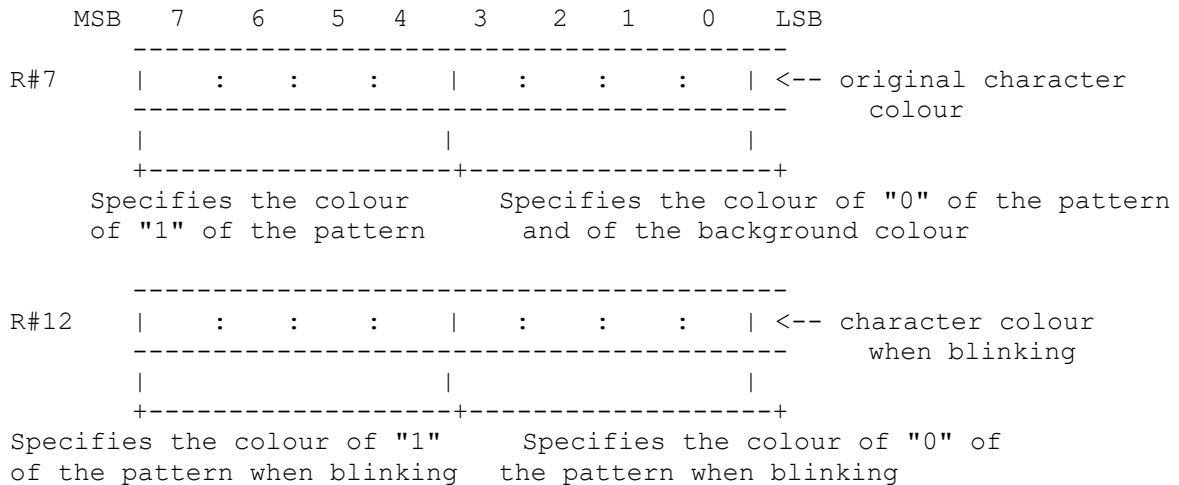
The

9 low order bits of the address (A8 to A0) are always 0 ("000000000B"). So the address in which the blink table can be set always begins at a multiple of 512 bytes from 00000H.

3.2.3 Screen colour and character blink specification

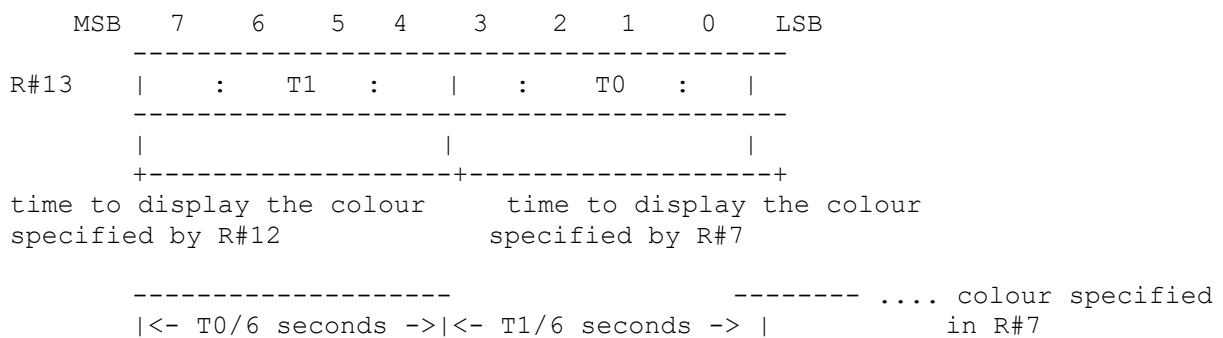
The foreground colour is specified by the 4 high order bits of R#7 and the background colour by the 4 low order bits of R#7. Characters with a blink attribute of 1 defined by the blink table alternate between the blink colour and the colour specified in R#12.

Figure 4.19 Setting screen colour and blink colour



The blinking rate is set in R#13. The 4 high order bits define the display time in the original colour, and the 4 low order bits define the display time in the blink colour. The period of time is defined in units of 1/6 seconds.

Figure 4.20 Setting blink rate



-----	-----	.....	colour
specified			
	normal colour	blinking colour	in R#12

List 4.1 Blink example

```

1000 '*****
1010 '  LIST 4.1  BLINK SAMPLE
1020 '*****
1030 '
1040 SCREEN 0 : WIDTH 80          'TEXT 2 mode
1050 ADR=BASE(1)                 'TAKE COLOR TABLE ADDRESS
1060 '
1070 FOR I=0 TO 2048/8
1080   VPOKE ADR+I,0              'reset blink mode
1090 NEXT
1100 '
1110 VDP(7) =&HF1                 'text color=15, back color=1
1120 VDP(13)=&H1F                'text color=1,  back color=15
1130 VDP(14)=&H22                'set interval and start blink
1140 '
1150 PRINT "Input any character : ";
1160 '
1170 K$=INPUT$(1)
1180 IF K$<CHR$(28) THEN 1230
1190 IF K$>" " THEN GOSUB 1280
1200 PRINT K$;
1210 GOTO 1170
1220 '
1230 VDP(14)=0                    'stop blink
1240 END
1250 '
1260 '----- set blink mode -----
1270 '
1280 X=POS(0) : Y=CSRLIN
1290 A=(Y*80+X)\8
1300 B=X MOD 8
1310 M=VAL("&B"+MID$("0000000100000000",8-B,8))
1320 VPOKE ADR+A,VPEEK(ADR+A) XOR M
1330 RETURN
=====

```

3.3 MULTI COLOUR Mode

The MULTI COLOUR mode is described below:

-		
| screen:	64 (horizontal) x 48 (vertical) blocks	|
|	16 colours from 512 colours can be displayed	|
|	at the same time	|
| block:	block size is 4 (horizontal) x 4 (vertical) dots	|
|	colour can be specified to each block	|
| memory requirements:	for setting colours 2048 bytes	|
|	for specifying locations 768 bytes	|
| sprite:	sprite mode 1	|

| (2)	| . |	| ---+--- | |-----+-----|
	| . |	| G | H | | "G" col. code | "H" col. code |
| (3)	|	|
	|-----| 2040	|-----|
| (4)	| Pattern name#255 |	| I | J | | "I" col. code | "J" col. code |
	| (8 bytes) |	| ---+--- | |-----+-----|
| (3)	|-----| 2048	| K | L | | "K" col. code | "L" col. code |

Pattern generator table		
| (4)	| M | N |	| "M" col. code | "N" col. code |
	---+---	-----+-----
| (4)	| O | P |	| "O" col. code | "P" col. code |

- (1) This table is in effect when Y is 0, 4, 8, 12, 16, or 20
(2) This table is in effect when Y is 1, 5, 9, 13, 17, or 21
(3) This table is in effect when Y is 2, 8, 10, 14, 18, or 22
(4) This table is in effect when Y is 3, 7, 11, 15, 19, or 23

* Pattern name table

This is the table for displaying specified patterns at desired locations on the screen. One of four patterns in a pattern name is displayed at its Y-coordinate value. BASIC sets the contents of this table as shown in Figure 4.23. The starting address of the pattern name table is specified by R#2. Since only the 7 high order bits of the address (A16 to A10) are specified, the address at which this table can be set is at increments of 1K bytes from 00000H (see Figure 4.24).

Figure 4.23 Setting BASIC pattern name table

Pattern 0		X	0	1	2	3	4	5	. . .	26	27	28	29	30	31
		Y													
|	|	0	| 0 |	| 1 |	| 2 |	| 3 |	| 4 |	| 5 |	| . . . |	| 26 |	| 27 |	| 28 |	| 29 |	| 30 |	| 31 |
|	|	1	| 0 |	| 1 |	| 2 |	| 3 |	| 4 |	|	|	| 27 |	| 28 |	| 29 |	| 30 |	| 31 |	|
|	|	2	| 0 |	| 1 |	| 2 |	| 3 |	|	|	|	| 28 |	| 29 |	| 30 |	| 31 |	|	|
|	|	3	| 0 |	| 1 |	| 2 |	| 3 |	|	|	|	| 28 |	| 29 |	| 30 |	| 31 |	|	|
|	|	4	| 32 |	| 33 |	| 34 |	| 35 |	|	|	|	| 60 |	| 61 |	| 62 |	| 63 |	|	|
|	|	5	| 32 |	| 33 |	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	| 62 |	| 63 |	|	|
|	|	6	| 32 |	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	| 63 |	|	|
|	|	7	| 32 |	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	| 63 |	|	|
|	|	8	| 64 |	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	| 95 |	|	|
Pattern 0			|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|	|

(64 x 64 blocks)

```

appears      . | 64| .                               . | 95|
here as a    . |---+- .                               .  +----|
result       .                               .           .
            .                               .           .
            . |   |   |   1 data unit              .           .
            . |---+---| corresponds                .  +-----
            . |128| . |   |   | to a 2 x 2 block      .           |159|
            |---+- . |---+---|                      .  +----|
20 |160| .                               .           |191|
            |---+---+- .                               .-+---+---|
21 |160|161| .                               . |190|191|
            |---+---+---+---+-                      +-+---+---+---+---|
22 |160|161|162|163| . . . . . |188|189|190|191|
            |---+---+---+---+---+-                      +-+---+---+---+---+---|
23 |160|161|162|163|164|165| . . . |186|187|188|189|190|191|

```

Figure 4.24 Pattern name table structure of MULTI COLOUR mode

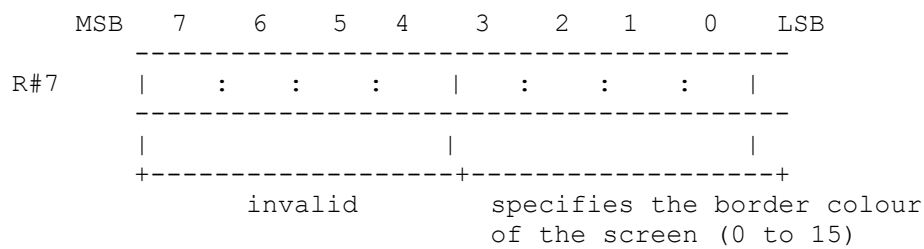
[illegible]

Pattern Name Table

3.3.3 Specifying the screen colour in MULTI COLOUR mode

The border colour of the screen can be specified by R#7 (see Figure 4.25).

Figure 4.25 Border colour specification



3.4 GRAPHIC 1 Mode

GRAPHIC 1 Mode is the screen mode as shown below:

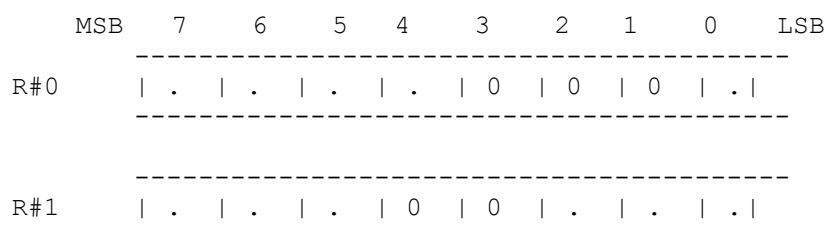
-	
| screen:	32 (horizontal) x 24 (vertical) patterns
|	16 from 512 colours can be displayed
|	at the same time
| pattern:	256 kinds of patterns are available
|	pattern size is 8 (horizontal) x 8 (vertical) dots
|	any Figure can be defined for each pattern
|	different colour for each 8 pattern can be set
| memory requirements:	for pattern font 2048 bytes
|	for colour table 32 bytes
| sprite:	sprite mode 1
| BASIC:	compatible with SCREEN 1

-	

3.4.1 Setting GRAPHIC 1 mode

GRAPHIC 1 mode can be set as shown in Figure 4.26.

Figure 4.26 Setting GRAPHIC 1 mode



3.4.2 Screen structure of GRAPHIC 1 mode

* Pattern generator table

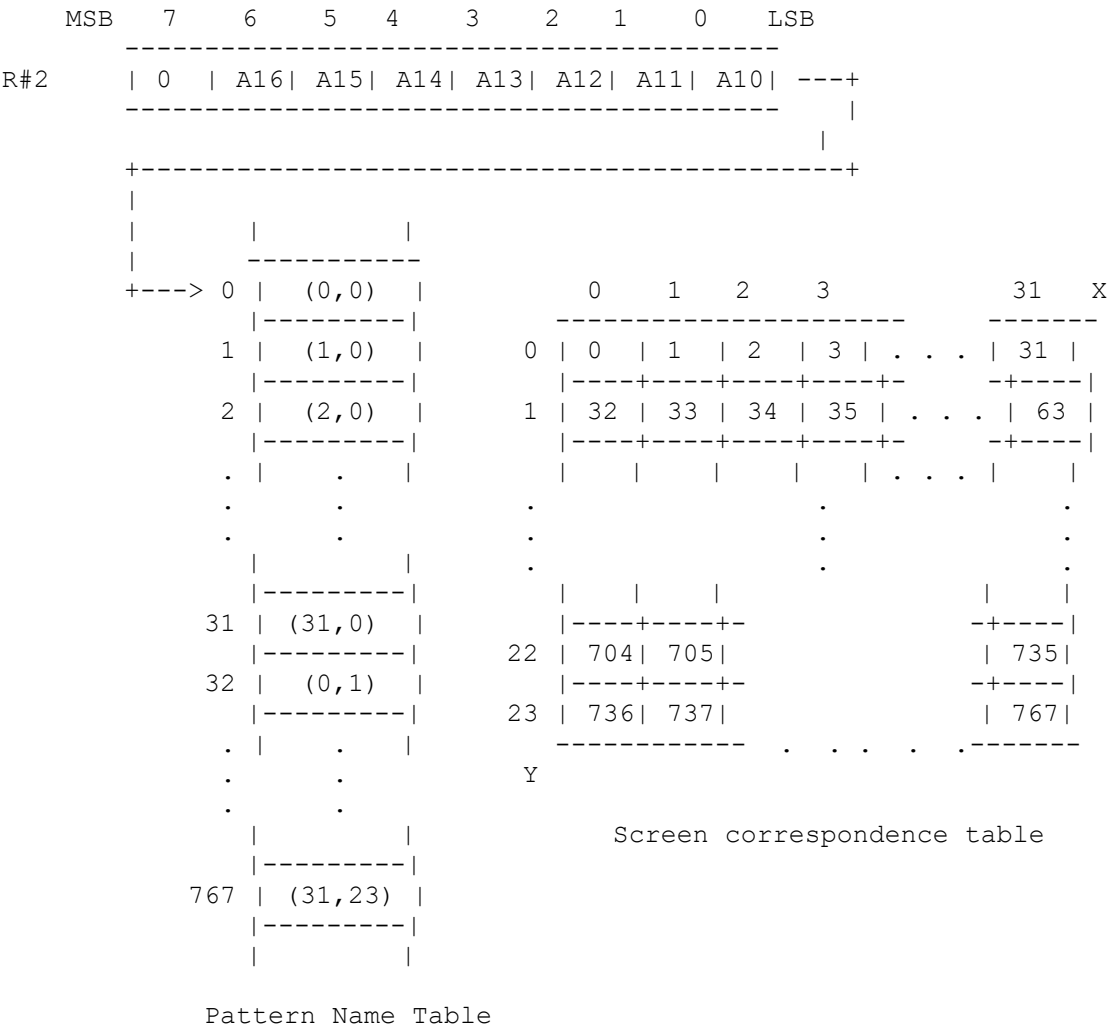
In this mode, 256 kinds of patterns, corresponding to codes 0 to 255, can be displayed on the screen. Fonts of each pattern are defined in the pattern generator table (see Figure 4.27). The starting address of the pattern

generator table is specified by R#4. Note that only the 6 high order bits of the address (A16 to A11) are specified.

Figure 4.27 Pattern generator table of GRAPHIC 1 mode

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB		
R#4	|	0	|	0	|	A16|	A15|	A14|	A13|	A12|	A11|	---+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+
												+

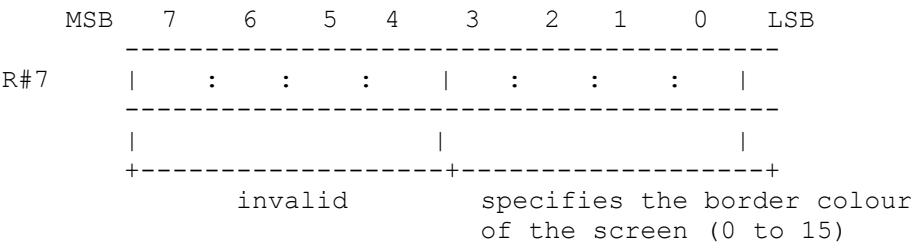
Figure 4.29 Pattern name table structure of GRAPHIC 1 mode



3.4.3 Specifying the screen colour

The border colour of the screen can be specified by R#7 (see Figure 4.30).

Figure 4.30 Screen colour specification of GRAPHIC 1 mode



3.5 GRAPHIC 2, GRAPHIC 3 modes

GRAPHIC 2 and GRAPHIC 3 modes are the screen modes as described below:

-	
| screen:	32 (horizontal) x 24 (vertical) patterns
|	16 from 512 colours can be displayed
|	at the same time
| pattern:	768 kinds of patterns are available
|	pattern size is 8 (horizontal) x 8 (vertical) dots
|	any Figure can be defined for each pattern
|	only two colours can be used in horizontal 8 dots
| memory requirements:	for pattern font 6144 bytes
|	for colour tbale 6144 bytes
| sprite:	sprite mode 1 for GRAPHIC 2
|	sprite mode 2 for GRAPHIC 3
| BASIC:	compatible to SCREEN 2 for GRAPHIC 2
|	compatible to SCREEN 4 for GRAPHIC 3

-	

3.5.1 Setting GRAPHIC 2, GRAPHIC 3 modes

GRAPHIC 2, and GRAPHIC 3 modes are set as Figure 4.3.1.

Figure 4.3.1 Setting GRAPHIC 2, GRAPHIC 3 modes

GRAPHIC 2 mode setting

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB
R#0		| .	| .	| .	| .	| 0	| 0	| 1	| .	|
R#1		| .	| .	| .	| 0	| 0	| .	| .	| .	|

GRAPHIC 3 mode setting

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB					
	<hr/>														
R#0	|	.	|	.	|	.	|	0	|	1	|	0	|	.	|
	<hr/>														
	<hr/>														
R#1	|	.	|	.	|	.	|	0	|	0	|	.	|	.	|
	<hr/>														

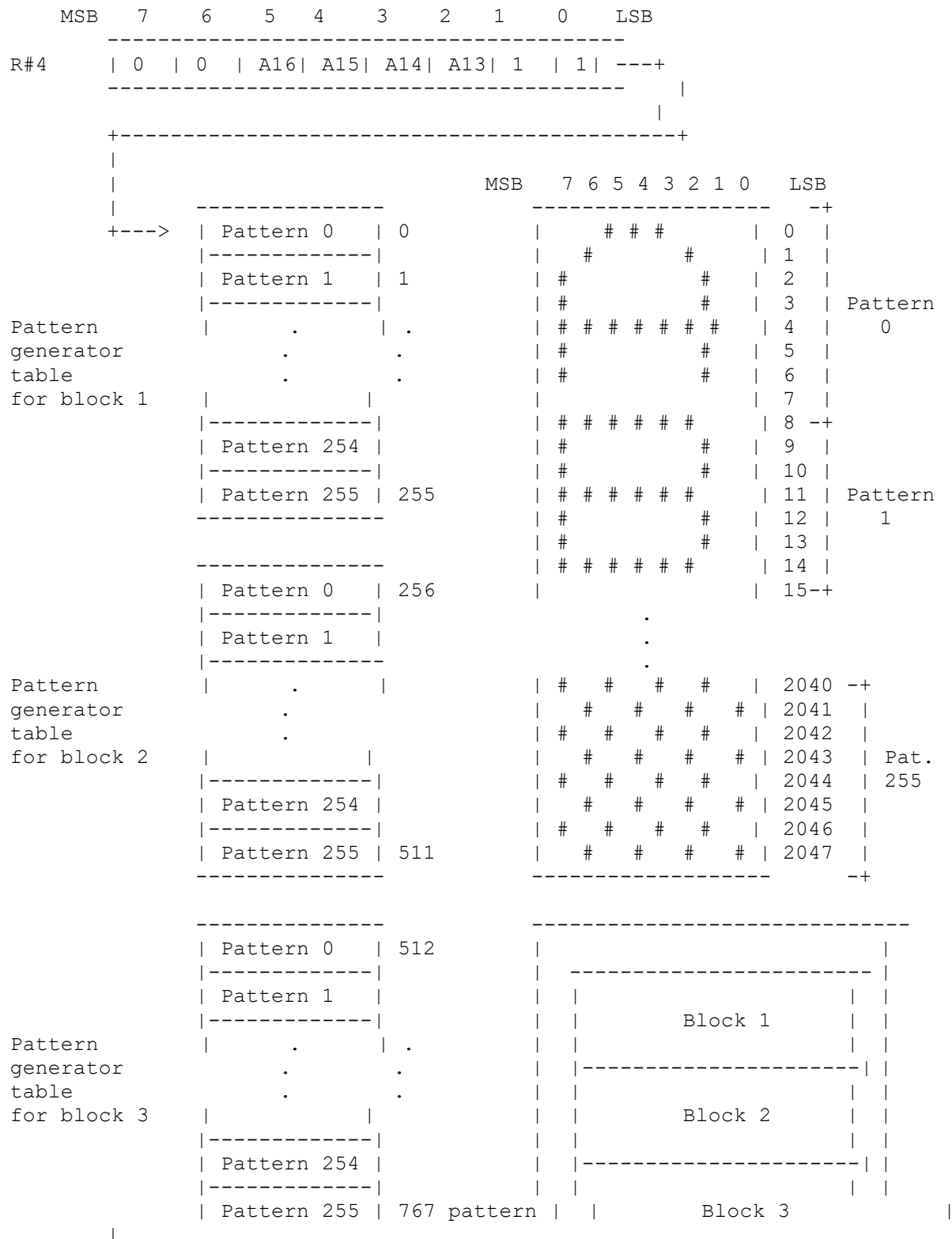
3.5.2 Screen structure of GRAPHIC 2, GRAPHIC 3 modes

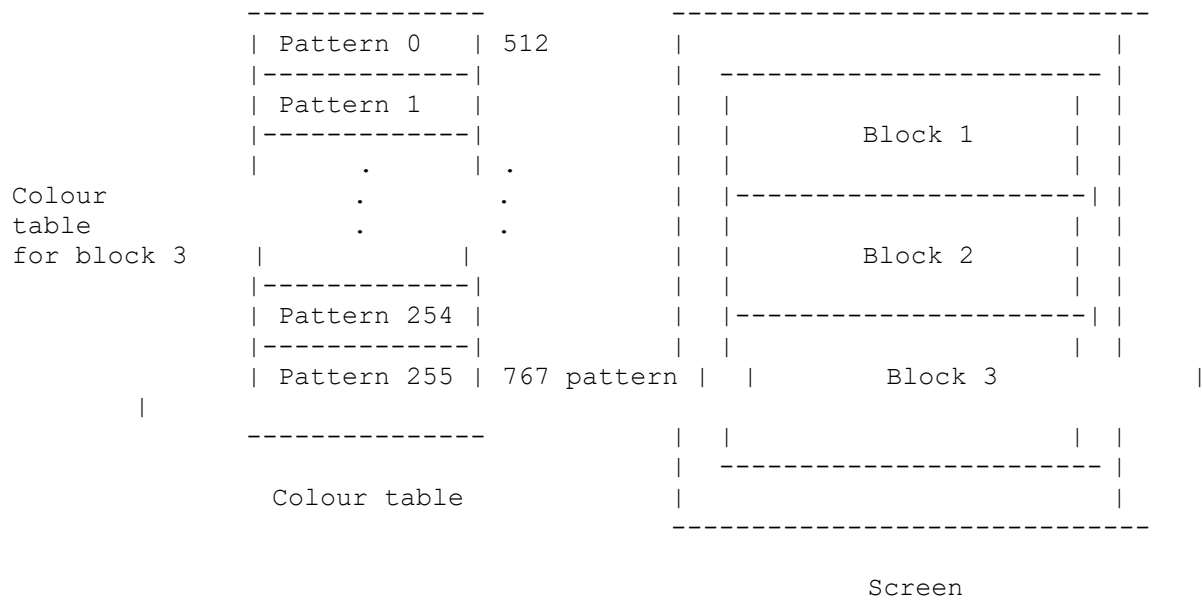
* Pattern generator table

In this mode, there are three pattern generator tables which are compatible with GRAPHIC 1 and 768 patterns can be displayed. It cannot display patterns which are overlapped on the screen, and operating the pattern generator table

in this case causes the 256 x 192 dot graphics display to be simulated. The starting address of the pattern generator table is specified by R#4. Note that only 4 bits of the address (A16 to A13) are specified, so the address which can be set is located at interval steps of 8K bytes from 00000H (see Figure 4.32).

Figure 4.32 Pattern generator table structure of GRAPHIC 2, GRAPHIC 3

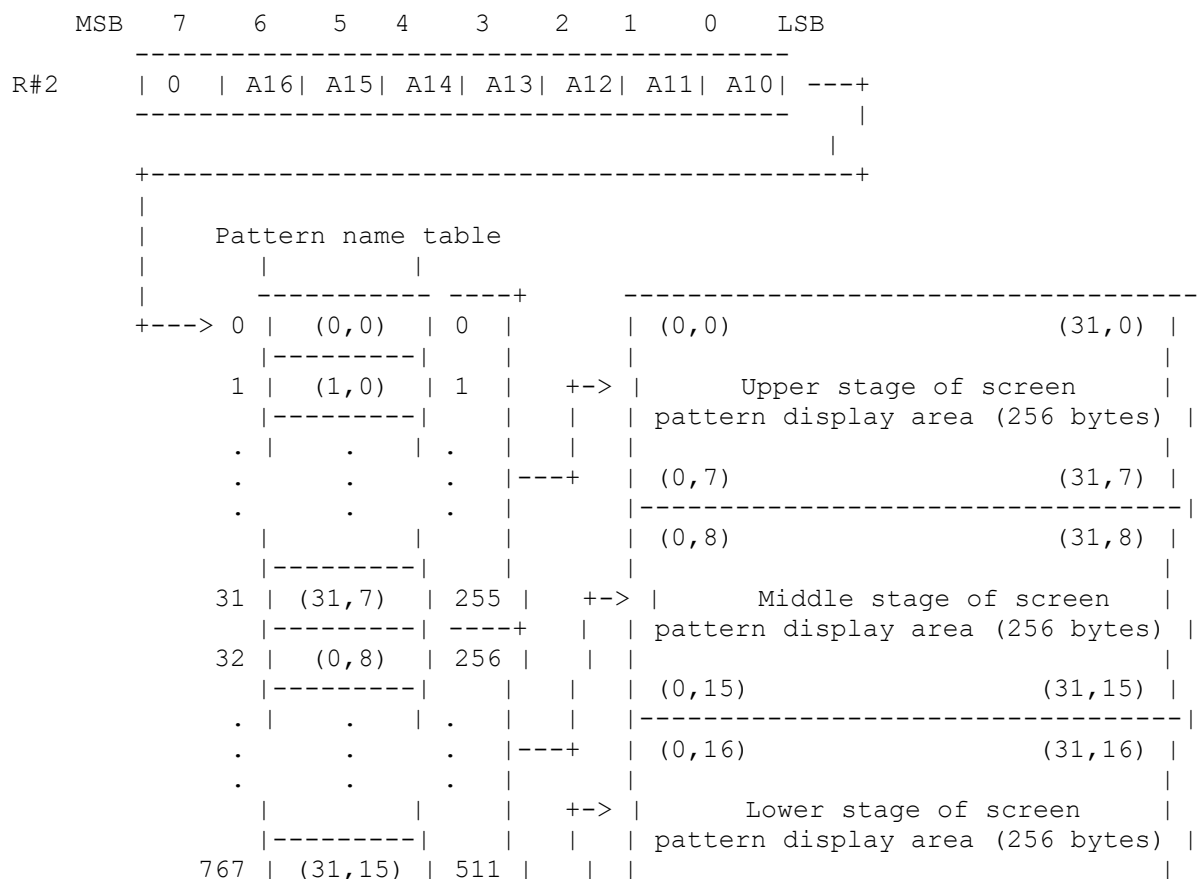


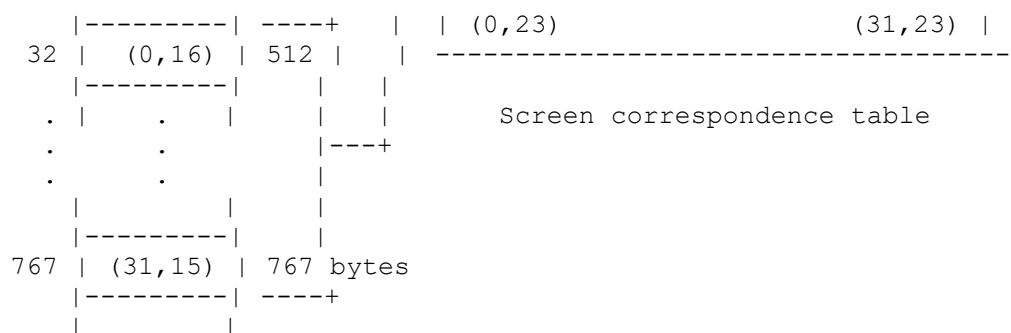


* Pattern name table

The pattern name table is divided into three stages - upper, middle, and lower; each displays the pattern by referring to 256 bytes of the pattern generator (see Figure 4.34). This method enables each of 768 bytes on the pattern name table to display a different pattern font.

Figure 4.34 Pattern name table for GRAPHIC modes 2 and 3





Actual contents of fixed pattern name table

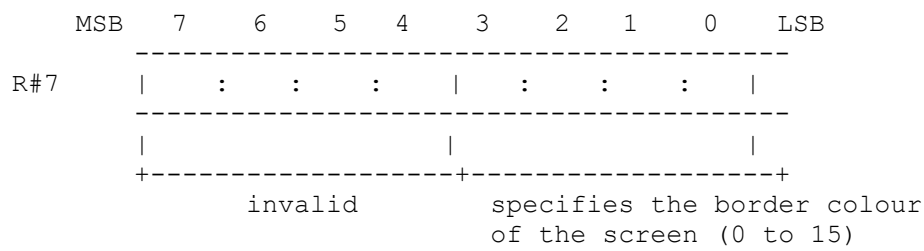
X axis		0	8	16	240	248	255
Y axis	0	&H0	&H8	.	&HF0	&HF8	
		&H1	&H9	.	&HF1	&HF9	
		&H2	&HA	.	&HF2	&HFA	
		&H3	&HB	.	&HF3	&HFB	
		&H4	&HC	.	&HF4	&HFC	
		&H5	&HD	.	&HF5	&HFD	
		&H6	&HE	.	&HF6	&HFE	
		&H7	&HF	.	&HF7	&HFF	
	8	&H100	&H108	.	&H1F0	&H1F8	
		&H101	&H109	.	&H1F1	&H1F9	
		&H102	&H10A	.	&H1F2	&H1FA	
		&H103	&H10B	.	&H1F3	&H1FB	
		&H104	&H10C	.	&H1F4	&H1FC	
		&H105	&H10D	.	&H1F5	&H1FD	
		&H106	&H10E	.	&H1F6	&H1FE	
		&H107	&H10F	.	&H1F7	&H1FF	
	16	.	.	.	.	.
		
		.	.	(256 x 192 dots)	.	.	
		
	184	&H1700	&H1708	.	&H17F0	&H17F8	
		&H1701	&H1709	.	&H17F1	&H17F9	
		&H1702	&H170A	.	&H17F2	&H17FA	
		&H1703	&H170B	.	&H17F3	&H17FB	
		&H1704	&H170C	.	&H17F4	&H17FC	
		&H1705	&H170D	.	&H17F5	&H17FD	
		&H1706	&H170E	.	&H17F6	&H17FE	
	191	&H1707	&H170F	.	&H17F7	&H17FF	

Note: The values are offset from the base address of the pattern generator table.

3.5.3 Screen colour specification

The border colour of the screen can be specified by R#7 (see Figure 4.35).

Figure 4.35 Screen colour specification of GRAPHIC 2, GRAPHIC 3 modes



3.6 GRAPHIC 4 Mode

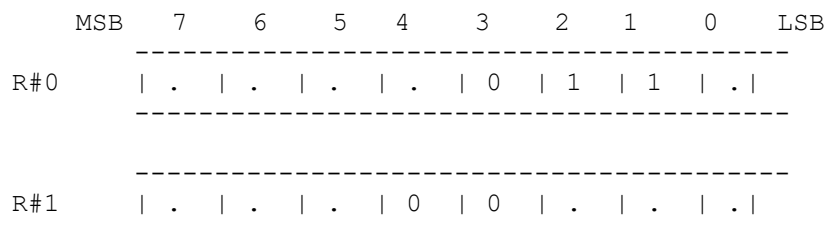
GRAPHIC 4 mode is described below:

screen:		256 (horizontal) x 212 (vertical) dots
		(or, 192 vertical)
		16 colours can be displayed at the same time
		each of 16 colours can be selected from 512 colours
command:		high speed graphic by VDP command available
sprite:		mode 2 sprite function available
memory requirements:		for 192 dots
		bitmap screen 24K bytes (6000H bytes)
		(4 bits x 256 x 192)
		for 212 dots
		bitmap screen 26.5K bytes (6A00H bytes)
		(4 bits x 256 x 212)
BASIC:		compatible to SCREEN 5

3.6.1 Setting GRAPHIC 4 mode

Set GRAPHIC 4 mode as shown in Figure 4.36.

Figure 4.36 GRAPHIC 4 mode setting



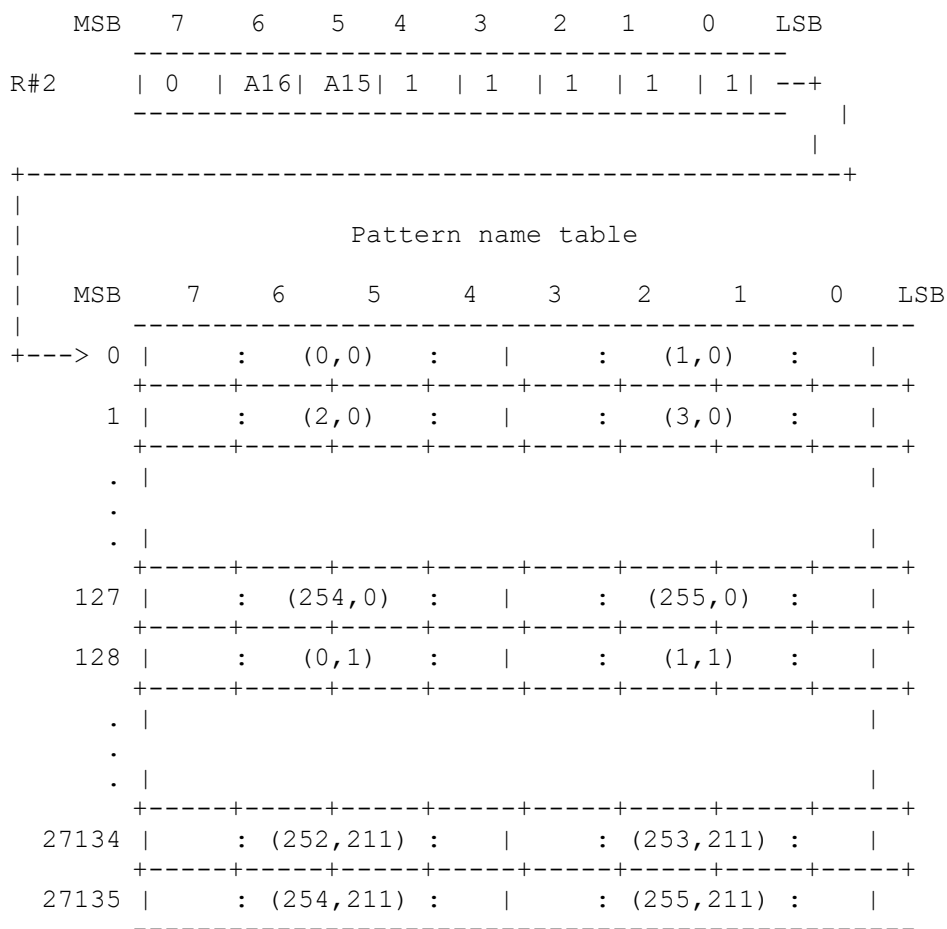
3.6.2 Screen structure of GRAPHIC 4 mode

* Pattern name table

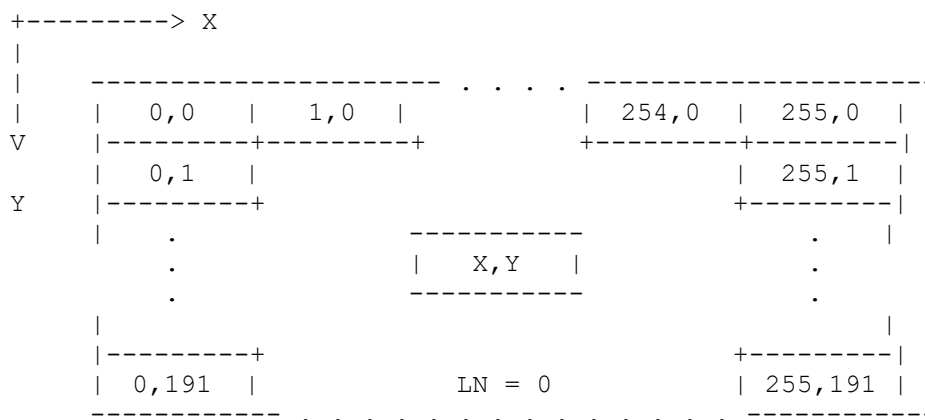
In GRAPHIC 4 mode, one byte of the pattern name table corresponds with 2 dots

on the screen. The colour information of each dot is represented by 4 bits and 16 colours can be specified (see Figure 4.37). The starting address of the pattern name table is specified by R#2. Only the 2 high order bits of the address (A16 to A15) are specified and the 15 low order bits are considered as "0". Thus, the four addresses at which the pattern name can be set are 00000H, 08000H, 10000H, and 18000H.

Figure 4.37 Pattern name table structure of GRAPHIC 4 mode



This table shows how colour codes are set for each dot. (0 to 15)



-----+		+-----
| 0,211 |	LN = 1	| 255,211 |
-----	-----

Screen correspondence table

The dot at (X,Y) coordinate on the screen can be accessed by using Expression

4.1. The program of List 4.2 illustrates the use of Expression 4.1.

Expression 4.1 The expression for accessing the dot at (X,Y) coordinate

$$\text{ADR} = X/2 + Y * 128 + \text{base address}$$

(The colour of the dot is represented by 4 high order bits in the case that X is even and by 4 low order bits in the case that X is odd.)

List 4.2 PSET for GRAPHIC 4 mode written in BASIC

```

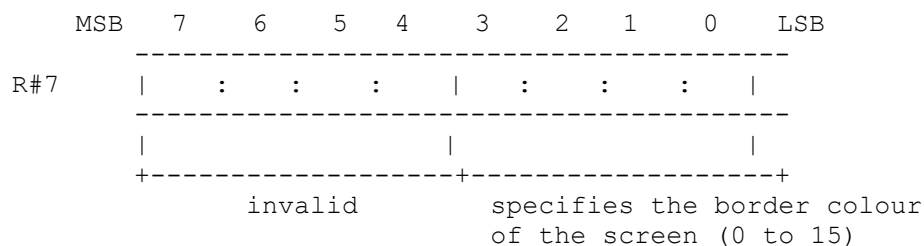
=====
100 '*****
110 ' LIST 4.2 dot access of GRAPHIC 4 mode
120 '*****
130 '
140 SCREEN 5
150 BA=0
160 FOR I=0 TO 255
170 X=I:Y=I\2
180 COL=15
190 GOSUB 1000
200 NEXT
210 END
220 '
1000 '*****
1010 ' PSET (X,Y),COL
1020 ' COL:color BA:graphics Base Address
1030 '*****
1040 '
1050 ADR=X\2+Y*128+BA
1060 IF X AND 1 THEN BIT=&HF0:C=COL ELSE BIT=&HF:C=COL*16
1070 D=VPEEK(ADR)
1080 D=(D AND BIT) OR C
1090 VPOKE ADR,D
1100 RETURN
=====

```

3.6.3 Screen colour specification

The border colour of the screen can be specified by R#7 (see Figure 4.38).

Figure 4.38 Screen colour specification in GRAPHIC 4 mode



3.7 GRAPHIC 5 Mode

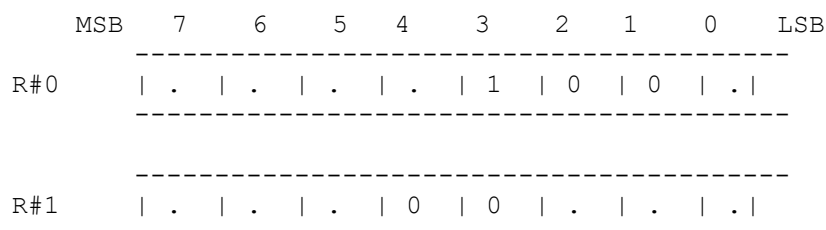
GRAPHIC 5 mode is described as follows:

screen:		512 (horizontal) x 212 (vertical) dots
		(or, 192 vertical)
		4 colours can be displayed at the same time
		each of 4 colours can be selected from 512 colours
command:		graphic command by hardware available
sprite:		mode 2 sprite function available
memory requirements:		for 192 dots
		bitmap screen 24K bytes (6000H bytes)
		(2 bits x 512 x 192)
		for 212 dots
		bitmap screen 26.5K bytes (6A00H bytes)
		(2 bits x 512 x 212)
BASIC:		compatible to SCREEN 6

3.7.1 Setting GRAPHIC 5 mode

Set GRAPHIC 5 mode as shown in Figure 4.39.

Figure 4.39 GRAPHIC 5 mode setting

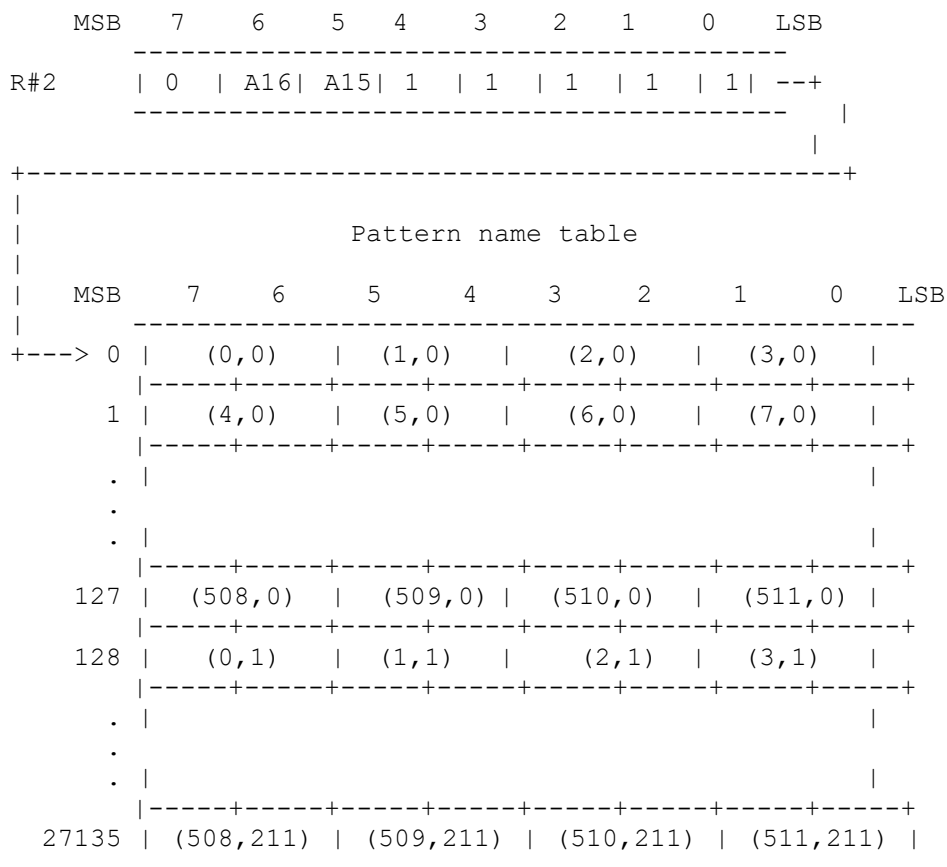


3.7.2 Pattern name table

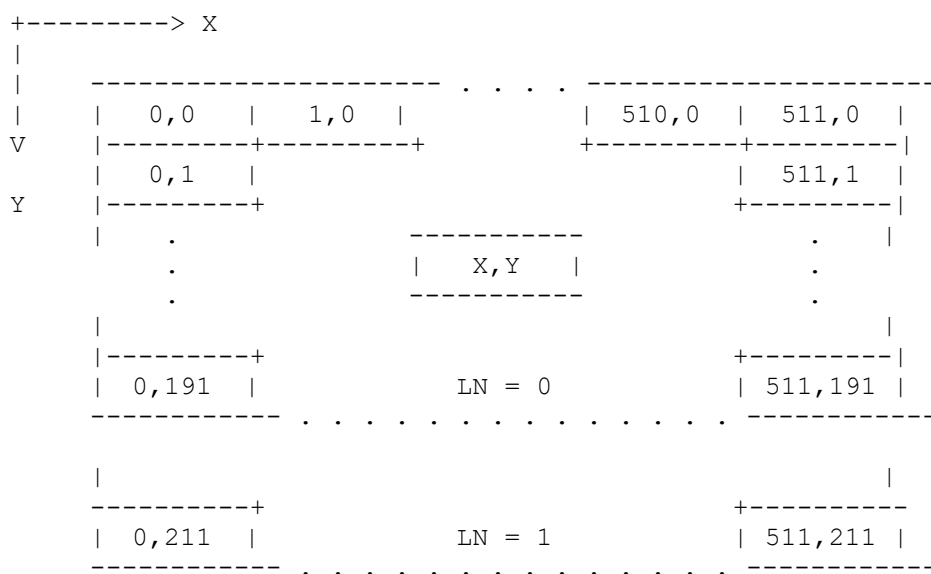
In GRAPHIC 5 mode, one byte of the pattern name table corresponds with 4 dots on the screen. The colour information of each dot is represented by 2 bits and 4 colours can be specified. As with GRAPHIC 4 mode, the pattern name table is set by writing 2 high order bits of the address in R#2. The

addresses can be set at either 00000H, 08000H, 10000H, or 18000H (see Figure 4.40).

Figure 4.40 Pattern name table structure of GRAPHIC 5 mode



This table shows how colour codes are set for each dot. (0 to 3)



Screen correspondence table

The dot at (X,Y) coordinate on the screen can be accessed by using Expression

4.2. The program of List 4.3 confirms Expression 4.2.

Expression 4.2 The expression for accessing the dot at (X,Y) coordinate

```
-----  
|  ADR = X/4 + Y * 128 + base address  |  
-----
```

(The colour of the dot is represented by bit 7 and 6, or 5 and 4, or 3 and 2, or 1 and 0, when X MOD 4 is 0, or 1, or 2, or 3, respectively.)

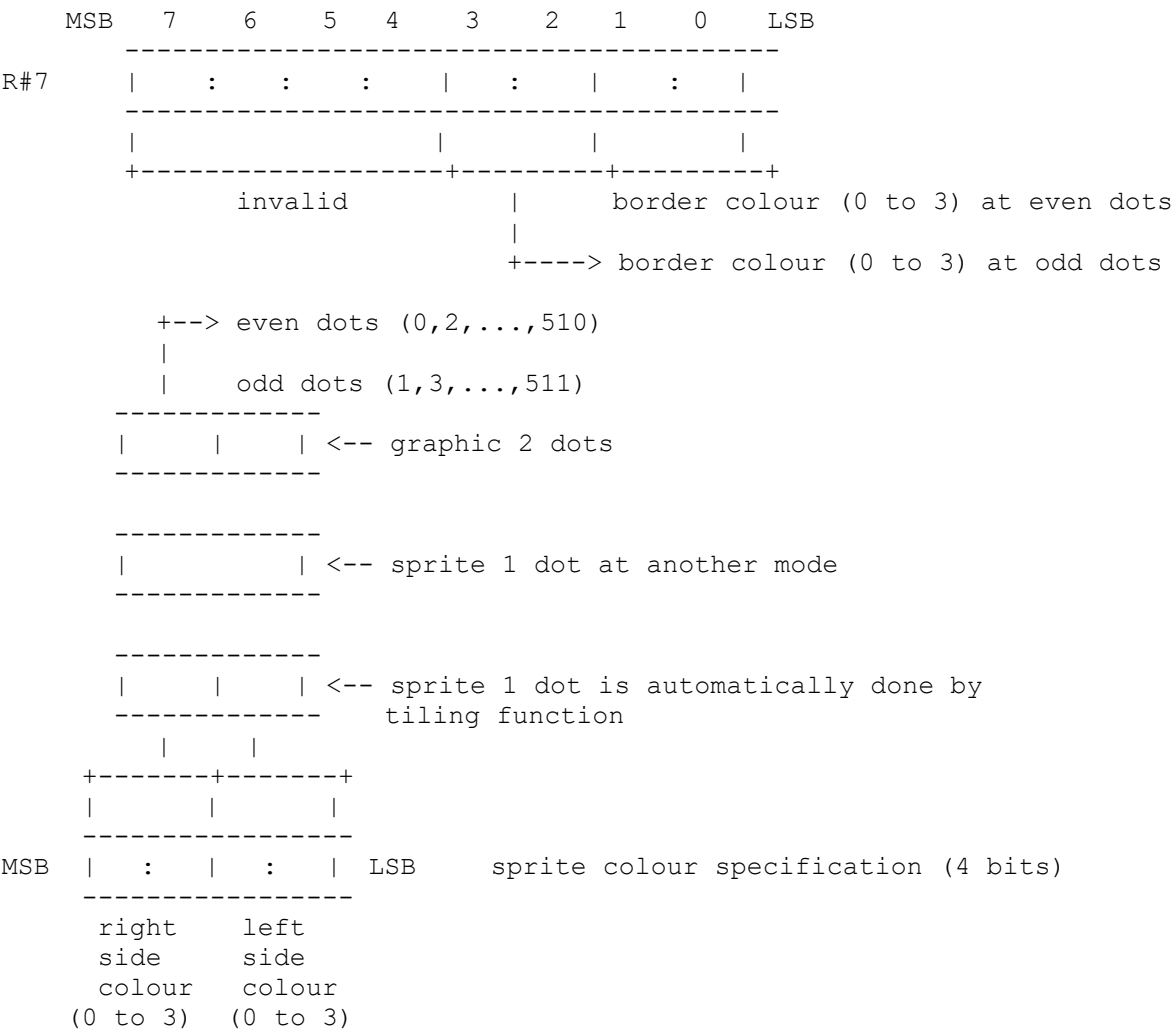
List 4.3 PSET for GRAPHIC 5 mode written in BASIC

```
=====
100 '*****
110 '  LIST 4.3  dot access of GRAPHIC 5 mode
120 '*****
130 '
140 SCREEN 6
150 BA=0
160 FOR I=0 TO 511
170   X=I : Y=I\2
180   COL=3
190   GOSUB 1000
200 NEXT
210 END
220 '
1000 '*****
1010 '  PSET(X,Y)
1020 '    COL:colour  BA:graphic Base Address
1030 '*****
1040 '
1050 ADR=X\4+Y*128+BA
1060 LP=X MOD 4
1070 IF LP=0 THEN BIT=&H3F:C=COL*&H40
1080 IF LP=1 THEN BIT=&HCF:C=COL*&H10
1090 IF LP=2 THEN BIT=&HF3:C=COL*&H4
1100 IF LP=3 THEN BIT=&HFC:C=COL
1110 D=VPEEK(ADR)
1120 D=(D AND BIT) OR C
1130 VPOKE ADR,D
1140 RETURN
=====
```

3.7.3 Setting the screen colour

In GRAPHIC 5 mode, hardware tiling is done for the border colour of the screen and sprites. As with the other modes, these colours are specified by 4 bits; 2 high order bits of 4 bits represents the dot colour at even locations, and 2 low order bits for the dot colour at odd locations (see Figure 4.41).

Figure 4.41 Screen colour specification in GRAPHIC 5 mode



3.8 GRAPHIC 6 Mode

GRAPHIC 6 mode is described as follows:

screen:	512 (horizontal) x 212 (vertical) dots (or, 192 vertical)
	16 colours can be displayed at the same time
	each of 16 colours can be selected from 512 colours
command:	graphic command by hardware available
sprite:	mode 2 sprite function available
memory requirements:	for 192 dots
	bitmap screen 48K bytes (C000H bytes)
	(4 bits x 512 x 192)
	for 212 dots
	bitmap screen 53K bytes (D400H bytes)
	(4 bits x 512 x 212)

```

      MSB       7       6       5       4       3       2       1       0       LSB
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
R#2    | 0   | 0   | A16| 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | 1   | -----+-----+
      |                                     |                               |
      |                                     ^                               |
      |                                     |                               |
This bit is used to specify a page to be displayed on the screen.          |
The bit position of A16 is different only in the GRAPHIC 6 and 7 modes.     |
      |                                     |                               |
      |                                     |                               |
+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
|
|                                     Pattern name table
|
|      MSB       7       6       5       4       3       2       1       0       LSB
|-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
+---> 0 | :   (0,0)   :   | :   (1,0)   :   |
      | +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+
      1 | :   (2,0)   :   | :   (3,0)   :   |
      | +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+ +---+

```

[illegible]

This table shows how colour codes are set for each dot. (0 to 15)

	+-----> X										

|	| 0,0 |			| 1,0 |			. . . .		| 510,0 | 511,0 |		
V	|-----+			|-----+					|-----+		
	| 0,1 |								| 511,1 |		
Y	|-----+								|-----+		
	.			-----					.		
	| . |			| X,Y |					| . |		
	.			-----					.		
	-----+								-----+		
	| 0,191 |			LN = 0					| 511,191 |		
	-----										
	-----+								-----+		
	| 0,211 |			LN = 1					| 511,211 |		

Screen correspondence table

The dot at (X,Y) coordinate on the screen can be accessed by using Expression

4.1. The program of List 4.2 illustrates the use of Expression 4.1.

Expression 4.3 The expression for the access to the dot
at (X,Y) coordinate

| ADR = X/2 + Y * 256 + base address |

(The colour of the dot is represented by 4 high order bits in the case that X is even and by 4 low order bits in the case that X is odd.)

List 4.4 PSET for GRAPHIC 6 mode written in BASIC


```

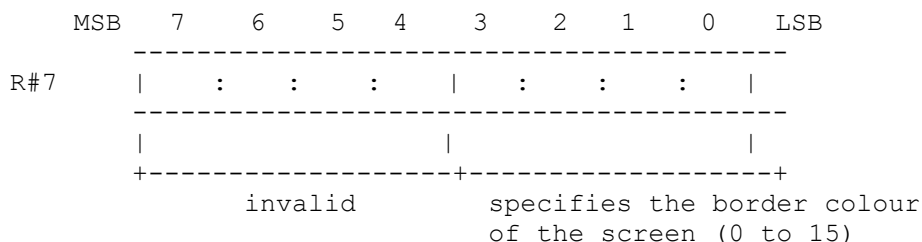
=====
100 '*****
110 '  LIST 4.4  dot access of GRAPHIC 6 mode
120 '*****
130 '
140 SCREEN 7
150 BA=0
160 FOR I=0 TO 511
170   X=I: Y=I\2: COL=15: GOSUB 1000
180 NEXT
190 END
200 '
1000 '*****
1010 '  PSET (X,Y)
1020 '    COL:color  BA:graphic Base Address
1030 '*****
1040 '
1050 ADR=X\2+Y*256+BA
1060 IF X AND 1 THEN BIT=&HF: C=COL ELSE BIT=&HF0: C=COL*16
1070 VPOKE ADR,(VPEEK(ADR) AND BIT) OR C
1080 RETURN
=====

```

3.8.3 Setting screen colour

The border colour of the screen can be specified by R#7 (see Figure 4.44).

Figure 4.44 Screen colour specification in GRAPHIC 6 mode



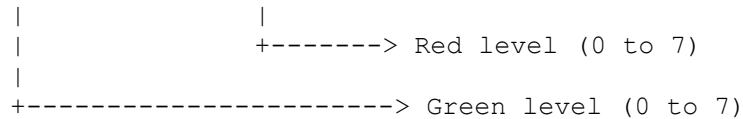
3.9 GRAPHIC 7 Mode Use

GRAPHIC 7 mode is described as follows:

```

-----
|
| screen:          256 (horizontal) x 212 (vertical) dots
|                  (or, 192 vertical)
|                  256 colours can be displayed at the same time
| command:         graphic command by hardware available
| sprite:          mode 2 sprite function available
| memory requirements: for 192 dots
|                    bitmap screen ..... 48K bytes (C000H bytes)
|                    (8 bits x 256 x 192)
|                    for 212 dots
|                    bitmap screen ..... 53K bytes (D400H bytes)
|

```

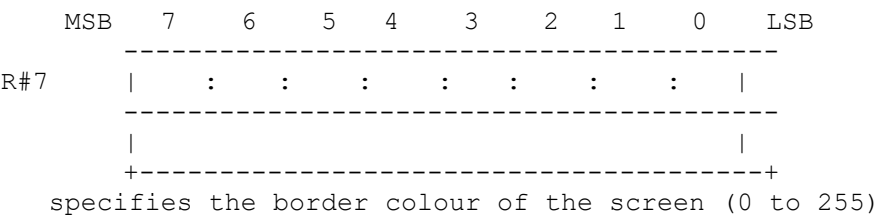
Expression 4.4 The expression for accessing to the dot at (X,Y) coordinate

$$\text{ADR} = X + Y * 256 + \text{base address}$$

3.9.3 Setting the screen colour

The border colour of the screen can be specified by R#7 (see Figure 4.48).

Figure 4.48 Screen colour specification in GRAPHIC 7 mode



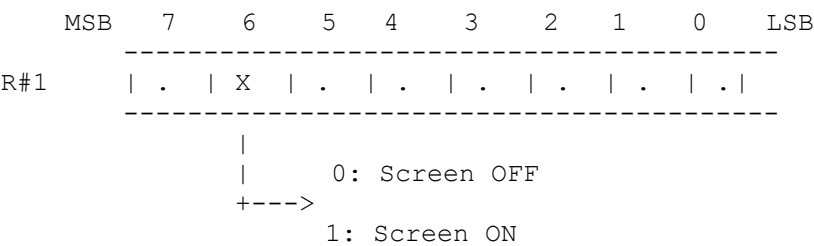
4. MISCELLANEOUS FUNCTIONS FOR THE SCREEN DISPLAY

Detailed settings for the screen display are available in MSX-VIDEO. These include screen ON/OFF and specification of the display location. These MSX-VIDEO functions are described in this function.

* Screen ON/OFF

The screen ON/OFF function is controlled by bit 6 of R#1 (see Figure 4.49). When set OFF, the entire screen changes to the colour specified by the 4 low order bits of R#7 (8 bits in GRAPHIC 7 mode). Drawing with the VDP commands is faster when the screen is set OFF.

Figure 4.49 Screen ON/OFF

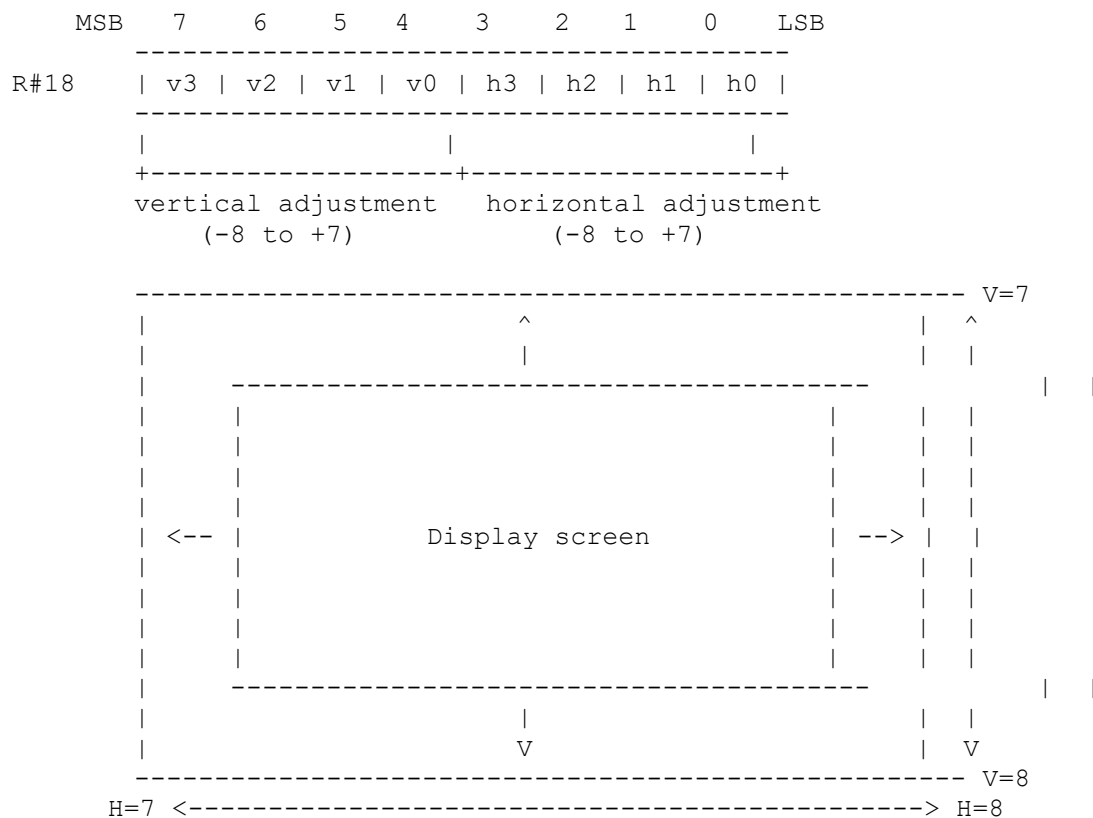


BASIC program lines:
VDP(1)=VDP(1) AND &B10111111 <-- Screen OFF
VDP(1)=VDP(1) OR &B01000000 <-- Screen ON

* Adjustment of the display location on the screen

R#18 is used for adjusting the display location on the screen (see Figure 4.50). This corresponds with the "SET ADJUST" instruction of BASIC.

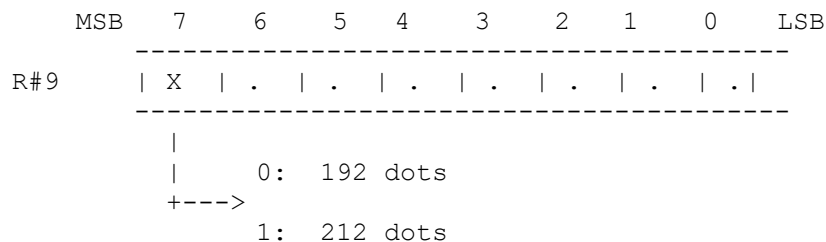
Figure 4.50 Adjustment of the screen display



* Switching the number of pixels in the Y direction

The number of dots displayed in the Y direction on the screen can be switched to either 192 dots or 212 dots by setting bit 7 of R#9 to 0 or 1. This function is only valid for five screen modes, TEXT 2, and GRAPHIC 4 to GRAPHIC 7 modes. When 212 dots are set in TEXT 2 mode, the number of text lines is 26.5 (=212/8) and on the 27th line only the upper halves of characters are displayed.

Figure 4.51 Switching the number of dots in the vertical direction



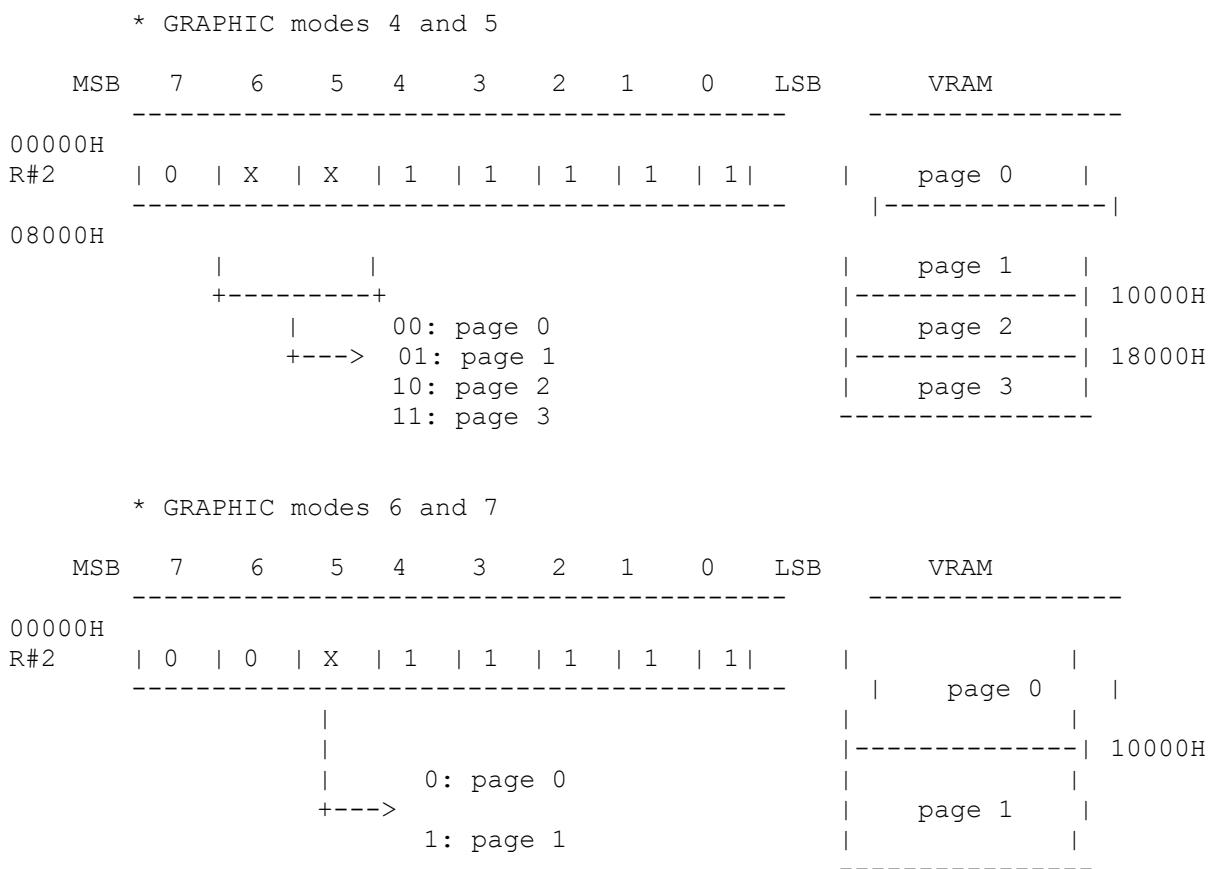
BASIC program lines:

```
VDP(10)=VDP(10) AND &B01111111 <-- 192 dots
VDP(10)=VDP(10) OR  &B10000000 <-- 212 dots
```

* Switching the display page

In GRAPHIC modes 4 to 7, the display pages can be easily switched by setting the starting address of the pattern name table using R#2. In fact, the second parameter of the "SET PAGE" BASIC instruction switches the display page this way.

Figure 4.52 Switching pages



* Automatic alternate screen display

In GRAPHIC modes 4 to 7, two pages can be displayed alternately by using the following method. Either page 0 and page 1, or page 2 and page 3 can be displayed alternately.

To begin the alternate display, select the odd-numbered page (1 or 3) using R#2 and set the screen alternation rate in R#13. The 4 high order bits of R#13 represent the time for displaying the even page and the 4 low order bits represent the time for displaying the odd page. The time is set in 1/6

seconds interval. Setting 0 for both time periods causes only the odd page to be displayed.

```

R#13      |      :   EVEN   :      |      :   ODD    :      |  setting the cycle
-----

-----
| even numbered page | odd numbered page  |
-----
|<- EVEN/6 seconds ->|<- ODD/6 seconds->|

```

The interlaced mode allows an apparent screen resolution in the Y direction of double the normal mode. A resolution of up to 424 dots in the Y direction can be achieved using this mode. This is done by alternating at high speed the normal screen and a screen whose scanning lines are offset vertically by half a line. In MSX-VIDEO the interlaced mode is specified by setting bit 3 of R#9 to "1". The two screens are switched 60 times a second.

Figure 4.54 Setting the interlaced mode

```

      First screen
+-- +-----+
|   |-----|
|   |-----|
212 |-----|
dots |-----|
|   |-----|

```

```

| | | | | ^
| | ----- | |
+-- +-----> | ----- | Apparent
                | ..... | 424 dots
                | ----- | resolution
Second screen   +-- +-----> | ..... |
| | ..... | |
| | ..... | |
212 dots       | | ..... |
dots           | | ..... |
| | ..... | |
| | ..... | |
+-- +-----> | ..... |
                | ----- v
interlace mode table
(The first and second screens are
 displayed alternately at 1/60 seconds
 each cycle.)

```



```

1010 ' List 4.6 Hardware scroll
1020 '*****
1030 '
1040 SCREEN 5,2: COLOR 15,0,0: CLS
1050 COPY (0,0)-(255,43) TO (0,212),,PSET 'erase (212,0)-(255,255)
1060 '
1070 FOR I=1 TO 8: D(I)=VAL(MID$("00022220",I,1))-1: NEXT
1080 '
1090 OPEN "GRP:" AS #1
1100 FOR I=0 TO 3
1110 PRESET (64,I*64): PRINT #1,"Hit CURSOR Key"
1120 NEXT
1130 '
1140 J=STICK(0)
1150 P=(P+D(J)) AND &HFF
1160 VDP(24)=P
1170 GOTO 1140

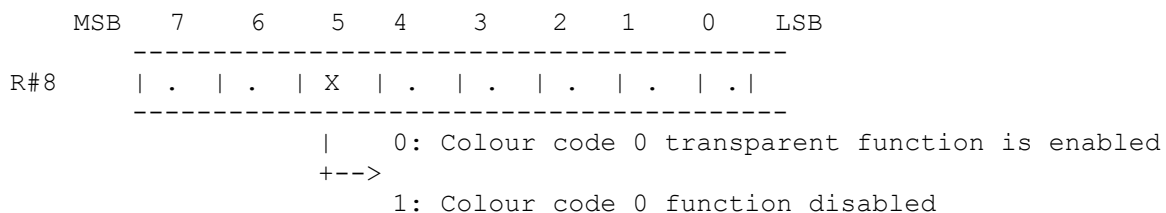
```

=====

* Specifying the colour code 0 function

Among the 16 colour codes, only code 0 can be made as a "transparent" colour (the border colour of the screen can be set transparently), the colour set in palette P#0. Setting bit 5 of R#8 to "1" disables this function and the colour code 0 changes to the colour defined by the palette P#0.

Figure 4.55 Colour code 0 function

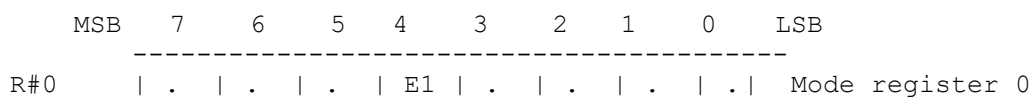


- When the TB bit is "0", colour code 0 becomes transparent.
- When the TB bit is "1", colour code 0 changes to the colour defined by palette P#0.

* Generating interrupts by the scanning line location

In MSX-VIDEO an interrupt can be generated just after the CRT finishes displaying a specific scanning line. Set in R#19 the number of the scanning line at which the interrupt should be generated, and set bit 4 of R#0 to "1" (see Figure 4.56).

Figure 4.56 Generating the scanning line interrupt



```

|      0: Normal condition
+-->
      1: Interrupt at specific line mode

```

```

      MSB      7      6      5      4      3      2      1      0      LSB
-----
R#19  | IL7| IL6| IL5| IL4| IL3| IL2| IL1| IL0|  Interrupt line register
-----

```

5. SPRITES

Sprites are used to display movable character patterns of 8 x 8 or 16 x 16 dots on the screen. This function is especially useful in the programming of games.

The parameters specified are the X and Y coordinates, the character number, and the colour code. The sprite is displayed by writing this data to the preset sprite attribute table.

There are two modes for MSX2 sprites. Mode 1 is compatible to the TMS9918 used in the MSX1 machines. Mode 2 includes several improved functions and has been implemented on the MSX2. This section summarises the sprite function and describes the two modes.

5.1 Sprite Function

Up to 32 sprites can be displayed on one screen at a time.

Sprites have two sizes, 8 x 8 and 16 x 16 dots. Only one size can be displayed on the screen at a time. The size of one dot of the sprite is usually the same as one pixel, but in the case of GRAPHIC5 and 6 modes (for both, the resolution is 512 x 212) the horizontal size is two pixels, that is, the absolute size of the sprite is the same in any mode.

The Sprite mode automatically selected is determined by the screen mode in use. Shown below are the default settings:

```

Sprite mode 1 selected: ..... GRAPHIC 1      (SCREEN 1)
                        GRAPHIC 2      (SCREEN 2)
                        MULTI colour   (SCREEN 3)

Sprite mode 2 selected: ..... GRAPHIC 3      (SCREEN 4)
                        GRAPHIC 4      (SCREEN 5)
                        GRAPHIC 5      (SCREEN 6)
                        GRAPHIC 6      (SCREEN 7)
                        GRAPHIC 7      (SCREEN 8)

```

5.2 Sprite mode 1

Sprite mode 1 has the same functions as the sprite mode of MSX1 machines. Thus programs using this mode can also be run on the MSX1

5.2.1 Number of sprites to be displayed

Figure 4.57 Number of sprites to be displayed (sprite mode 1)

	- - - - -	| #2 |	| #3 |	- - - - -	| #5 |	
	| #1 |	| |	| |	| #4 |	: :	:
	| |	- - - - -	- - - - -	| |	: : : :	#6 :
	- - - - -			- - - - -		
						- - - - -

The following descriptions are settings to display the sprite.

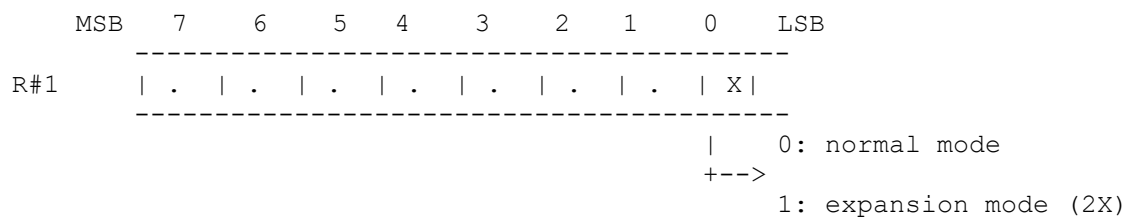
8 x 8 dots or 16 x 16 dots can be set (see Figure 4.58). By default, 8 x 8 dots is selected.

[illegible]

* Expanding the sprite

Figure 4.59 shows how to select whether one dot of the sprite corresponds to one dot of the screen or whether it is expanded double in both the horizontal and vertical directions. By default, the one dot to one dot size is selected.

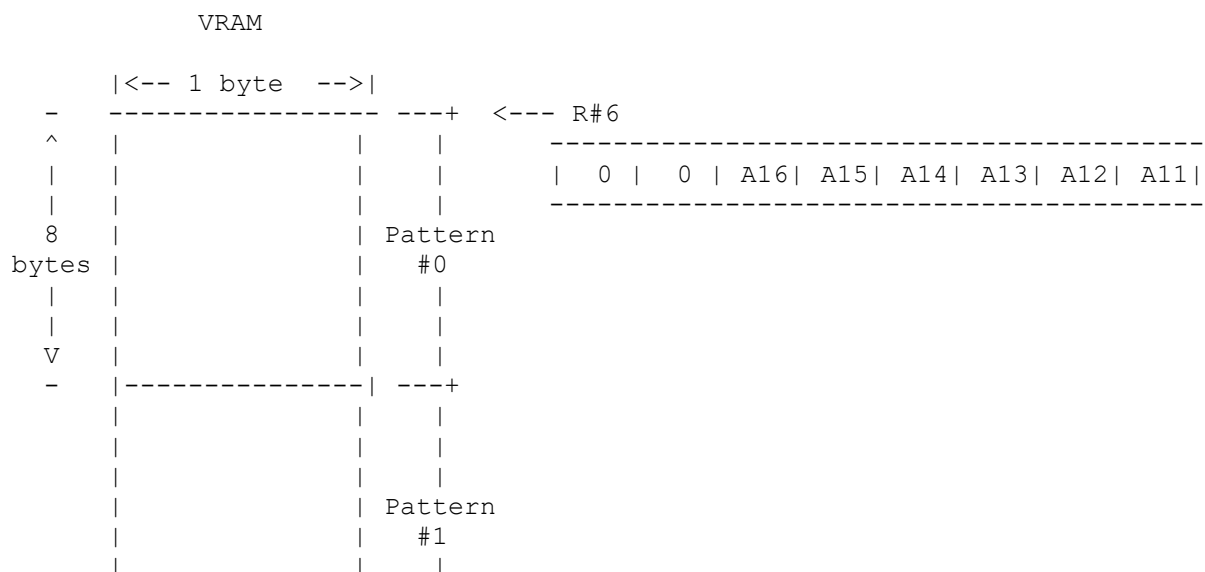
Figure 4.59 Expanding the sprite

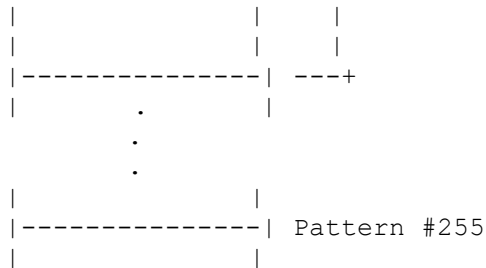


* Setting the sprite pattern generator table

Sprite patterns are defined in the sprite pattern generator table in VRAM. Up to 256 sprites can be defined in the case of 8 x 8 dots, and up to 64 for 16 x 16 dots. Each pattern is numbered from 0 to 255 and is allocated in VRAM as shown in Figure 4.60. For 16 x 16 dots, four 8 x 8 patterns are used from the top of the table. In this case, using any number of these four patterns causes the same sprite to be specified. R#6 is used to set the address in the sprite pattern generator table as shown in Figure 4.60.

Figure 4.60 Structure of the sprite pattern generator table (sprite mode 1)





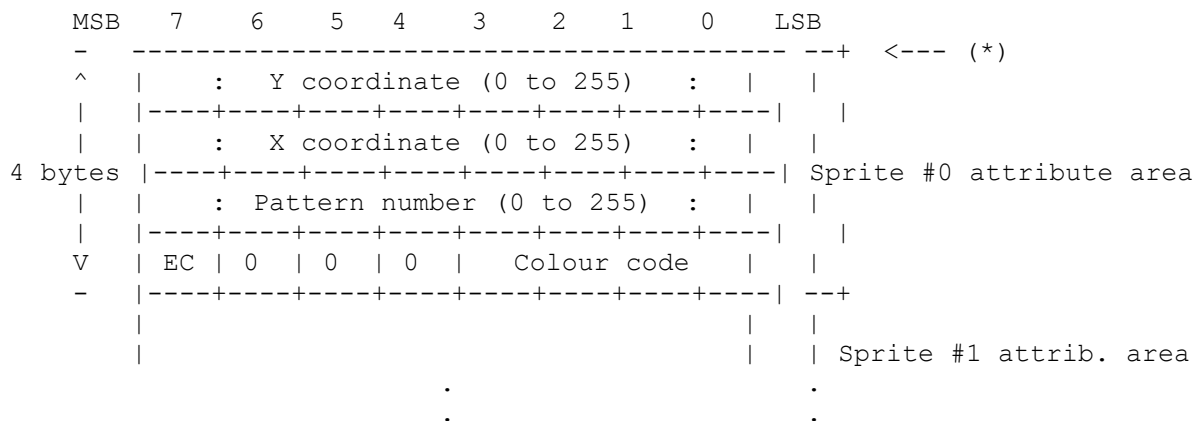
* Setting the sprite attribute table

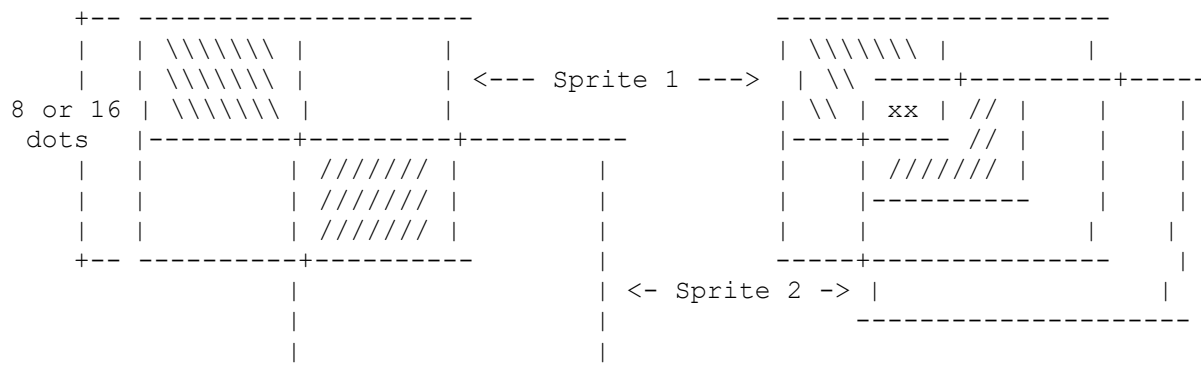
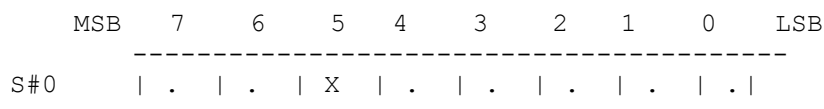
Each sprite is displayed in one of 32 "sprite planes" exclusively, and the sprite status for each sprite plane is recorded using 4 bytes. The area having the information for each sprite plane is called the sprite attribute table. The starting address in VRAM for this table is set in R#5 and R#11 as shown in Figure 4.61.

The four bytes in the attribute table contain the following information:

Y-coordinate:	specifies Y-coordinate of the sprite. Note that the top line of the screen is not 0 but 255. Setting this value in 208 (D0H) causes sprites
X-coordinate:	specifies X-coordinate of the sprite.
pattern number:	specifies the character in the sprite pattern generator table to be displayed.
colour code:	specifies the colour (palette number) of the portion where the bit of the sprite pattern is "1".
EC:	Setting "1" to this bit causes the sprite to be shifted for 32 bits to the left. Using this function enables the dot of the sprite to be displayed one by one from the left edge of the
	screen.

Figure 4.61 Structure of the sprite attribute table (sprite mode 1)





```

-----
| \ | | / | --> This pattern bit has one part

```

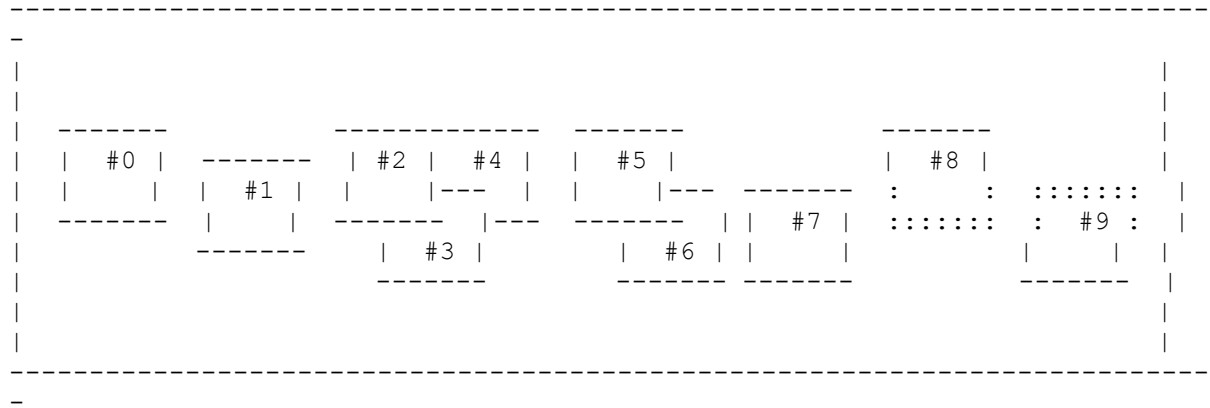
Figure 4.63 Judging the conflict (sprite mode 1)

5.3 Sprite Mode 2

5.3.1 Number of sprites to be displayed

The number of sprites which can be displayed on one screen is also 32, but up to eight sprites can be displayed on a given horizontal line of the screen. The priorities are the same as in mode 1 with the lower numbers having highest priority.

Figure 4.64 Number of sprites to be displayed (sprite mode 2)



5.3.2 Sprite display settings

```
* Sprite size ..... same as sprite mode 1
```

```
* Expanding sprite ..... same as sprite mode 1
```

* Sprite display ON/OFF

In sprite mode 2, the sprite display can be turned ON/OFF by bit 1 of R#8. When this bit is set to 1, no sprites will appear on the screen.

Figure 4.65 Sprite display specification

```

      MSB      7      6      5      4      3      2      1      0      LSB
-----
R#8  | .  | .  | .  | .  | .  | .  | X  | .  |
-----
                                     |      0: Sprite mode on
                                     +-->
                                     1: Sprite mode off

```

```
* Setting the pattern generator table ..... same as sprite mode 1
```

* Sprite attribute table

In sprite mode 2, since different colours can be set for each horizontal line of the sprite, the colour information is stored in a sprite colour table as described below, which is independent of the sprite attribute table. Three kinds of information are stored in the sprite attribute table (see Figure

4.66) .

```

|
| Y-coordinate:      setting this value to 216 (D8H) causes sprites
|                    |
|                    | after this sprite plane not to be displayed. |
|                    | Except for this, it is the same as the sprite |
|                    | mode 1. |
| X-coordinate:      same as sprite mode 1. |
| pattern number:    same as sprite mode 1. |
|
|

```

Figure 4.66 Structure of the sprite attribute table (sprite mode 2)

```

      MSB       7       6       5       4       3       2       1       0       LSB
      - -----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+----+ <--- (*)
      ^ |         :   Y coordinate (0 to 255)   :   |   |
        | |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|   |
        | |         :   X coordinate (0 to 255)   :   |   |
4 bytes | |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----| Sprite #0 attribute area
        | |         :   Pattern number (0 to 255) :   |   |
        | |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|   |
V       | |         :       :       : unused :       :       :   |   |
      - | |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----| --+
          |                                         |   |
          |                                         |   | Sprite #1 attrib. area
              .                                     .
              .                                     .
              .                                     .

          |                                         |   | Sprite #31 attrib. area
          |                                         |   |
          +-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+----+

```

(*)	R#5	| A14|	A13|	A12|	A11|	A10|	1	| 1		| 1	|
		<hr/>									
		<hr/>									
	R#11	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| A16|	A15|		

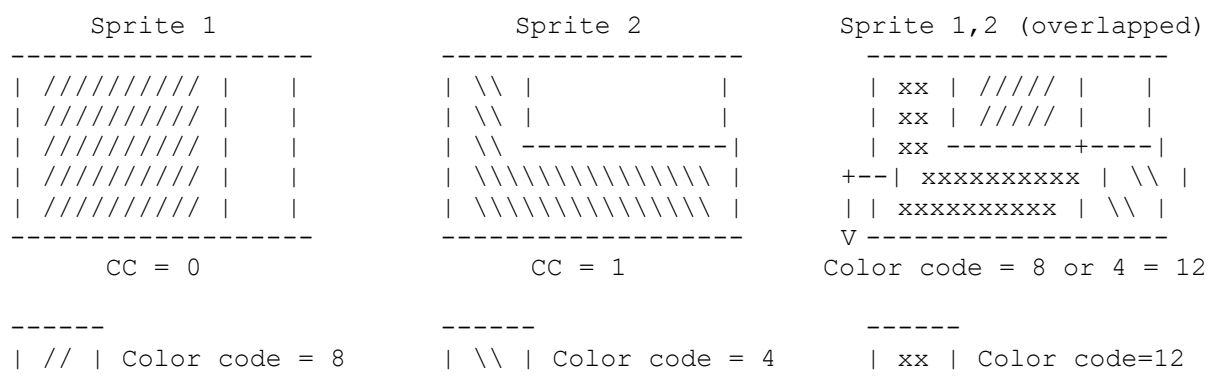
```
* Sprite colour table
```

The colour table is automatically set at the address 512 bytes before the starting address of the sprite attribute table. 16 bytes are allocated for each sprite plane and the following settings are made for each line of the sprite.

colour code:	colour can be specified for each line.
EC:	the same as EC bit of the attribute table of sprite mode one. When "1", the sprite display location is shifted 32 bits to the left. This also can be specified for each line.

0 = no

Figure 4.68 CC bit detection



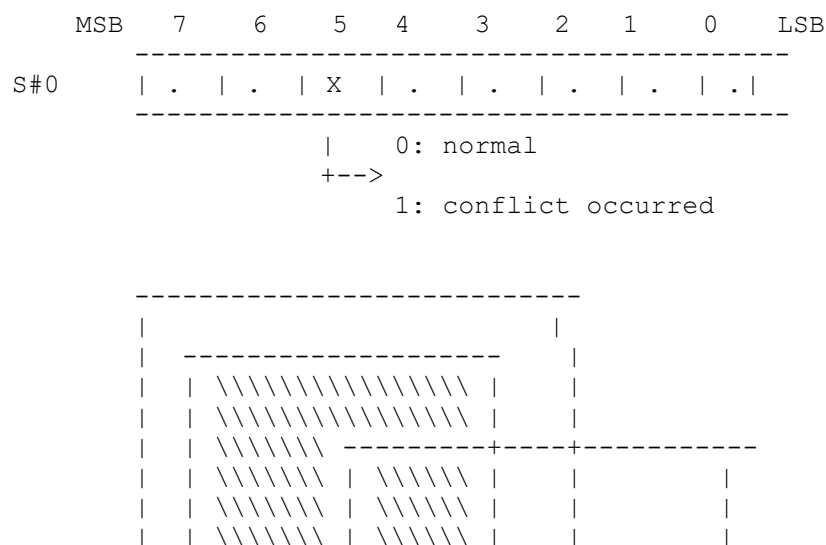
Note:

- 1) Conflicts are not detected when the pattern of the sprite whose CC is "1" is piled on the portion CC=0 of the sprite which has a smaller number and is nearest to it.
- 2) To display the sprite whose CC is "1", CC bit of the sprite which has smaller number should be set to 0.

5.3.3 Judging sprite conflicts

A "conflict" in sprite mode 2 occurs when the display colour of a sprite is not transparent and "1" bits on the line whose CC bit is 0 overlap each other. When two sprites conflict, bit 5 of S#0 becomes "1" and the conflict can be detected (see Figure 4.69). In this case, different from the sprite mode 1, the coordinate where the conflict occurred can be detected by S#3 to S#6 as shown in Figure 4.70. Note that the coordinate which can be obtained by these registers is not the coordinate where the conflict actually occurred. To get this, use Expression 4.5. S#3 to S#6 are reset when S#5 is read out.

Figure 4.69 Conflict of the sprite (sprite mode 2)



```

      | | \\\\\\\ | \\\\\\\ | | | the attribute of this line
      - | \\\\\\\ | \ -+--+----- - -----
--
+-- | | \\\\\\\ | \ | xx | // | ///// | | --> | | 0| 0| : :
: : | | - -+--+----- // | ///// | - -----
--
| | | | ///// | ///// | | | |
| -+--+----- ///// | | +-----+
"0" | | /////////////// | | CC and IC bits are both
    | the attribute | ----- |
    | of this line | |
    | | |
    | -----
    V
-----
| | 0| 0| : : : : |
-----
| |
+-----+
CC and IC bits are both "0"

```

Figure 4.70 Readout of the conflict coordinate

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB	
S#3	| X7 |	| X6 |	| X5 |	| X4 |	| X3 |	| X2 |	| X1 |	| X0 |	|		
the											| X-coordinate where
											| conflict occurred
S#4	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| X8 |	|		
S#5	| Y7 |	| Y6 |	| Y5 |	| Y4 |	| Y3 |	| Y2 |	| Y1 |	| Y0 |	|		
the											| Y-coordinate where
											| conflict occurred
S#6	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| 1 |	| Y9 |	| Y8 |	|		

Expression 4.5 Calculating the actual conflict coordinate

```

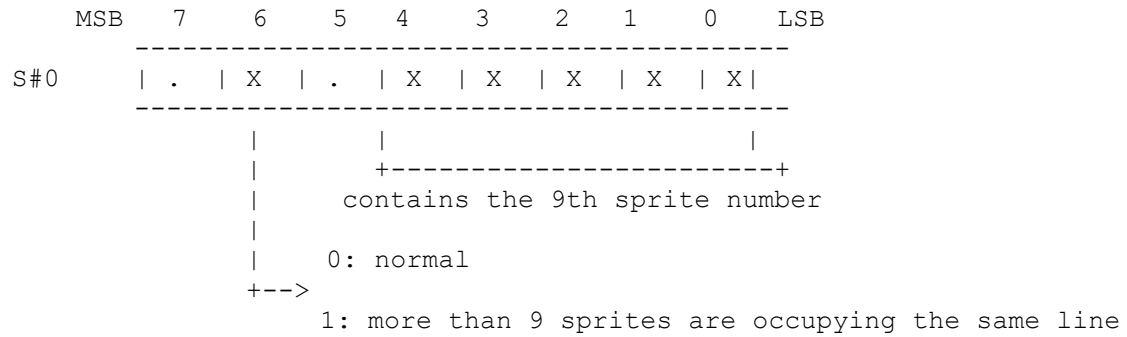
-----
|
| (X-coordinate where the conflict occurred) =
| (X-coordinate of S#3 and S#4) - 12
|
|
| (Y-coordinate where the conflict occurred) =
| (Y-coordinate of S#5 and S#6) - 8
|
|
-----

```

When more than nine sprites are placed on the same horizontal line, bit 6 of

S#0 becomes "1" and the number of the sprite plane whose order of priority is 9 is entered to the 5 low order bits of S#0 (see Figure 4.71).

Figure 4.71 Conflict of the sprite (sprite mode 2)



MSX2 TECHNICAL HANDBOOK

Edited by: ASCII Systems Division
Published by: ASCII Corporation - JAPAN
First edition: March 1987

Text file typed by: Nestor Soriano (Konami Man) - SPAIN
March 1997

Changes from the original:

- In Figure 4.72, last "10000H" is corrected to "1FFFFH".
- In Table 4.6, in TEOR line, "else DC+..." is corrected to "else DC=..."
- In Figure 4.76, in R#45 figure, DIX and DIY bits have been placed correctly (they were inverted in the original).
- In Figure 4.79, in R#42 and R#43 explanation, "NY -> of dots..." has been changed to "NY -> number of dots..."
- In List 4.9, in the line with the comment "YMMM command", 11010000 bitfield has been corrected to 11100000.
- In Figure 4.84, "*" mark removed from the explanation of NX.
- In Figure 4.85, in R#45 explanation, "select source memory" text has been corrected to "select destination memory".
- In List 4.13, labels beginning with "LMMC" have been corrected to "LMCM".
- In List 4.15, in the line with the comment "NY", the "OUT (C),H" instruction has been corrected to "OUT (C),L".
- In section 6.5.9, the explanation of usage of the LINE command were mixed with other text. It has been corrected.
- In Figure 4.94, a line explaining the meaning of R#44 has been added.
- In Figure 4.97, BX9 bit has been suppressed in S#9 figure.
- In Figure 4.99, a line explaining the meaning of R#44 has been added.
- In Table 4.7, "CLR L" has been corrected to "CMR L".

==

CHAPTER 4 - VDP AND DISPLAY SCREEN (Part 6)

6. VDP COMMAND USAGE

MSX-VIDEO can execute basic graphic operations, which are called VDP commands. These are done by accessing special hardware and are available in the GRAPHIC 4 to GRAPHIC 7 modes. These graphic commands have been made easy to implement, requiring only that the necessary parameters be set in the

proper registers before invoking them. This section describes these VDP commands.

6.1 Coordinate System of VDP Commands

When VDP commands are executed, the location of the source and destination points are represented as (X, Y) coordinates as shown in Figure 4.72. When commands are executed, there is no page division and the entire 128K bytes VRAM is placed in a large coordinate system.

Figure 4.72 Coordinate system of VRAM

GRAPHIC 4 (SCREEN 5)		00000H	GRAPHIC 5 (SCREEN 6)	
| (0,0)	(255,0) |	|	| (0,0)	(511,0) |
|	Page 0	|	|	Page 0
| (0,255)	(255,255) |	|	| (0,255)	(511,255) |
-----|		08000H	-----|	
| (0,256)	(255,256) |	|	| (0,256)	(511,256) |
|	Page 1	|	|	Page 1
| (0,511)	(255,511) |	|	| (0,511)	(511,511) |
-----|		10000H	-----|	
| (0,512)	(255,512) |	|	| (0,512)	(511,512) |
|	Page 2	|	|	Page 2
| (0,767)	(255,767) |	|	| (0,767)	(511,767) |
-----|		18000H	-----|	
| (0,768)	(255,768) |	|	| (0,768)	(511,768) |
|	Page 3	|	|	Page 3
| (0,1023)	(255,1023) |	|	| (0,1023)	(511,1023) |
-----|		1FFFFH	-----|	
GRAPHIC 7 (SCREEN 8)		00000H	GRAPHIC 6 (SCREEN 7)	
| (0,0)	(255,0) |	|	| (0,0)	(511,0) |
|	Page 0	|	|	Page 0
| (0,255)	(255,255) |	|	| (0,255)	(511,255) |
-----|		10000H	-----|	
| (0,256)	(255,256) |	|	| (0,256)	(511,256) |
|	Page 1	|	|	Page 1
| (0,511)	(255,511) |	|	| (0,511)	(511,511) |
-----|		1FFFFH	-----|	

6.2 VDP Commands

There are 12 types of VDP commands which can be executed by MSX-VIDEO. These are shown in Table 4.5.

Table 4.5 List of VDP commands

-									
Command name	Destination	Source	Units	Mnemonic	R#46 (4 hi ord)				
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----									
	VRAM	CPU	bytes	HMMC	1	1	1	1	

High speed	VRAM	VRAM	bytes	YMMM	1	1	1	0	
move	VRAM	VRAM	bytes	HMMM	1	1	0	1	
	VRAM	VDP	bytes	HMMV	1	1	0	0	

	VRAM	CPU	dots	LMMC	1	0	1	1	
Logical	CPU	VRAM	dots	LMCM	1	0	1	0	
move	VRAM	VRAM	dots	LMMM	1	0	0	1	
	VRAM	VDP	dots	LMMV	1	0	0	0	

Line	VRAM	VDP	dots	LINE	0	1	1	1	

Search	VRAM	VDP	dots	SRCH	0	1	1	0	

Pset	VRAM	VDP	dots	PSET	0	1	0	1	

Point	VDP	VRAM	dots	POINT	0	1	0	0	

	----	----	-----	----	0	0	1	1	
Reserved	----	----	-----	----	0	0	1	0	
	----	----	-----	----	0	0	0	1	

Stop	----	----	-----	----	0	0	0	0	

* When data is written in R#46 (Command register), MSX-VIDEO begins to execute the command after setting 1 to bit 0 (CE/Command Execute) of the status register S#2. Necessary parameters should be set in register R#32 to R#45 before the command is executed.

* When the execution of the command ends, CE becomes 0.

* To stop the execution of the command, execute STOP command.

* Actions of the commands are guaranteed only in the bitmap modes (GRAPHIC 4 to GRAPHIC 7).

6.3 Logical Operations

When commands are executed, various logical operations can be done between data in VRAM and the specified data. Each operation will be done according to the rules listed in Table 4.6.

In the table, SC represents the source color and DC represents the destination colour. IMP, AND, OR, EOR and NOT write the result of each operation to the destination. In operations whose names are preceded by "T",

dots which correspond with SC=0 are not the objects of the operations and remains as DC. Using these operations enables only colour portions of two figures to be overlapped, so they are especially effective for animations.

List 4.7 shows an example of these operations.

Table 4.6 List of logical operations

Logical name		L03	L02	L01	L00
IMP	$DC=SC$	0	0	0	0
AND	$DC=SC \times DC$	0	0	0	1
OR	$DC=SC+DC$	0	0	1	0
EOR	$DC=\overline{SC} \times DC + SC \times \overline{DC}$	0	0	1	1
NOT	$DC=\overline{SC}$	0	1	0	0
----		0	1	0	1
----		0	1	1	0
----		0	1	1	1
TIMP	if SC=0 then DC=DC else DC=SC			1	0 0
TAND	if SC=0 then DC=DC else $DC=SC \times DC$	1	0	0	1
TOR	if SC=0 then DC=DC else $DC=SC+DC$	1	0	1	0
TEOR	if SC=0 then DC=DC else $DC=\overline{SC} \times DC + SC \times \overline{DC}$	1	0	1	1
TNOT	if SC=0 then DC=DC else $DC=\overline{SC}$			1	1 0
----		1	1	0	1
----		1	1	1	0
----		1	1	1	1

* SC = Source colour code
 * DC = Destination colour code
 * EOR = Exclusive OR

List 4.7 Example of the logical operation with T

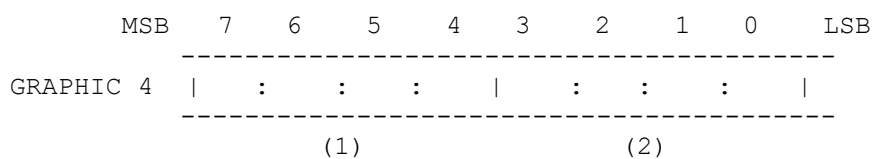
```

1000 '*****
1010 ' List 4.7 logical operation with T
1020 '*****
1030 '
1040 SCREEN8 : COLOR 15,0,0 : CLS
1050 DIM A%(3587)

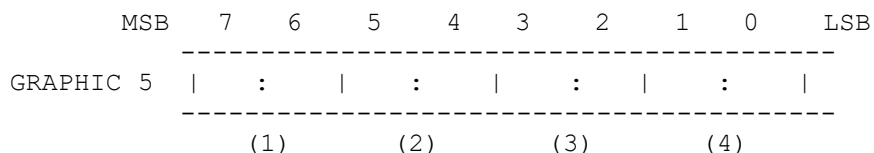
```


GRAPHIC 5 mode of the DX and NX registers are ignored.

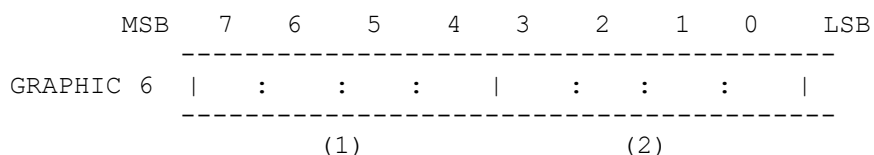
Figure 4.75 Dots not to be referred to



Since 1 VRAM byte represents 2 dots, 1 low order bit of X-coordinate is not referred to.



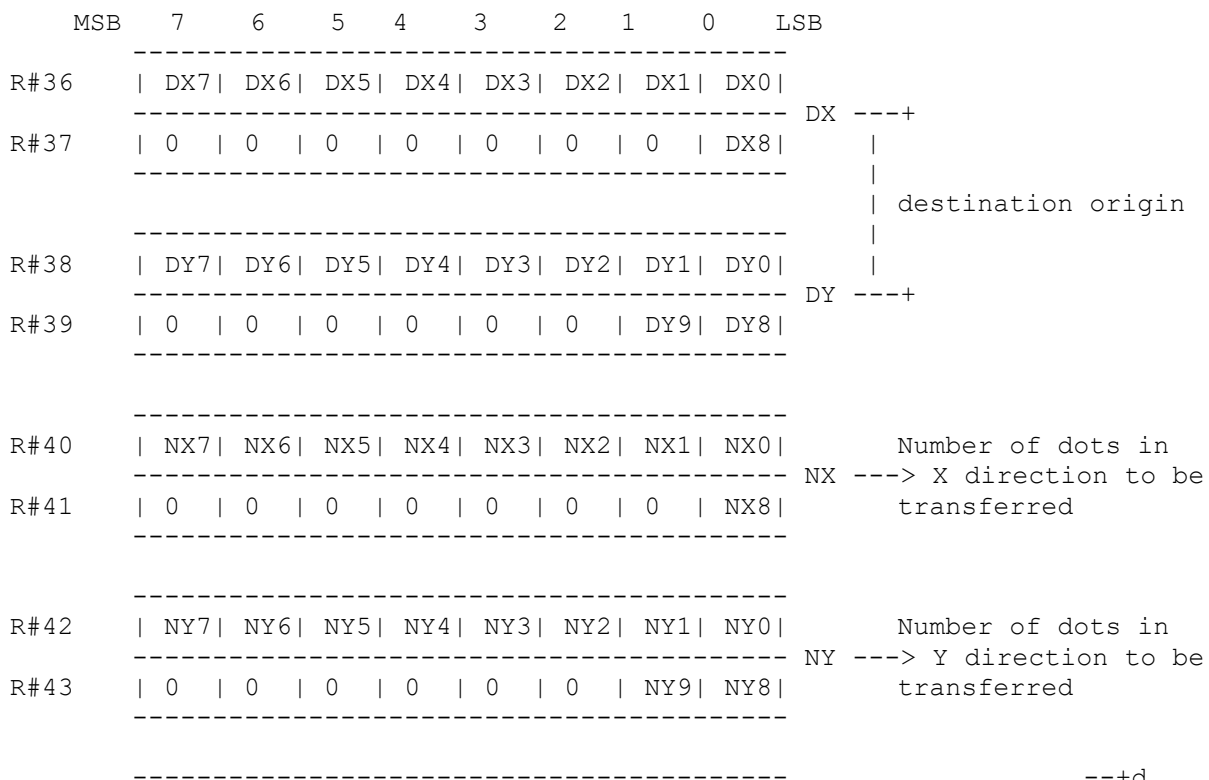
Since 1 VRAM byte represents 4 dots, 2 low order bits of X-coordinate are not referred to.

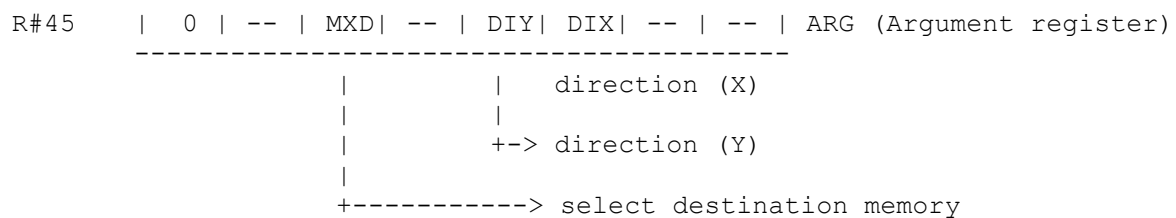
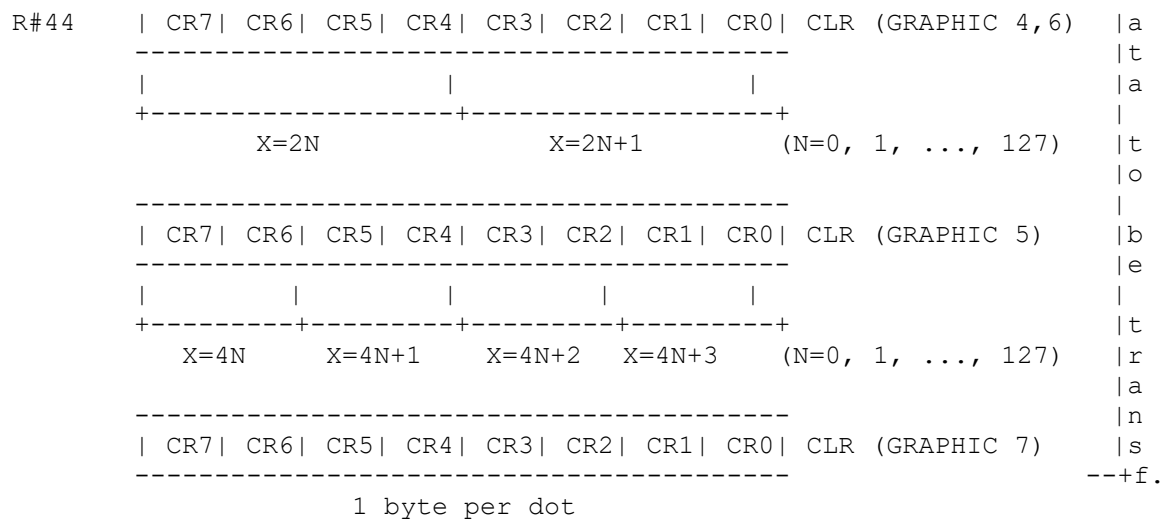


Since 1 VRAM byte represents 2 dots, 1 low order bit of X-coordinate is not referred to.

Figure 4.76 Register settings of HMMC command

> HMMC register setup





> HMMC command execution

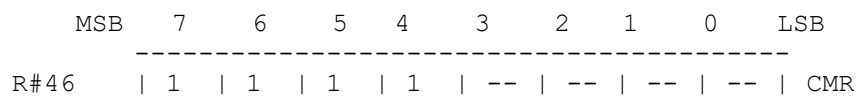
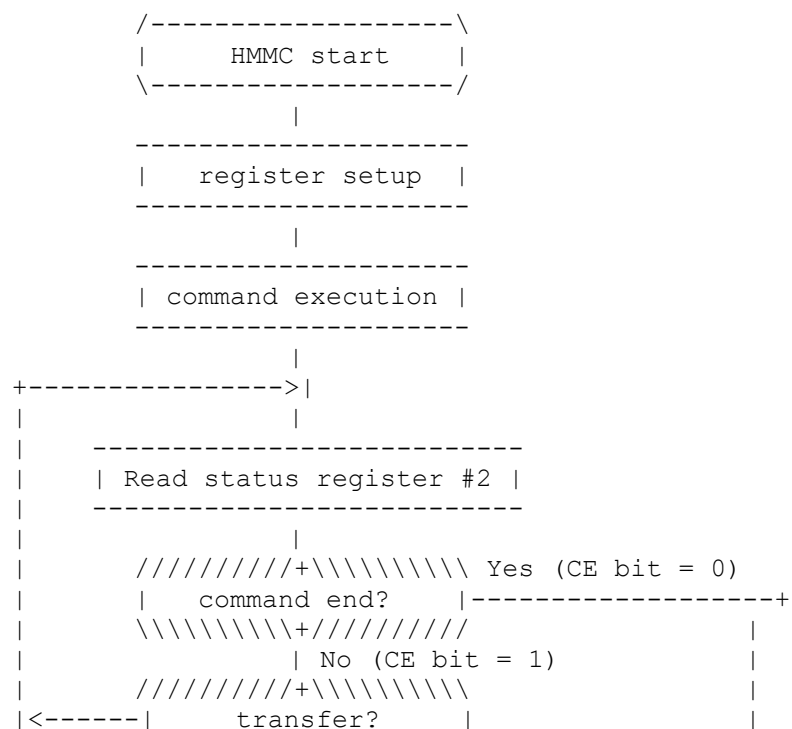
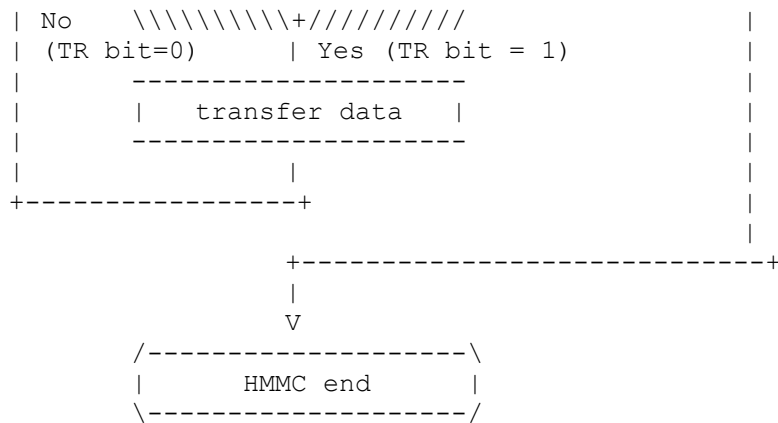


Figure 4.77 HMMC command execution flow chart





List 4.8 Example of HMMC command execution

```

;*****
; List 4.8 HMMC sample
; to use, set H, L, D, E, IX and go
; RAM (IX) ---> VRAM (H,L)-(D,E)
;*****
;
RDVDP: EQU 0006H
WRVDP: EQU 0007H

;----- program start -----

HMMC: DI ;disable interrupt
CALL WAIT.VDP ;wait end of command

LD A, (WRVDP)
LD C, A
INC C ;C := PORT#1's address
LD A, 36
OUT (C), A
LD A, 17+80H
OUT (C), A ;R#17 := 36

INC C
INC C ;C := PORT#3's address
XOR A
OUT (C), H ;DX
OUT (C), A
OUT (C), L ;DY
OUT (C), A

LD A, H ;make NX and DIX
SUB A
LD D, 00000100B
JR NC, HMMC1
LD D, 00000000B
NEG
HMMC1: LD H, A ;H := NX , D := DIX

LD A, L
SUB A
LD E, 00001000B
JR NC, HMMC2

```

```

        LD      E,00000000B
        NEG
HMMC2:  LD      L,A                      ;L := NY , E := DIY

        XOR     A
        OUT     (C),H                  ;NX
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),L                  ;NY
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      H,(IX+0)
        OUT     (C),H                  ;first DATA
        LD      A,D
        OR      E
        OUT     (C),A                  ;DIX and DIY
        LD      A,0F0H
        OUT     (C),A                  ;HMMC command

        LD      A,(WRVDP)
        LD      C,A                    ;C := PORT#1's address
        INC     C
        LD      A,44+80H
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      A,17+80H
        OUT     (C),A
        INC     C
        INC     C

LOOP:   LD      A,2
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        BIT     0,A                    ;check CE bit
        JR     Z,EXIT
        BIT     7,A                    ;check TR bit
        JR     Z,LOOP
        INC     IX
        LD      A,(IX+0)
        OUT     (C),A
        JR     LOOP

EXIT:   LD      A,0
        CALL    GET.STATUS             ;when exit, you must select S#0
        EI
        RET

GET.STATUS:                                ;read status register specified by A
        PUSH    BC
        LD      BC,(WRVDP)
        INC     C
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      A,8FH
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      BC,(RDVDP)
        INC     C
        IN      A,(C)
        POP     BC
        RET

WAIT.VDP:                                ;wait VDP ready
        LD      A,2
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        AND     1
        JR     NZ,WAIT.VDP

```

```

XOR    A
CALL   GET.STATUS
RET

END

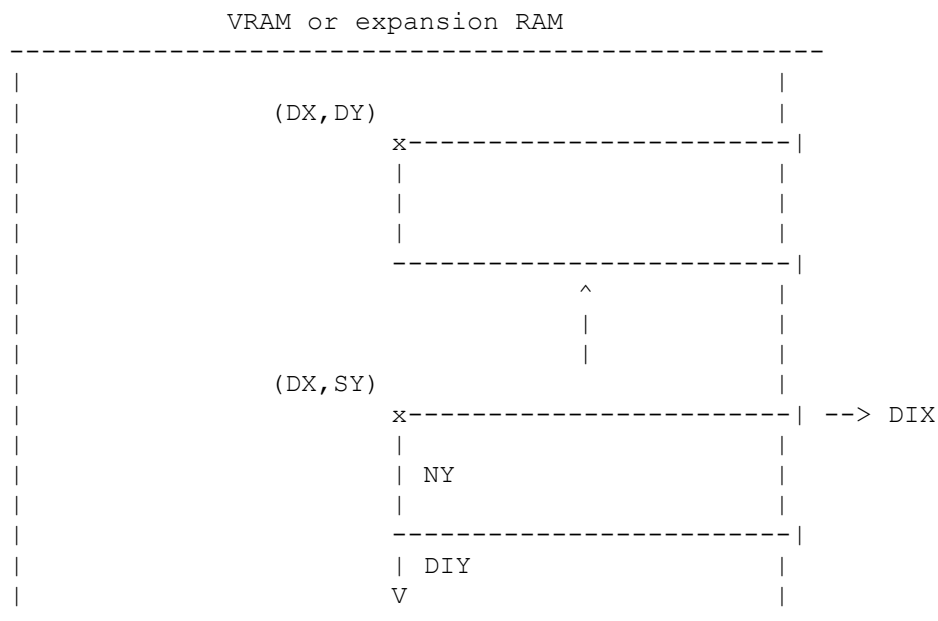
```

6.5.2 YMMM (high-speed transfer between VRAM in Y direction)

Data from a specified VRAM area is transferred into another area in VRAM. Note that transfers using this command can only be done in the Y direction (see Figure 4.78).

After setting the data as shown in Figure 4.79 in the proper registers, writing command code E0H in R#46 causes the command to be executed. When the CE bit of S#2 is "1", it indicates that the command is currently being executed. List 4.9 shows an example of using YMMM.

Figure 4.78 Actions of YMMM command



MXD: select the destination memory 0 = VRAM, 1 = expansion RAM

SY: source origin Y-coordinate (0 to 1023)

NY: number of dots to be transferred in Y direction (0 to 1023)

DIX: set which to be transferred, to the right end or to the left end of the screen from the source origin 0 = right, 1 = left

DIY: direction of NY from the origin 0 = below, 1 = above

DX: destination origin X-coordinate (0 to 511)*

DY: destination origin Y-coordinate (0 to 1023)

* The one low-order bit for GRAPHIC 4 and 6 modes, or two low-order bits for GRAPHIC 5 mode of the DX register are ignored.

Figure 4.79 Register settings of YMMM command

> YMMM register setup

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB	
R#34		| SY7|	SY6|	SY5|	SY4|	SY3|	SY2|	SY1|	SY0|		
R#35		| 0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	SY9|	SY8|		SY --> source origin
R#36		| DX7|	DX6|	DX5|	DX4|	DX3|	DX2|	DX1|	DX0|		
R#37		| 0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	DX8|		DX --> destination and source origin
R#38		| DY7|	DY6|	DY5|	DY4|	DY3|	DY2|	DY1|	DY0|		
R#39		| 0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	DY9|	DY8|		DY --> destination origin
R#42		| NY7|	NY6|	NY5|	NY4|	NY3|	NY2|	NY1|	NY0|		
R#43		| 0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	0 |	NY9|	NY8|		number of dots to NY ---> be transferred in Y direction
R#45		| 0 |	-- |	MXD|	-- |	DIY|	DIX|	-- |	-- |		ARG (Argument register)
				|		|					direction (X)
				|		|					direction (Y)
				|							select destination memory

> YMMM command execution

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB
R#46		| 1 |	1 |	1 |	0 |	-- |	-- |	-- |	-- |	CMR

List 4.9 Example of YMMM command execution

```

;*****
; List 4.9 YMMM sample
; to use, set L, E, B, C, D(bit 2) and go
; VRAM (B,L)-(*,E) ---> VRAM (B,C)
; DIX must be set in D(bit 2)
;*****
;

```

```
RDVDP: EQU    0006H
WRVDP: EQU    0007H
```

```
;----- program start -----
```

```
YMMM:  DI                ;disable interrupt
        PUSH    BC        ;save destination
        CALL    WAIT.VDP   ;wait end of command

        LD      A, (WRVDP)
        LD      C, A
        INC     C          ;C := PORT#1's address
        LD      A, 34
        OUT     (C), A
        LD      A, 17+80H
        OUT     (C), A     ;R#17 := 34

        INC     C
        INC     C          ;C := PORT#3's address
        XOR     A
        OUT     (C), L     ;SY
        OUT     (C), A

        LD      A, L        ;make NY and DIY
        SUB     A
        LD      E, 00001000B
        JP      NC, YMMM1
        LD      E, 00000000B
        NEG
YMMM1:  LD      L, A        ;L := NY , D := DIY

        LD      A, D
        OR      E

        POP     DE         ;restore DX,DY
        PUSH    AF        ;save DIX,DIY
        XOR     A
        OUT     (C), D     ;DX
        OUT     (C), A
        OUT     (C), E     ;DY
        OUT     (C), A
        OUT     (C), A     ;dummy
        OUT     (C), A     ;dummy
        OUT     (C), L     ;NY
        OUT     (C), A
        OUT     (C), A     ;dummy
        POP     AF
        OUT     (C), A     ;DIX and DIY
        LD      A, 11100000B ;YMMM command
        OUT     (C), A

        EI
        RET

GET.STATUS:
        PUSH    BC
        LD      BC, (WRVDP)
        INC     C
        OUT     (C), A
        LD      A, 8FH
        OUT     (C), A
```


NY: number of dots to be transferred in Y direction (0 to 1023)

DIX: direction of NX from the origin 0 = right, 1 = left

DIY: direction of NY from the origin 0 = below, 1 = above

DX: destination origin X-coordinate (0 to 511)*

DY: destination origin Y-coordinate (0 to 1023)

* The one low-order bit for GRAPHIC 4 and 6 modes, or two low-order bits for

GRAPHIC 5 mode of the SX, DX, and NX register are ignored.

Figure 4.81 Register settings of HMMM command

> HMMM register setup

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB		
R#32	|	SX7|	SX6|	SX5|	SX4|	SX3|	SX2|	SX1|	SX0|	SX ---+		
R#33	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+		|	
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	SX8|	|	source origin	

R#34	|	SY7|	SY6|	SY5|	SY4|	SY3|	SY2|	SY1|	SY0|	SY ---+		
R#35	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+		|	
		0	0	0	0	0	0	SY9|	SY8|	|		

R#36	|	DX7|	DX6|	DX5|	DX4|	DX3|	DX2|	DX1|	DX0|	DX ---+		
R#37	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+		|	
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	DX8|	|	destination origin	

R#38	|	DY7|	DY6|	DY5|	DY4|	DY3|	DY2|	DY1|	DY0|	DY ---+		
R#39	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+		|	
		0	0	0	0	0	0	DY9|	DY8|	|		

R#40	|	NX7|	NX6|	NX5|	NX4|	NX3|	NX2|	NX1|	NX0|	NX --->	Number of dots in	
R#41	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+		|	X direction to be
		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NX8|	|	transferred	

R#42	|	NY7|	NY6|	NY5|	NY4|	NY3|	NY2|	NY1|	NY0|	NY --->	Number of dots in	
R#43	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+		|	Y direction to be
		0	0	0	0	0	0	NY9|	NY8|	|	transferred	

R#45	|	0	--	MXD|	MXS|	DIY|	DIX|	--	--	ARG	(Argument register)	

				|	|	|	direction (X)					
				|	|	+--> direction (Y)						

```

| +-----> select source memory
|
+-----> select destination memory

```

> HMMM command execution

```

      MSB   7     6     5     4     3     2     1     0     LSB
-----
R#46  | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | -- | -- | -- | -- | CMR
-----

```

List 4.10 Example of HMMM command execution

```

;*****
; List 4.10 HMMM sample
;           to use, set H, L, D, E, B, C and go
;           VRAM (H,L)-(D,E) ---> VRAM (B,C)
;           DIX must be set in D(bit 2)
;*****
;
RDVDP: EQU    0006H
WRVDP: EQU    0007H

;----- program start -----

HMMM:  DI                      ;disable interrupt
       PUSH    BC              ;save destination
       CALL    WAIT.VDP        ;wait end of command

       LD      A, (WRVDP)
       LD      C,A
       INC     C                ;C := PORT#1's address
       LD      A,32
       OUT     (C),A
       LD      A,80H+17
       OUT     (C),A           ;R#17 := 32

       INC     C
       INC     C                ;C := PORT#3's address
       XOR     A
       OUT     (C),H           ;SX
       OUT     (C),A
       OUT     (C),L           ;SY
       OUT     (C),A

       LD      A,H              ;make NX and DIX
       SUB     A
       LD      D,00000100B
       JP      NC,HMMM1
       LD      D,00000000B
       NEG

HMMM1: LD      H,A              ;H := NX , D := DIX

       LD      A,L              ;make NY and DIY
       SUB     A
       LD      E,00001000B
       JP      NC,HMMM2
       LD      E,00000000B
       NEG

```

```

HMMM2:  LD      L,A                      ;L := NY , E := DIY

        LD      A,D
        OR      E
        POP     DE                      ;restore DX,DY
        PUSH    AF                      ;save DIX,DIY
        XOR     A
        OUT     (C),D                  ;DX
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),E                  ;DY
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),H                  ;NX
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),L                  ;NY
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),A                  ;dummy
        POP     AF
        OUT     (C),A                  ;DIX and DIY

        LD      A,11010000B            ;HMMM command
        OUT     (C),A

        EI
        RET

GET.STATUS:
        PUSH    BC
        LD      BC,(WRVDP)
        INC     C
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      A,8FH
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      BC,(RDVDP)
        INC     C
        IN      A,(C)
        POP     BC
        RET

WAIT.VDP:
        LD      A,2
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        AND     1
        JP      NZ,WAIT.VDP
        XOR     A
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        RET

        END

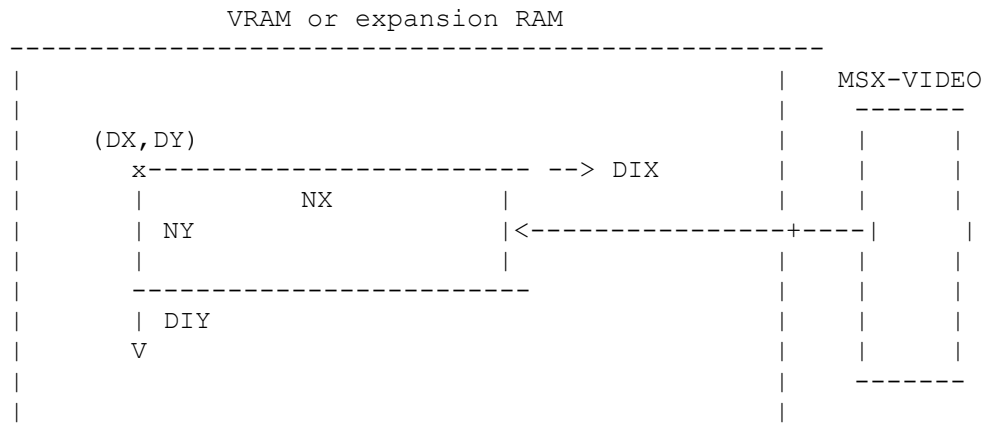
```

6.5.4 HMMV (painting the rectangle in high speed)

Each byte of data in the specified VRAM area is painted by the specified colour code (see Figure 4.82)

After setting the parameters as shown in Figure 4.83, writing C0H in R#46 causes the command to be executed. While the command is being executed, the CE bit of S#2 is 1. List 4.11 shows an example of using HMMV.

Figure 4.82 Actions of HMMC command



MXD: select memory 0 = VRAM, 1 = expansion RAM

NX: number of dots to be painted in X direction (0 to 511)*

NY: number of dots to be painted in Y direction (0 to 1023)

DIX: direction of NX from the origin 0 = right, 1 = left

DIY: direction of NY from the origin 0 = below, 1 = above

DX: origin X-coordinate (0 to 511)*

DY: origin Y-coordinate (0 to 1023)

CLR (R#44:Colour register): Painted data

* The one low-order bit for GRAPHIC 4 and 6 modes, or two low-order bits for GRAPHIC 5 mode of the DX and NX registers are ignored.

Figure 4.83 Register settings of HMMV command

> HMMV register setup

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB					
R#36	|	DX7|	DX6|	DX5|	DX4|	DX3|	DX2|	DX1|	DX0|						
	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+		DX ----+				
R#37	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	DX8|			

											|	origin			
R#38	|	DY7|	DY6|	DY5|	DY4|	DY3|	DY2|	DY1|	DY0|						
	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+		DY ----+				
R#39	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	DY9|	DY8|		

R#40	|	NX7|	NX6|	NX5|	NX4|	NX3|	NX2|	NX1|	NX0|						
		-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+						
R#41	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	NX8|	

															number of dots in
															NX ----> X direction to
															be painted

```

-----
R#42 | NY7| NY6| NY5| NY4| NY3| NY2| NY1| NY0| number of dots in
      |----+----+----+----+----+----+----+----| NY ---> Y direction to
R#43 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | NY9| NY8| be painted
      -----

```

```

-----
R#44 | CR7| CR6| CR5| CR4| CR3| CR2| CR1| CR0| CLR (GRAPHIC 4,6) |a
      |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|t
      |                                     |                                     |a
      +-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|
            X=2N                X=2N+1                (N=0, 1, ..., 127) |t
                                                    |o
      | CR7| CR6| CR5| CR4| CR3| CR2| CR1| CR0| CLR (GRAPHIC 5) |b
      |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|e
      |                                     |                                     |
      +-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|p
            X=4N                X=4N+1                X=4N+2                X=4N+3                (N=0, 1, ..., 127) |a
                                                    |i
      | CR7| CR6| CR5| CR4| CR3| CR2| CR1| CR0| CLR (GRAPHIC 7) |t
      |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|n
                                                    |
            1 byte / dot                                     ---+e
                                                    d

```

```

-----
R#45 | 0 | -- | MXD| -- | DIY| DIX| -- | -- | ARG (Argument register)
      |-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----|
      |                                     | painting direction (X)
      |                                     |
      |                                     | +-> painting direction (Y)
      |                                     |
      +-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----> memory selection

```

> HMMV command execution

```

      MSB   7   6   5   4   3   2   1   0   LSB
      -----
R#46 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | -- | -- | -- | -- | CMR
      -----

```

List 4.11 Example of HMMV command execution

```

=====
;*****
; List 4.11 HMMV sample
; to use, set H, L, D, E, B and go
; B ---> VRAM (H,L)-(D,E) fill
;*****
;
RDVDP: EQU 0006H
WRVDP: EQU 0007H

;----- program start -----

HMMV: DI ;disable interrupt
      CALL WAIT.VDP ;wait end of command

      LD A, (WRVDP)
      LD C,A

```



```

INC      C                      ;C := PORT#1's address
LD       A,36
OUT      (C),A
LD       A,80H+17
OUT      (C),A                  ;R#17 := 36

INC      C
INC      C                      ;C := PORT#3's address
XOR      A
OUT      (C),H                  ;DX
OUT      (C),A
OUT      (C),L                  ;DY
OUT      (C),A

LD       A,H                    ;make NX and DIX
SUB      A
LD       D,00000100B
JP       NC,HMMV1
LD       D,00000000B
NEG
HMMV1:   LD       H,A            ;H := NX

LD       A,L                    ;make NY and DIY
SUB      A
LD       E,00001000B
JP       NC,HMMV2
LD       E,00000000B
NEG
HMMV2:   OUT      (C),H
LD       H,A                    ;H := NY

XOR      A
OUT      (C),A
OUT      (C),H
OUT      (C),A
OUT      (C),B                  ;fill data
XOR      A
OR       D
OR       E
OUT      (C),A                  ;DIX and DIY

LD       A,11000000B            ;HMMV command
OUT      (C),A

EI
RET

GET.STATUS:
PUSH     BC
LD       BC,(WRVDP)
INC      C
OUT      (C),A
LD       A,8FH
OUT      (C),A
LD       BC,(RDVDP)
INC      C
IN       A,(C)
POP      BC
RET

WAIT.VDP:

```

=====

Figure 4.85 Register settings of LMMC command

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB	
R#36	<div> <div>DX7</div> <div>DX6</div> <div>DX5</div> <div>DX4</div> <div>DX3</div> <div>DX2</div> <div>DX1</div> <div>DX0</div> </div>										
R#37	<div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>DX8</div> </div>									<div> <div>DX</div> <div>----</div> <div>+</div> </div>	
R#38	<div> <div>DY7</div> <div>DY6</div> <div>DY5</div> <div>DY4</div> <div>DY3</div> <div>DY2</div> <div>DY1</div> <div>DY0</div> </div>									<div> <div>DY</div> <div>----</div> <div>+</div> </div>	
R#39	<div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>DY9</div> <div>DY8</div> </div>									<div> <div>destination origin</div> </div>	
R#40	<div> <div>NX7</div> <div>NX6</div> <div>NX5</div> <div>NX4</div> <div>NX3</div> <div>NX2</div> <div>NX1</div> <div>NX0</div> </div>									<div> <div>NX</div> <div>----</div> <div>+</div> </div>	
R#41	<div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>NX8</div> </div>									<div> <div>Number of dots in X direction to be transferred</div> </div>	
R#42	<div> <div>NY7</div> <div>NY6</div> <div>NY5</div> <div>NY4</div> <div>NY3</div> <div>NY2</div> <div>NY1</div> <div>NY0</div> </div>									<div> <div>NY</div> <div>----</div> <div>+</div> </div>	
R#43	<div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>0</div> <div>NY9</div> <div>NY8</div> </div>									<div> <div>Number of dots in Y direction to be transferred</div> </div>	
R#44	<div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> <div>CR3</div> <div>CR2</div> <div>CR1</div> <div>CR0</div> </div>									<div> <div>CLR (GRAPHIC 4,6)</div> <div>----</div> <div>+</div> </div>	
trans-	<div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> <div>CR1</div> <div>CR0</div> </div>									<div> <div>CLR (GRAPHIC 5)</div> <div>----</div> <div>+</div> </div>	
	<div> <div>CR7</div> <div>CR6</div> <div>CR5</div> <div>CR4</div> <div>CR3</div> <div>CR2</div> <div>CR1</div> <div>CR0</div> </div>									<div> <div>CLR (GRAPHIC 7)</div> <div>----</div> <div>+</div> </div>	
R#45	<div> <div>0</div> <div>--</div> <div>MXD</div> <div>--</div> <div>DIY</div> <div>DIX</div> <div>--</div> <div>--</div> </div>									<div> <div>ARG (Argument register)</div> </div>	
	<div> <div>direction (X)</div> </div>										
	<div> <div>+-> direction (Y)</div> </div>										
	<div> <div>-----> select destination memory</div> </div>										

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB	
R#46	|	1	|	0	|	1	|	1	|	L03| L02| L01| L00|	CMR
						+	-----				+
						Logical operation					

```

      /-----\
      |         LMMC start        |
      \-----/
            |
      -----
      |   register setup   |
      -----
            |
      -----
      | command execution |
      -----
            |
+----->|
      |
      -----
      | read status register #2 |
      -----
            |
      ///////////////+\\\\\\\\\\\\\\ Yes (CE bit = 0)
      |   command end?   |-----+
      \\\\\\\\\\\\++//////////
            | No (CE bit = 1)
      ///////////////+\\\\\\\\\\\\\\
<-----|   transfer?   |
No \\\\\\\\\\\\\++//////////
(TR bit=0) | Yes (TR bit = 1)
            |
      -----
      |   transfer data   |
      -----
            |
+-----+
            |
      +-----+
            |
      V
      /-----\
      |     LMMC end     |
      \-----/

```

=====

```

;*****
; List 4.12      LMMC sample
;                to use, set H, L, D, E, IX, A and go
;                RAM (IX) ---> VRAM (H,L)-(D,E) (logi-OP : A)
;*****
;
RDVDP: EQU      0006H
WRVDP: EQU      0007H

;----- program start -----

LMMC:  DI                      ;disable interrupt
       LD      B,A             ;B := LOGICAL OPERATION
       CALL    WAIT.VDP       ;wait end of command

       LD      A, (WRVDP)

```

```

LD      C,A
INC     C                      ;C := PORT#1's address
LD      A,36
OUT     (C),A
LD      A,80H+17
OUT     (C),A                  ;R#17 := 36

INC     C
INC     C                      ;C := PORT#3's address
XOR     A
OUT     (C),H                  ;DX
OUT     (C),A
OUT     (C),L                  ;DY
OUT     (C),A

LD      A,H                    ;make NX and DIX
SUB     A
LD      D,00000100B
JR      NC,LMMC1
LD      D,00000000B
NEG
LMMC1:  LD      H,A              ;H := NX , D := DIX

LD      A,L
SUB     A
LD      E,00001000B
JR      NC,LMMC2
LD      E,00000000B
NEG
LMMC2:  LD      L,A              ;L := NY , E := DIY

XOR     A
OUT     (C),H                  ;NX
OUT     (C),A
OUT     (C),L                  ;NY
OUT     (C),A
LD      A,(IX+0)
OUT     (C),A                  ;first DATA
LD      A,D
OR      E
OUT     (C),A                  ;DIX and DIY

LD      A,B                    ;A := LOGICAL OPERATION
OR      10110000B              ;LMMC command
OUT     (C),A

DEC     C
DEC     C

LOOP:   LD      A,2
CALL    GET.STATUS
BIT     0,A                    ;check CE bit
JP      Z,EXIT
BIT     7,A                    ;check TR bit
JP      Z,LOOP
INC     IX
LD      A,(IX+0)
OUT     (C),A
JR      LOOP

EXIT:   LD      A,0

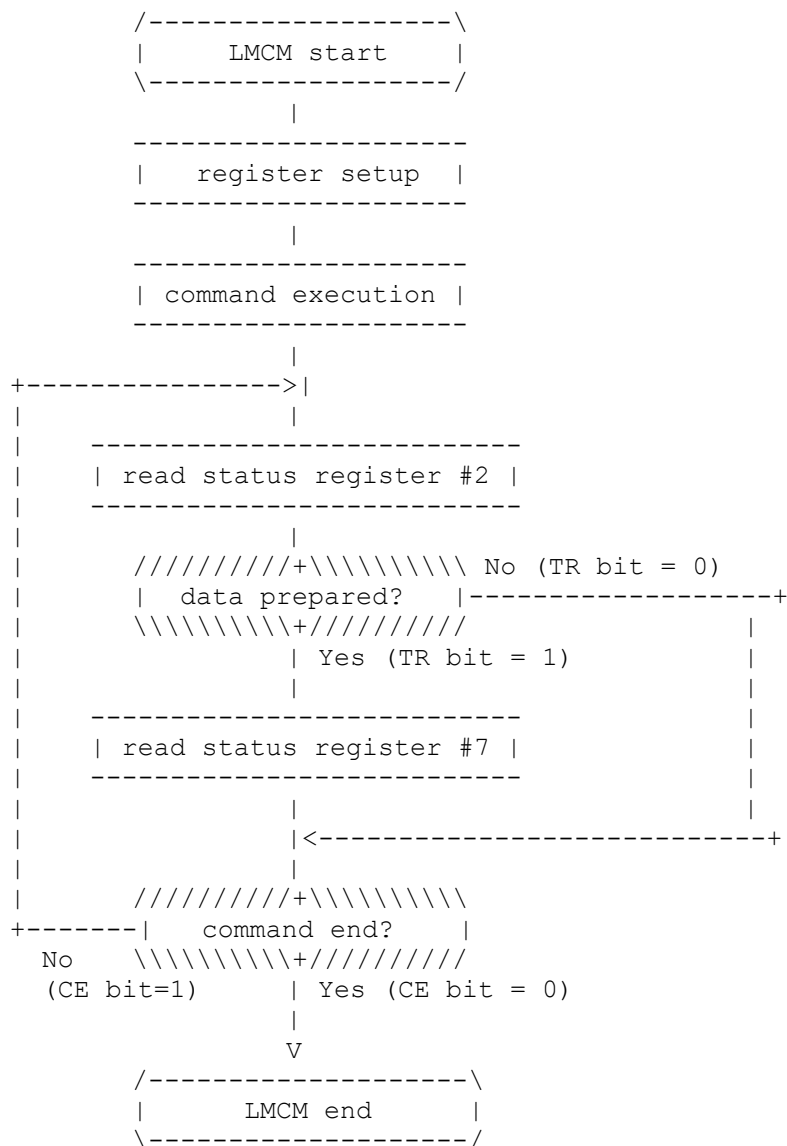
```


S#7	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| C3	| C2	| C1	| C0	| status register (GRAPHIC4,6)

S#7	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| C1	| C0	| status register (GRAPHIC5)

S#7	| C7	| C6	| C5	| C4	| C3	| C2	| C1	| C0	| status register (GRAPHIC7)

Figure 4.89 LMCM command execution flow chart



* Note 1: Read status register #7 in "register setup", since TR bit should be reset before the command execution.

* Note 2: Though last data was set in register #7 and TR bit was 1, the

command would end inside of the MSX-VIDEO and CE would be zero.

List 4.13 Example of LMCM command execution

=====

```
;*****
; List 4.13    LMCM sample
;              to use, set H, L, D, E, IX, A and go
;              VRAM (H,L)-(D,E) ---> RAM (IX)
;*****
;
RDVDP: EQU     0006H
WRVDP: EQU     0007H

;----- program start -----

LMCM:  DI                      ;disable interrupt
      LD      B,A              ;B := LOGICAL OPERATION
      CALL    WAIT.VDP         ;wait end of command

      LD      A,(WRVDP)
      LD      C,A
      INC     C                 ;C := PORT#1's address
      LD      A,32
      OUT     (C),A
      LD      A,80H+17
      OUT     (C),A            ;R#17 := 32
      INC     C
      INC     C                 ;C := PORT#3's address
      XOR     A
      OUT     (C),H            ;SX
      OUT     (C),A
      OUT     (C),L            ;SY
      OUT     (C),A
      OUT     (C),A            ;dummy
      OUT     (C),A            ;dummy
      OUT     (C),A            ;dummy
      OUT     (C),A            ;dummy
      LD      A,H              ;make NX and DIX
      SUB     A
      LD      D,00000100B
      JR      NC,LMCM1
      LD      D,00000000B
      NEG
LMCM1: LD      H,A              ;H := NX , D := DIX

      LD      A,L
      SUB     A
      LD      E,00001000B
      JR      NC,LMCM2
      LD      E,00000000B
      NEG
LMCM2: LD      L,A              ;L := NY , E := DIY

      XOR     A
      OUT     (C),H            ;NX
      OUT     (C),A
      OUT     (C),L            ;NY
      OUT     (C),A
      LD      A,(IX+0)
```

```

        OUT      (C),A                ;dummy
        LD       A,D
        OR       E
        OUT      (C),A                ;DIX and DIY
        LD       A,7
        CALL     GET.STATUS
        LD       A,B                  ;A := LOGICAL OPERATION
        OR       10100000B           ;LMCM command
        OUT      (C),A
        LD       A,(RDVDP)
        LD       C,A                  ;C := PORT#1's address
LOOP:   LD       A,2
        CALL     GET.STATUS
        BIT      0,A                  ;check CE bit
        JP       Z,EXIT
        BIT      7,A                  ;check TR bit
        JP       Z,LOOP
        LD       A,7
        CALL     GET.STATUS
        LD       (IX+0),A
        INC      IX
        JR       LOOP

EXIT:   LD       A,0
        CALL     GET.STATUS
        EI
        RET

GET.STATUS:
        PUSH     BC
        LD       BC,(WRVDP)
        INC      C
        OUT      (C),A
        LD       A,8FH
        OUT      (C),A
        LD       BC,(RDVDP)
        INC      C
        IN       A,(C)
        POP      BC
        RET

WAIT.VDP:
        LD       A,2
        CALL     GET.STATUS
        AND      1
        JR       NZ,WAIT.VDP
        XOR      A
        CALL     GET.STATUS
        RET

        END

```

=====

6.5.7. LMMM (VRAM->VRAM logical transfer)

Data of the specified VRAM area is transferred into another VRAM area in dots (see figure 4.9)

After setting the parameters as shown in Figure 4.91, writing command code

While the CE bit of S#2 is "1", the command is being executed. List 4.14 shows an example of using LMMM.

VRAM or expansion RAM

The diagram illustrates a memory layout within a dashed rectangular frame. It features two coordinate systems:

- Top-Left Coordinate System:** Labeled (SX, SY) . It includes a horizontal dashed line with a right-pointing arrow labeled NX , and a vertical dashed line with a downward-pointing arrow labeled DIX . Below these, the labels NY and DIY are positioned.
- Bottom-Right Coordinate System:** Labeled (DX, DY) . It includes a horizontal dashed line with a right-pointing arrow labeled DX , and a vertical dashed line with a downward-pointing arrow labeled DY .

Additional labels include V located below DIY , and a $+$ sign positioned between the two coordinate systems.

```
DX: destination origin X-coordinate (0 to 511)
DY: destination origin Y-coordinate (0 to 1023)
```

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB	
R#32	|	SX7|	SX6|	SX5|	SX4|	SX3|	SX2|	SX1|	SX0|		
	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	|	SX ----+
R#33	|	0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| SX8|		
	|									|	source origin
R#34	|	SY7|	SY6|	SY5|	SY4|	SY3|	SY2|	SY1|	SY0|		
	|	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	-----+	|	SY ----+
R#35	|	0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| SY9|	SY8|		

```

-----
R#36 | DX7| DX6| DX5| DX4| DX3| DX2| DX1| DX0|
R#37 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DX8|
-----
R#38 | DY7| DY6| DY5| DY4| DY3| DY2| DY1| DY0|
R#39 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | DY9| DY8|
-----

R#40 | NX7| NX6| NX5| NX4| NX3| NX2| NX1| NX0|
R#41 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | NX8|
-----

R#42 | NY7| NY6| NY5| NY4| NY3| NY2| NY1| NY0|
R#43 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | NY9| NY8|
-----

R#45 | 0 | -- | MXD| MXS| DIY| DIX| -- | -- | ARG (Argument register)
-----
|      |      |      |      |      |
|      |      |      |      |      |
|      |      |      |      |      |
|      |      |      |      |      |
|      |      |      |      |      |
|      |      |      |      |      |
|      |      |      |      |      |
+-----> select source memory
|
+-----> select destination memory

```

> LMMM command execution

```

      MSB   7   6   5   4   3   2   1   0   LSB
R#46 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | L03| L02| L01| L00| CMR
-----
|                                     |
+-----+
      Logical operation

```

List 4.14 Example of LMMM command execution

```

=====
;*****
; List 4.14 LMMM sample
;
; to use, set H, L, D, E, B, C, A and go
; VRAM (H,L)-(D,E) ---> VRAM (B,C) (logi-OP : A)
;*****
;
RDVDP: EQU 0006H
WRVDP: EQU 0007H

;----- program start -----

```

```

LMMM:  DI                ;disable interrupt
        PUSH    AF        ]save LOGICAL OPERATION
        PUSH    BC        ;save DESTINATION
        CALL    WAIT.VDP   ;wait end of command

        LD      A,(WRVDP)
        LD      C,A
        INC     C          ;C := PORT#1's address
        LD      A,32
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      A,80H+17
        OUT     (C),A      ;R#17 := 32

        INC     C
        INC     C          ;C := PORT#3's address
        XOR     A
        OUT     (C),H      ;SX
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),L      ;SY
        OUT     (C),A

        LD      A,H        ;make NX and DIX
        SUB     A
        LD      D,00000100B
        JP      NC,LMMM1
        LD      D,00000000B
        NEG

LMMM1:  LD      H,A        ;H := NX , D := DIX

        LD      A,L        ;make NY and DIY
        SUB     A
        LD      E,00001000B
        JP      NC,LMMM2
        LD      E,00000000B
        NEG

LMMM2:  LD      L,A        ;L := NY , E := DIY

        LD      A,D
        OR      E
        POP     DE        ;restore DX,DY
        PUSH    AF        ;save DIX,DIY
        XOR     A
        OUT     (C),D      ;DX
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),E      ;DY
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),H      ;NX
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),L      ;NY
        OUT     (C),A
        OUT     (C),A      ;dummy
        POP     AF
        OUT     (C),A      ;DIX and DIY

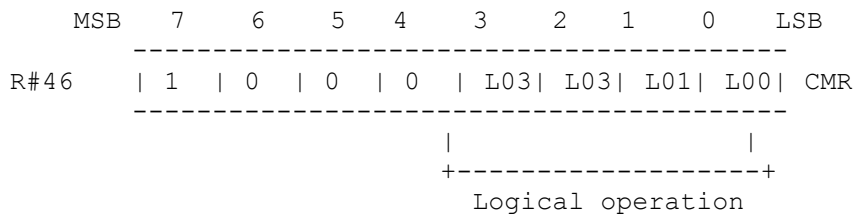
        POP     AF        ;A := LOGICAL OPERATION
        OR      10010000B ;LMMM command
        OUT     (C),A

        EI
        RET

```


+-----> memory selection

> LMMV command execution



List 4.15 Example of LMMV command execution

```

;*****
; List 4.15 LMMV sample
; to use, set H, L, D, E, B, A and go
; data B ---> fill VRAM (H,L)-(D,E) (logi-op : A)
;*****
;
RDVDP: EQU 0006H
WRVDP: EQU 0007H

;----- program start -----

LMMV: DI ;disable interrupt
      PUSH AF ;save LOGICAL OPERATION
      PUSH BC ;save FILL DATA
      CALL WAIT.VDP ;wait end of command

      LD A, (WRVDP)
      LD C, A
      INC C ;C := PORT#1's address
      LD A, 36
      OUT (C), A
      LD A, 80H+17
      OUT (C), A ;R#17 := 36

      INC C
      INC C ;C := PORT#3's address
      XOR A
      OUT (C), H ;DX
      OUT (C), A
      OUT (C), L ;DY
      OUT (C), A

      LD A, H ;make NX and DIX
      SUB A
      LD D, 00000100B
      JP NC, LMMV1
      LD D, 00000000B
      NEG

LMMV1: LD H, A ;H := NX , D := DIX

      LD A, L ;make NY and DIY
      SUB A
      LD E, 00001000B
      JP NC, LMMV2
      LD E, 00000000B

```



```

      NEG
LMMV2: LD      L,A                      ;L := NY , E := DIY

      XOR      A
      OUT      (C),H                  ;NX
      OUT      (C),A
      OUT      (C),L                  ;NY
      OUT      (C),A
      POP      AF
      OUT      (C),A                  ;FILL DATA
      LD      A,D
      OR      E
      OUT      (C),A                  ;DIX and DIY

      POP      AF                    ;restore LOGICAL OPERATION
      OR      A,10000000B            ;LMMV command
      OUT      (C),A

      EI
      RET

GET.STATUS:
      PUSH     BC
      LD      BC,(WRVDP)
      INC     C
      OUT     (C),A
      LD      A,8FH
      OUT     (C),A
      LD      BC,(RDVDP)
      INC     C
      IN      A,(C)
      POP     BC
      RET

WAIT.VDP:
      LD      A,2
      CALL    GET.STATUS
      AND     1
      JP      NZ,WAIT.VDP
      XOR     A
      CALL    GET.STATUS
      RET

      END

```

=====

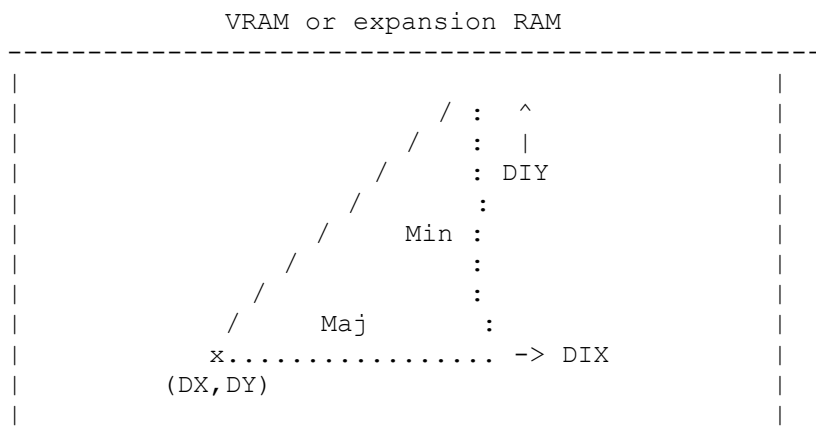
6.5.9 LINE (drawing a line)

Lines can be drawn between any coordinates in VRAM. The parameters to be specified include the (X,Y) coordinates of the starting point and the X and Y lengths in units to the ending point (see Figure 4.94). Logical operations between data in VRAM and the specified data are allowed.

After setting the parameters as shown in Figure 4.94, writing command code 7XH (X means a logical operation) in R#46 causes the command to be executed.

While the CE bit of S#2 is "1", the command is being executed. List 4.16 shows an example of using LINE.

Figure 4.94 Actions of LINE command



```
MXD: select memory          0 = VRAM, 1 = expansion RAM
```

Maj: number of dots of major side (0 to 1023)

Maj: number of dots of minor side (0 to 512)

MAJ: 0 = The major side is parallel to X axis

MAJ: 1 = The major side is parallel to Y axis,
or the major side = the minor side

DIX: direction of the end from the origin 0 = right, 1 = left

DIY: direction of the end from the origin 0 = below, 1 = above

DX: origin X-coordinate (0 to 511)

DY: origin Y-coordinate (0 to 1023)

CLR (R#44:Colour register): Line colour data

Figure 4.95 Register settings of LINE command

> LINE register setup

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB											
R#36	|	DX7	|	DX6	|	DX5	|	DX4	|	DX3	|	DX2	|	DX1	|	DX0	|				
	|	-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		|	DX	----	+
R#37	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	DX8	|		

																			|	origin	

R#38	|	DY7	|	DY6	|	DY5	|	DY4	|	DY3	|	DY2	|	DY1	|	DY0	|				
	|	-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		|	DY	----	+
R#39	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	DY9	|	DY8	|				

R#40	|	NX7	|	NX6	|	NX5	|	NX4	|	NX3	|	NX2	|	NX1	|	NX0	|				
	|	-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		|	Maj	(NX)	number of dots -> of the major side
R#41	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	0	|	NX8	|		


```

INC      C                      ;C := PORT#1's address
LD       A,36
OUT      (C),A
LD       A,80H+17
OUT      (C),A                  ;R#17 := 36

INC      C
INC      C                      ;C := PORT#3's address
XOR      A
OUT      (C),H                  ;DX
OUT      (C),A
OUT      (C),L                  ;DY
OUT      (C),A

LD       A,H                    ;make DX and DIX
SUB      D
LD       D,00000100B
JP       NC,LINE1
LD       D,00000000B
NEG
LINE1:   LD       H,A            ;H := DX , D := DIX

LD       A,L                    ;make DY and DIY
SUB      E
LD       E,00001000B
JP       NC,LINE2
LD       E,00000000B
NEG
LINE2:   LD       L,A            ;L := DY , E := DIY

CP       H                      ;make Maj and Min
JP       C,LINE3
XOR      A
OUT      (C),L                  ;long side
OUT      (C),A
OUT      (C),H                  ;short side
OUT      (C),A
LD       A,00000001B            ;MAJ := 1
JP       LINE4

LINE3:   XOR      A
OUT      (C),H                  ;NX
OUT      (C),A
OUT      (C),L                  ;NY
OUT      (C),A
LD       A,00000000B            ;MAJ := 0

LINE4:   OR       D
OR       E                      ;A := DIX , DIY , MAJ
POP      HL                     ;H := COLOR
OUT      (C),H
OUT      (C),A
POP      AF                     ;A := LOGICAL OPERATION
OR       01110000B
OUT      (C),A
LD       A,8FH
OUT      (C),A
EI
RET

```

GET.STATUS:

```

WAIT.VDP:
        LD      A,2
        CALL   GET.STATUS
        AND     1
        JP     NZ,WAIT.VDP
        XOR     A
        CALL   GET.STATUS
        RET

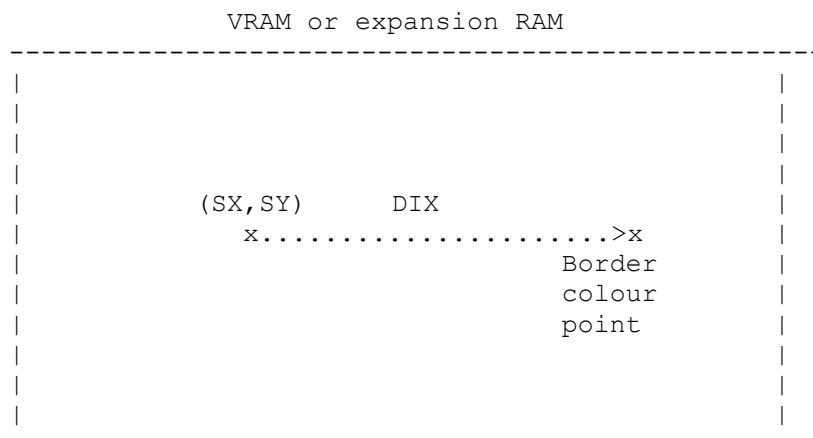
        END

```

6.5.10 SRCH (colour code search)

After setting the parameters as shown in Figure 4.97, writing 60H in R#46 causes the command to be executed. The command terminates when the objective colour is found or when it cannot be found after searching for it to the screen edge. While the CE bit of S#2 is "1", the command is being executed (see Figure 4.98).

Figure 4.96 Actions of SRCH command



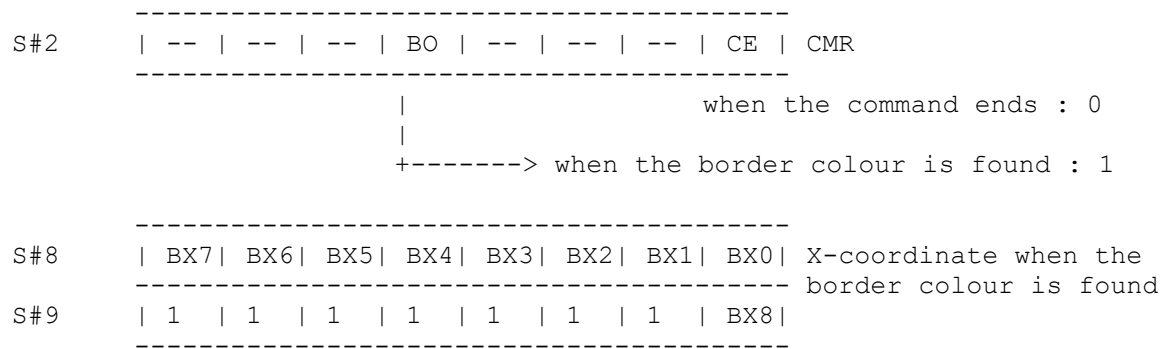
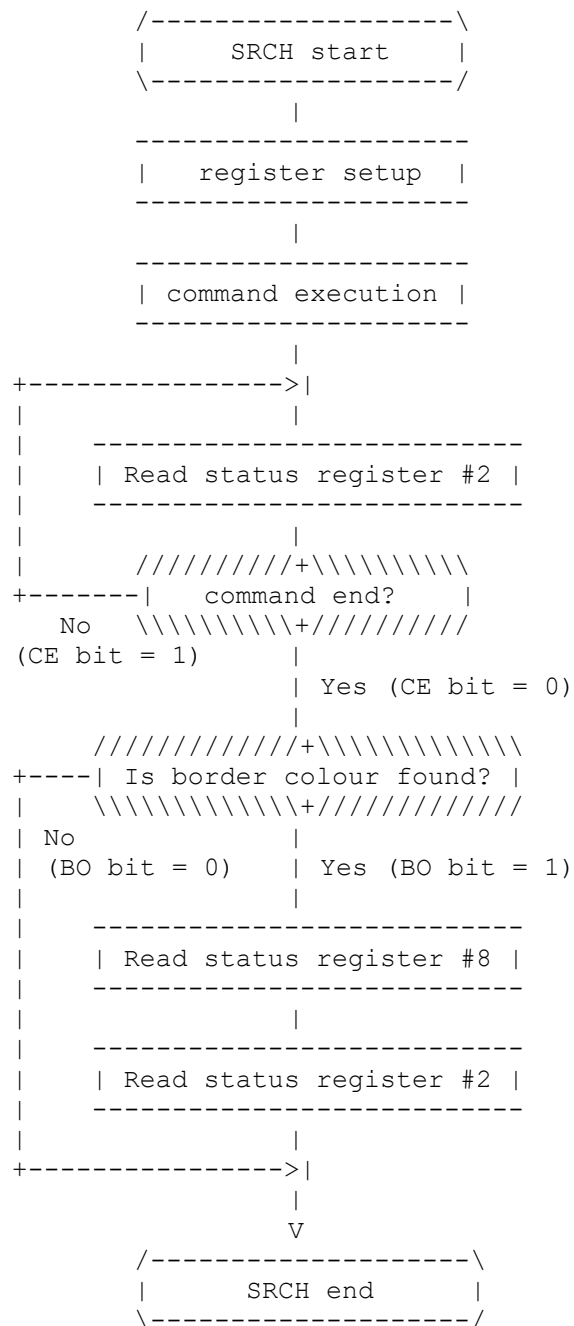


Figure 4.98 SRCH command execution flowchart



List 4.17 Example of SRCH command execution

```

=====

;*****
; List 4.17    SRCH sample
;              to use, set H, L, E, A as follows
;              srch (x:H, y:L, color:E, arg(reg#45) : A)
;              returns: Z  (not found)
;              NZ (A := X)
;*****
;
RDVDP: EQU     0006H
WRVDP: EQU     0007H

;----- program start -----

SRCH:  DI                      ;disable interrupt
       PUSH      AF           ;save arg
       CALL      WAIT.VDP

       LD        A,(WRVDP)
       LD        C,A
       INC       C             ;C := PORT#1's address

       LD        D,0
       LD        A,32+80H
       OUT       (C),H
       OUT       (C),A        ;R#32 := H
       INC       A
       OUT       (C),D
       OUT       (C),A        ;R#33 := 0
       INC       A
       OUT       (C),L
       OUT       (C),A        ;R#34 := L
       INC       A
       OUT       (C),D
       OUT       (C),A        ;R#35 := 0
       LD        A,44+80H
       OUT       (C),E
       OUT       (C),A        ;R#44 := E
       INC       A
       LD        E,A
       POP       AF           ;A := ARG
       OUT       (C),A
       OUT       (C),E        ;R#45 := A

       LD        A,01100000B
       OUT       (C),A
       INC       E
       OUT       (C),E        ;R#46 := SRCH command

LOOP:  LD        A,2
       CALL      GET.STATUS
       BIT       0,A
       JP        NZ,LOOP
       LD        E,A
       LD        A,8
       CALL      GET.STATUS
       LD        D,A
       LD        A,9

```



```

        CALL    GET.STATUS
        LD      A,D
        BIT     4,E

        EI
        RET

GET.STATUS:
        PUSH    BC
        LD      BC,(WRVDP)
        INC     C
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      A,8FH
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      BC,(RDVDP)
        INC     C
        IN      A,(C)
        POP     BC
        RET

WAIT.VDP:
        LD      A,2
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        AND     1
        JP      NZ,WAIT.VDP
        XOR     A
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        RET

        END

```

=====

List 4.18 Simple PAINT routine using SRCH and LINE

=====

```

;*****
; List 4.18  SRCH and LINE sample
;           search color to right and left,
;           then draw line between the two points
;*****
;
        EXTRN   SRCH
        EXTRN   LINE

Y      EQU     0A800H
X      EQU     0A801H
COL    EQU     0A802H
ARG    EQU     0A803H
PCOL   EQU     0A804H

;----- program start -----

MAIN:   LD      (STK),SP
        LD      SP,AREA
        LD      HL,(Y)
        LD      A,(COL)
        LD      E,A
        LD      A,(ARG)
        PUSH    HL

```

```

        PUSH    DE
        SET     2,A
        CALL    SRCH
        POP     DE
        POP     HL
        JP      NZ,S1
        LD      A,(X)
        DEC     A
S1:      INC     A
        PUSH    AF
        LD      A,(ARG)
        RES     2,A
        CALL    SRCH
        JP      NZ,S2
        LD      A,(X)
        INC     A
S2:      DEC     A
        LD      D,A
        POP     AF
        LD      H,A
        LD      A,(Y)
        LD      L,A
        LD      E,A
        LD      A,(PCOL)
        LD      B,A
        LD      A,0                ;PSET
        CALL    LINE
        LD      SP,(STK)
        RET

```

;----- work area -----

```

STK:     DS      2
         DS      200
AREA:    $

```

END

=====
List 4.19 Example of the use of simple PAINT routine
=====

```

1000 '*****
1010 ' list 4.19 SRCH and LINE sample
1020 ' Operate cursor while holding down the space bar.
1030 '*****
1040 '
1050 SCREEN 5
1060 FOR I=0 TO 50:LINE -(RND(1)*255,RND(1)*211),15:NEXT
1070 I=&HA000 :DEF USR=I
1080 READ A$
1090 IF A$="END" THEN 1130
1100 POKE I,VAL("&H"+A$):I=I+1
1110 READ A$
1120 GOTO 1090
1130 X=128:Y=100:COL=15:PCOL=2:ARG=0
1140 CURS=0
1150 A=STICK(0)
1160 CURS=(CURS+1) AND 1

```

```

1170 LINE (X-5,I)-(X+5,I),15,,XOR
1180 LINE (X,Y-5)-(X,Y+5),15,,XOR
1190 IF CURS=1 THEN 1290
1200 IF A=1 THEN Y=Y-1
1210 IF A=2 THEN Y=Y-1:X=X+1
1220 IF A=3 THEN X=X+1
1230 IF A=4 THEN X=X+1:Y=Y+1
1240 IF A=5 THEN Y=Y+1
1250 IF A=6 THEN Y=Y+1:X=X-1
1260 IF A=7 THEN X=X-1
1270 IF A=8 THEN X=X-1:Y=Y-1
1280 IF STRIG(9) THEN GOSUB 1300
1290 GOTO 1150
1300 POKE &HA800,Y
1310 POKE &HA801,X
1320 POKE &HA802,COL
1330 POKE &HA803,ARG
1340 POKE &HA804,PCOL
1350 A=USR(0)
1360 RETURN
1370 DATA ED,73,80,A8,31,4A,A9,2A,00,A8,3A,02
1380 DATA A8,5F,3A,03,A8,E5,D5,CB,D7,CD,AD
1390 DATA A0,D1,E1,C2,21,A0,3A,01,A8
1400 DATA 3D,3C,F5,3A,03,A8,CB,97,CD,AD,A0,C2
1410 DATA 32,A0,3A,01,AB,3C,3D,57,F1,67,3A
1420 DATA 00,A8,6F,5F,3A,04,A8,47,3E
1430 DATA 00,CD,49,A0,ED,7B,80,A8,C9,F3,F5,CD
1440 DATA 0D,A1,C5,3A,06,00,4F,0C,3E,24,ED
1450 DATA 79,3E,91,ED,79,0C,0C,AF,ED
1460 DATA 61,ED,79,ED,69,ED,79,7C,92,16,04,D2
1470 DATA 72,A0,16,00,ED,44,67,7D,93,1E,08
1480 DATA D2,7E,A0,1E,00,ED,44,BC,DA
1490 DATA 90,A0,ED,79,AF,ED,79,ED,61,ED,79,26
1500 DATA 01,C3,9C,A0,ED,61,67,AF,ED,79,ED
1510 DATA 61,ED,79,26,00,7C,B2,B3,E1
1520 DATA ED,61,ED,79,F1,E6,0F,F6,70,ED,79,FB
1530 DATA C9,F5,F3,CD,0D,A1,ED,4B,06,00,0C
1540 DATA 3E,A0,16,00,ED,61,ED,79,3C
1550 DATA ED,51,ED,79,3C,ED,69,ED,79,3C,ED,51
1560 DATA ED,79,3E,AC,ED,59,ED,79,3C,5F,F1
1570 DATA ED,79,ED,59,3E,60,ED,79,1C
1580 DATA ED,59,3E,02,CD,FD,A0,CB,47,C2,E2,A0
1590 DATA 5F,3E,08,CD,FD,A0,57,3E,00,CD,FD
1600 DATA A0,7A,CB,63,FB,C9,C5,ED,4B
1610 DATA 06,00,0C,ED,79,3E,8F,ED,79,ED,78,C1
1620 DATA C9,3E,02,CD,FD,A0,E6,01,C2,0D,A1
1630 DATA AF,CD,FD,A0,C9,END

```

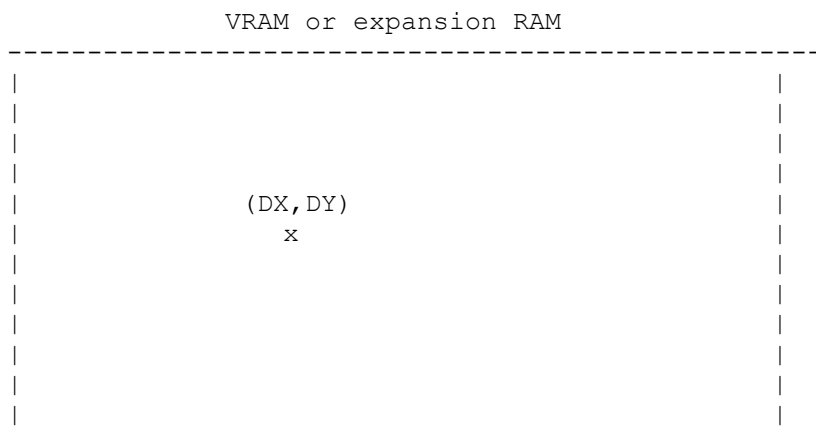
=====

6.5.11 PSET (drawing a point)

A point is drawn at any coordinate in VRAM (see figure 4.99).

After setting the parameters as shown in Figure 4.100, writing 5XH (X means a logical operation) in R#46 causes the command to be executed. While the CE bit of S#2 is "1", the command is being executed. List 4.20 shows an example of using PSET.

Figure 4.99 Actions of PSET command



MXD: memory selection

0 = VRAM, 1 = expansion RAM

DX: origin X-coordinate (0 to 511)

DY: origin Y-coordinate (0 to 1023)

```
CLR (R#44:Colour register): point colour
```

Figure 4.100 Register settings of PSET command

```
> PSET register setup
```

	MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB		
R#36	|	DX7	| DX6	| DX5	| DX4	| DX3	| DX2	| DX1	| DX0	|	DX ---+	
R#37	|	0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| DX8	|		
											| origin	
R#38	|	DY7	| DY6	| DY5	| DY4	| DY3	| DY2	| DY1	| DY0	|	DY ---+	
R#39	|	0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| DY9	| DY8	|		
R#44	|	0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| CR3	| CR2	| CR1	| CR0	|	CLR (GRAPHIC 4,6)	---+
											| co-	
											| lour	
	|	0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| 0	| CR1	| CR0	|	CLR (GRAPHIC 5)	| code
											| data	
	|	CR7	| CR6	| CR5	| CR4	| CR3	| CR2	| CR1	| CR0	|	CLR (GRAPHIC 7)	---

R#45	|	0	| --	| MXD	| --	| --	| --	| --	| --	|	ARG (Argument register)	

```
|
+-----> memory selection
```

> PSET command execution

MSB 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0 LSB

R#46 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | L03 | L02 | L01 | L00 | CMR

Logical operation

List 4.20 Example of PSET command execution

```

;*****
; List 4.20      PSET sample
;                to use, set H, L, E, A as follows
;                pset (x:H, y:L), color:E, logi-OP:A
;*****
;
;                PUBLIC  PSET

RDVDP: EQU      0006H
WRVDP: EQU      0007H

;----- program start -----

PSET:  DI
        PUSH     AF
        CALL     WAIT.VDP
        LD       BC, (WRVDP)

        INC      C
        LD       A, 36
        OUT      (C), A
        LD       A, 80H+17
        OUT      (C), A

        PUSH     BC
        INC      C
        INC      C
        XOR      A
        OUT      (C), H
        OUT      (C), A
        OUT      (C), L
        OUT      (C), A
        POP      BC

        LD       A, 44
        OUT      (C), A
        LD       A, 80H+17
        OUT      (C), A

        INC      C
        INC      C
        OUT      (C), E
        XOR      A
        OUT      (C), A

```

```

        LD      E,01010000B
        POP     AF
        OR      E
        OUT     (C),A

        EI
        RET

GET.STATUS:
        PUSH    BC
        LD      BC,(WRVDP)
        INC     C
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      A,8FH
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      BC,(RDVDP)
        INC     C
        IN      A,(C)
        POP     BC
        RET

WAIT.VDP:
        LD      A,2
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        AND     1
        JP      NZ,WAIT.VDP
        XOR     A
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        RET

        END

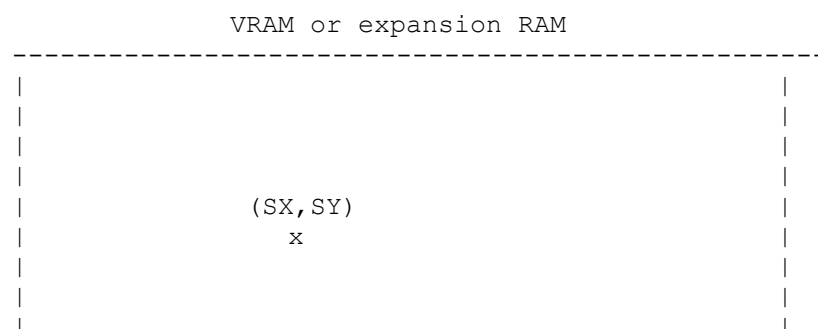
```

6.5.12 POINT (reading a colour code)

POINT reads the colour code in any coordinate of VRAM (see Figure 4.101).

After setting the parameters as shown in Figure 4.102, writing 40H in R#46 causes the command to be executed. While the CE bit of S#2 is "1", the command is being executed. After the command terminates, the colour code of the specified coordinate is set in S#7. List 4.21 shows an example of using POINT.

Figure 4.101 Actions of POINT command



List 4.21 Example of POINT command execution

```

=====

;*****
; List 4.21 POINT sample
; to use, set H, L as follows
; POINT ( x:H, y:L )
; returns: A := COLOR CODE
;*****
;
PUBLIC POINT

RDVDP: EQU 0006H
WRVDP: EQU 0007H

;----- program start -----

POINT: DI
CALL WAIT.VDP

LD A,(WRVDP)
LD C,A

INC C
LD A,32
OUT (C),A
LD A,80H+17
OUT (C),A

INC C
INC C
XOR A
OUT (C),H
OUT (C),A
OUT (C),L
OUT (C),A

DEC C
DEC C
OUT (C),A
LD A,80H+45
OUT (C),A
LD A,01000000B
OUT (C),A
LD A,80H+46
OUT (C),A
CALL WAIT.VDP
LD A,7
CALL GET.STATUS
PUSH AF
XOR A
CALL GET.STATUS
POP AF

EI
RET

GET.STATUS:
PUSH BC
LD BC,(WRVDP)
INC C
OUT (C),A

```



```

        LD      A,8FH
        OUT     (C),A
        LD      BC,(RDVDP)
        INC     C
        IN      A,(C)
        POP     BC
        RET

WAIT.VDP:
        LD      A,2
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        AND     1
        JP      NZ,WAIT.VDP
        XOR     A
        CALL    GET.STATUS
        RET

        END

```

=====

List 4.22 PAINT routine using PSET and POINT

=====

```

;*****
; List 4.22 paint routine using PSET and POINT
; ENTRY: X:H, Y:L, BORDER COLOR:D, PAINT COLOR:E
;*****
;
        EXTRN   PSET
        EXTRN   POINT

Q.LENGTH      EQU      256*2*2
MAX.Y         EQU      211

;----- paint main routine -----

PAINT:  CALL    POINT
        CP      D
        RET     Z
        CALL    INIT.Q
        LD      (COL),DE
        CALL    PUT.Q
        LD      A,(COL)
        LD      E,A
        XOR     A                                ;logi-OP : PSET
        CALL    PSET
PAINT0:  CALL    GET.Q
        RET     C
        INC     H
        CALL    NZ,PAINT.SUB
        DEC     H
        JP      Z,PAINT1
        DEC     H
        CALL    PAINT.SUB
        INC     H
PAINT1:  DEC     L
        LD      A,-1
        CP      L
        CALL    NZ,PAINT.SUB

```

```

        INC     L
        INC     L
        LD      A,MAX.Y
        CP      L
        CALL    NC,PAINT.SUB
        JP      PAINT0

;----- check point and pset -----

PAINT.SUB:
        CALL    POINT
        LD      D,A
        LD      A,(BORD)
        CP      D
        RET     Z
        LD      A,(COL)
        CP      D
        RET     Z
        LD      E,A
        XOR     A
        CALL    PSET
        CALL    PUT.Q
        RET

;----- init Q.BUFFER pointer -----

INIT.Q:
        PUSH    HL
        LD      HL,Q.BUF
        LD      (Q.TOP),HL
        LD      (Q.BTM),HL
        POP     HL
        RET

;----- put point to Q.BUF (X:H , Y:L) -----

PUT.Q:
        EX      DE,HL
        LD      HL,(Q.TOP)
        LD      BC,Q.BUF+Q.LENGTH+1
        OR      A                                ;clear CARRY
        PUSH    HL
        SBC     HL,BC
        POP     HL
        JP      C,PUT.Q1
        LD      HL,Q.BUF
PUT.Q1:
        LD      (HL),D
        INC     HL
        LD      (HL),E
        INC     HL
        LD      (Q.TOP),HL
        EX      DE,HL
        RET

;----- take point data to D, E -----
;      returns:  NC    H:x, L:y
;                  C    buffer empty

GET.Q:  LD      HL,(Q.BTM)
        LD      BC,(Q.TOP)

```

```

        OR      A
        SBC     HL,BC
        JP      NZ,GET.Q0
        SCF
        RET

GET.Q0: LD      HL,(Q.BTM)
        LD      BC,Q.BUF+Q.LENGTH+1
        OR      A
        PUSH   HL
        SBC     HL,BC
        POP     HL
        JP      C,GET.Q1
        LD      HL,Q.BUF
GET.Q1: LD      D,(HL)
        INC     HL
        LD      E,(HL)
        INC     HL
        LD      (Q.BTM),HL
        OR      A
        EX      DE,HL
        RET

```

;----- work area -----

```

COL      DS      1
BORD     DS      1
Q.TOP    DS      2
Q.BTM    DS      2
Q.BUF    DS      Q.LENGTH

```

END

List 4.23 Example of using the PAINT routine

```

1000 '*****
1010 ' list 4.23  paint routine using POINT and PSET
1020 ' Position cursor at beginnig of paint area and press the space bar.
1030 '*****
1040 '
1050 SCREEN 5
1060 FOR I=0 TO 50
1070 LINE -(RND(1)*255,RND(1)*211),15
1080 NEXT
1090 I=&HA000 :DEF USR=I
1100 READ A$
1110 IF  A$="END" THEN 1150
1120   POKE I,VAL("&H"+A$):I=I+1
1130   READ A$
1140 GOTO 1110
1150 X=128:Y=100:COL=15:PCOL=2
1160 CURS=0
1170 A=STICK(0)
1180 CURS=(CURS+1) AND 1
1190 LINE (X-5,I)-(X+5,I),15,,XOR
1200 LINE (X,Y-5)-(X,Y+5),15,,XOR
1210 IF CURS=1 THEN 1310

```

```

1220 IF A=1 THEN Y=Y-1
1230 IF A=2 THEN Y=Y-1:X=X+1
1240 IF A=3 THEN X=X+1
1250 IF A=4 THEN X=X+1:Y=Y+1
1260 IF A=5 THEN Y=Y+1
1270 IF A=6 THEN Y=Y+1:X=X-1
1280 IF A=7 THEN X=X-1
1290 IF A=8 THEN X=X-1:Y=Y-1
1300 IF STRIG(9) THEN GOSUB 1320
1310 GOTO 1170
1320 POKE &HA8CA,Y
1330 POKE &HA8CB,X
1340 POKE &HA8CD,COL
1350 POKE &HA8CC,PCOL
1360 A=USR(0)
1370 RETURN
1380 DATA ED,73,00,A8,31,CA,A8,2A,CA,A8,ED,5B,CC,A8,CD,67
1390 DATA A0,ED,7B,00,A8,C9,E5,21,D4,A8,22,D0,A8,22,D2,A8
1400 DATA E1,C9,EB,2A,D0,A8,01,D5,AC,B7,E5,ED,42,E1,DA,34
1410 DATA A0,21,D4,A8,72,23,73,23,22,D0,A8,EB,C9,2A,D2,A8
1420 DATA ED,4B,D0,A8,B7,ED,42,C2,4C,A0,37,C9,2A,D2,A8,01
1430 DATA D5,AC,B7,E5,ED,42,E1,DA,5D,A0,21,D4,A8,56,23,5E
1440 DATA 23,22,D2,A8,B7,EB,C9,CD,B8,A0,BA,C8,CD,16,A0,ED
1450 DATA 53,CE,A8,CD,22,A0,3A,CE,A8,5F,AF,CD,F4,A0,CD,3D
1460 DATA A0,D8,24,C4,A1,A0,25,CA,8F,A0,25,CD,A1,A0,24,2D
1470 DATA 3E,FF,BD,C4,A1,A0,2C,2C,3E,D3,BD,D4,A1,A0,C3,7E
1480 DATA A0,CD,B8,A0,57,3A,CF,A8,BA,C8,3A,CE,A8,BA,C8,5F
1490 DATA AF,CD,F4,A0,CD,22,A0,C9,F3,CD,3A,A1,ED,4B,06,00
1500 DATA 0C,3E,20,ED,79,3E,91,ED,79,0C,0C,AF,ED,61,ED,79
1510 DATA ED,69,ED,79,0D,0D,ED,79,3E,AD,ED,79,3E,40,ED,79
1520 DATA 3E,AE,ED,79,CD,3A,A1,3E,07,CD,2A,A1,F5,AF,CD,2A
1530 DATA A1,F1,FB,C9,F3,F5,CD,3A,A1,ED,4B,06,00,0C,3E,24
1540 DATA ED,79,3E,91,ED,79,C5,0C,0C,AF,ED,61,ED,79,ED,69
1550 DATA ED,79,C1,3E,2C,ED,79,3E,91,ED,79,0C,0C,ED,59,AF
1560 DATA ED,79,1E,50,F1,B3,ED,79,FB,C9,C5,ED,4B,06,00,0C
1570 DATA ED,79,3E,8F,ED,79,ED,78,C1,C9,3E,02,CD,2A,A1,E6
1580 DATA 01,C2,3A,A1,AF,CD,2A,A1,C9
1590 DATA END

```

=====

6.6 Speeding Up Commands

MSX-VIDEO performs various screen management duties in addition to executing the specified commands. Sometimes the command execution speed seems to be a bit slow because of this. Thus, by discarding these operations, the speed of the command executions can be made faster. This can be done using the following method.

1. Sprite display inhibition

This method is useful since speedup can be realised while the screen remains displayed. Set "1" to bit 1 of R#8.

2. Screen display inhibition

This method cannot be used frequently except in the case of initialising the screen, since the screen fades out in this mode. Set "1" to bit 6 of R#1.

6.7 Register Status at Command Termination

Table 4.7 shows the register status at the command termination for each command.

When the number of dots to be executed in Y direction assumes N, the values of SY*, DY*, and NYB can be calculated as follows:

SY*=SY+N, DY*=DY+N when DIY bit is 0
 SY*=SY-N, DY*=DY-N when DIY bit is 1
 NYB=NY-N

Note: when MAJ bit is 0 in LINE, N = N - 1.

Table 4.7 Register status at command termination

command name	SX	SY	DX	DY	NX	NY	CLR	CMR H	CMR L	ARG
HMMC	---	---	---	.	---		#	---	0	---
YMMM	---	.	---	.	---	#	---	0	---	---
HMMM	---	.	---	.	---	#	---	0	---	---
HMMV	---	---	---	.	---		#	---	0	---
LMMC	---	---	---	.	---		#	---	0	---
LMCM	---	.	---	---	---	#	.	0	---	---
LMMM	---	.	---	.	---	#	---	0	---	---
LMMV	---	---	---	.	---		#	---	0	---

LINE	---	---	---	.	---	---	---	0	---	---
SRCH	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0	---	---
PSET	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	0	---	---
POINT	---	---	---	---	---	---	.	0	---	---

--- : no change

. : coordinate (SY*, DY*) and the colour code at the command
termination

: the number of counts (NYB), when the screen edge is fetched

MSX2 TECHNICAL HANDBOOK

Edited by: ASCII Systems Division
Published by: ASCII Corporation - JAPAN
First edition: March 1987

Text file typed by: Nestor Soriano (Konami Man) - SPAIN
October 1997

Changes from the original:

- In Figure 5.2, unused bits are marked as "x", and inverted signals are marked with "*", for easiest readability.
- Figure 5.17B was added.
- In List 5.4, the last line before the work area, "JR START", has been corrected to "JR SCAN".
- In Figure 5.18, the addresses for GETPNT y PUTPNT were swapped. They have been corrected.
- In description of BIOS routines PINLIN and INLIN, "BUF" address has been corrected from F55DH to F55EH.
- In Figure 5.22 (B), "Arabaic mode display" has been changed to "Arabic or kana mode display".
- In description of BIOS routine GTTRIG, the input needed for reading B buttons has been added in the "Input" field.
- In Table 5.5, in the Note 4, "the trigger button of the mouse or the trigger button" has been changed to "the trigger button of the mouse or the trigger button of the track ball".
- In Figure 5.29, "1200 or 2400 hours" indication has been corrected to "12 or 24 hours".
- In Figure 5.32, "Register 3 #11" indication has been corrected to "Register #11".
- In Figure 5.33, "Adjust Y (8 to +7)" has been corrected to "Adjust Y (-8 to +7)".
- In description of BIOS routine WRTCLK, the input needed in the A register has been added in the "Input" field.

==

CHAPTER 5 - ACCESS TO PERIPHERALS THROUGH BIOS (Parts 1 to 6)

The basic philosophy of MSX is to have a standard interface, independent of machines or versions, to access peripherals through BIOS. Thus, the user should get to know about using BIOS first. In chapter 5, accessing peripherals using BIOS and the structure used for each peripheral are described.

1. PSG AND SOUND OUTPUT

MSX has the following three kinds of sound output functions, but function (3) is not installed in the standard MSX, so it is not described in this manual.

This section describes functions (1) and (2).

- (1) PSG sound output (3 channels, 8 octaves)
- (2) Sound output by 1 bit I/O port
- (3) Sound output by MSX-AUDIO (FM sound generator) not described in this manual

1.1. PSG functions

An AY-3-8910 compatible LSI is used for the MSX music play function and for BEEP tone generation. This LSI is referred to as the PSG (Programmable Sound Generator), and can generate complex music and various tones. It has the following features:

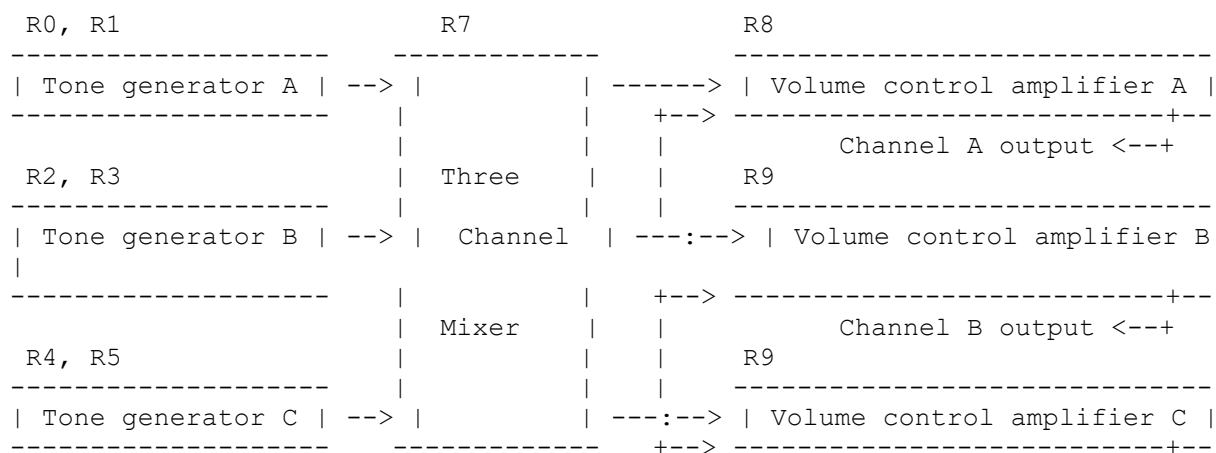
* There are three tone generators, each of which can independently specify 4096 scales (equivalent to 8 octaves) and 16 volume levels.

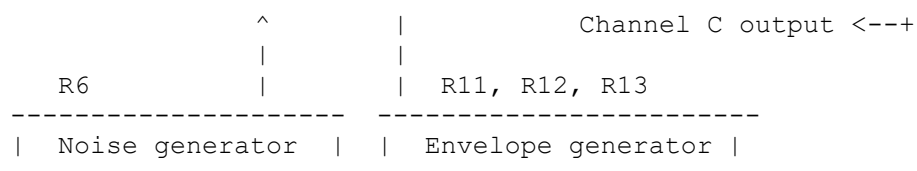
* It can generate piano and organ tones by using envelope patterns. Note that, since there is only one envelope generator, the tone of only one channel can be modified fundamentally.

* With the noise generator inside, tones such as the wind or waves can easily be generated. Note that since there is only one noise generator, only one channel can generate the noise.

* Any necessary frequency, such as the tone or the envelope, is obtained by dividing the input clock (in MSX, it is defined that $f_c = 1.7897725$ MHz). So there is no unsteady pitch or rhythm.

Figure 5.1 PSG block diagram





The PSG has two additional I/O (input/output) ports used for other than tone generating functions, which are omitted in the block diagram above. MSX uses them as general-purpose I/O ports to connect to I/O devices such as joystick, a touch pad, a paddle, or a mouse. These general-purpose I/O ports are described in section 5.

* PSG registers

Since the PSG generates tones, the CPU simply notifies PSG when the tone is to be changed. This is done by writing values in 16 8-bit registers inside the PSG as shown in Figure 5.2.

Roles and uses of these registers are described below.

* Setting the tone frequency (R0 to R5)

Each tone frequency of channel A, B, and C is set by R0 to R5. The input clock frequency ($f_c = 1.7897725$ MHz) is divided by 16 and the result is the standard frequency. Each channel divides the standard frequency by the 12-bit data assigned for each, and the objective pitch is obtained. The following relation exists between 12-bit data (TP) and the tone frequency to be generated (ft).

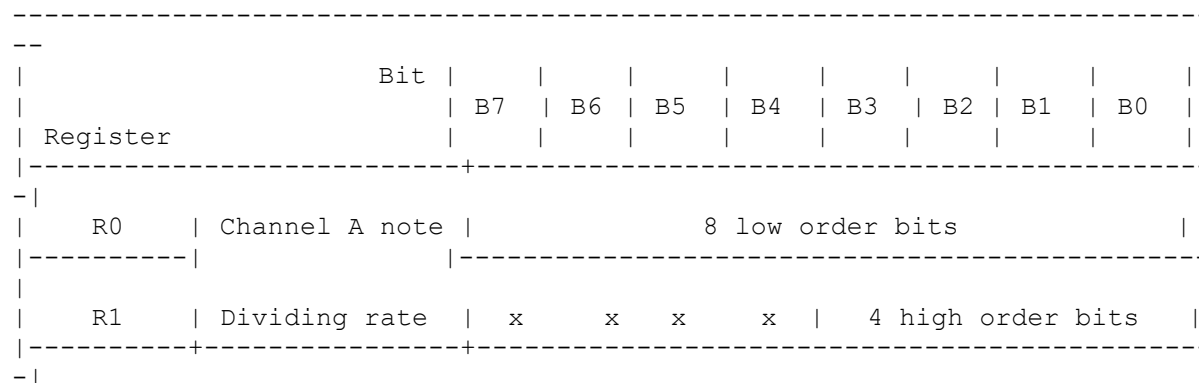
$$\begin{aligned}
 ft &= f_c / (16 * TP) \\
 &= 0.11186078125 / TP \text{ [MHz]} \\
 &= 111860.78125 / TP \text{ [Hz]}
 \end{aligned}$$

A 12-bit data TP is specified for each channel by 4 high order bit coarse tune CT and 8 low order bit fine tune value FT, as shown in Figure 5.3.

Table

5.1 shows the register settings to make the scales.

Figure 5.2 PSG register structure



V		V	
-----		-----	
| Coarse Tune (CT) |	Fine Tune (FT)		|
-----		-----	
+----- TP -----		+	
		[Channel A - R0, R1]	
		[Channel B - R2, R3]	
		[Channel C - R4, R5]	

Table 5.1 Setting the tone frequency (scale data)

Octave	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
Note									
C	D5D	6AF	357	1AC	D6		6B	35	1B
C#	C9C	64E	327	194	CA		65	32	19
D	BE7	5F4	2FA	17D	BE		5F	30	18
D#	B3C	59E	2CF	168	84		5A	2D	16
E	A9B	54E	2A7	153	AA		55	2A	15
F	A02	501	281	140	A0		50	28	14
F#	973	4BA	25D	12E	97		4C	26	13
G	8EB	476	23B	11D	8F		47	24	12
G#	88B	436	21B	10D	87		43	22	11
A	7F2	3F9	1FD	FE	7F		40	20	10
A#	780	3C0	1E0	F0	78		3C	1E	F
B	714	38A	1C5	E3	71		39	1C	E

* Setting the noise frequency (R6)

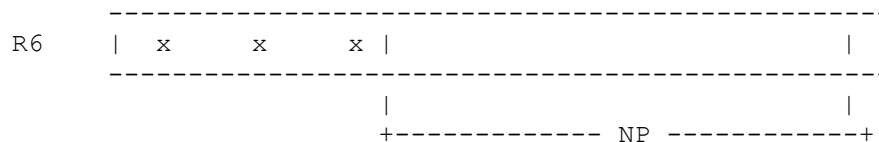
The noise generator is used for synthesizing explosion sounds or wave sounds.

The PSG can send the noise output by the noise generator to channels A to C.

Since there is only one noise generator, the same noise is sent to all channels. By changing the average frequency, various noise effects can be obtained and this is done by R6 register settings. The 5 low order bit data (NP) of this register is divided into the standard frequency ($f_c/16$) and this

determines the average frequency of the noise (fn).

Figure 5.4 Setting the noise frequency



The following relation exists between NP and fn.

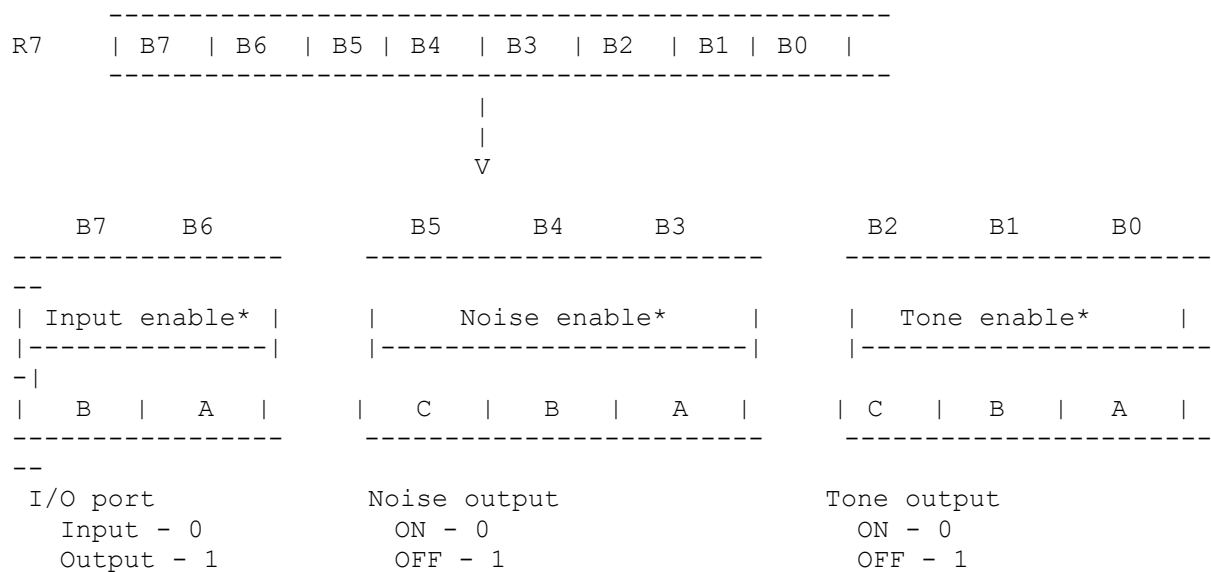
$$\begin{aligned}
 fn &= fc / (16 * NP) \\
 &= 0.11186078125 / NP \text{ [MHz]} \\
 &= 111860.78125 / NP \text{ [Hz]}
 \end{aligned}$$

Since the value of NP is from 1 to 31, the average frequency of the noise can be set from 3.6kHz to 111.9kHz.

* Mixing the sound (R7)

R7 is used to select the output of the tone and noise generator, or a mixture of both. As shown in Figure 5.5, the 3 low order bits (B0 to B2) of R7 control the tone output and the next 3 bits (B3 to B5) control the noise output. In both cases, when the corresponding bit is 0, the output is ON and, when 1, it is OFF.

Figure 5.5 Output selection for each channel



The 2 high order bits of R7 do not affect sound output. These are used to determine the direction of the data of two I/O ports which PSG has. When the corresponding bit is 0, the input mode is selected and, when 1, the output mode is selected. In MSX, port A is used for the input and port B for the output, so it should always be set so that bit 6 = "0" and bit 7 = "1".

* Setting the volume (R8 to R10)

$$= (256 * EP) / 1.787725 \text{ [MHz]}$$

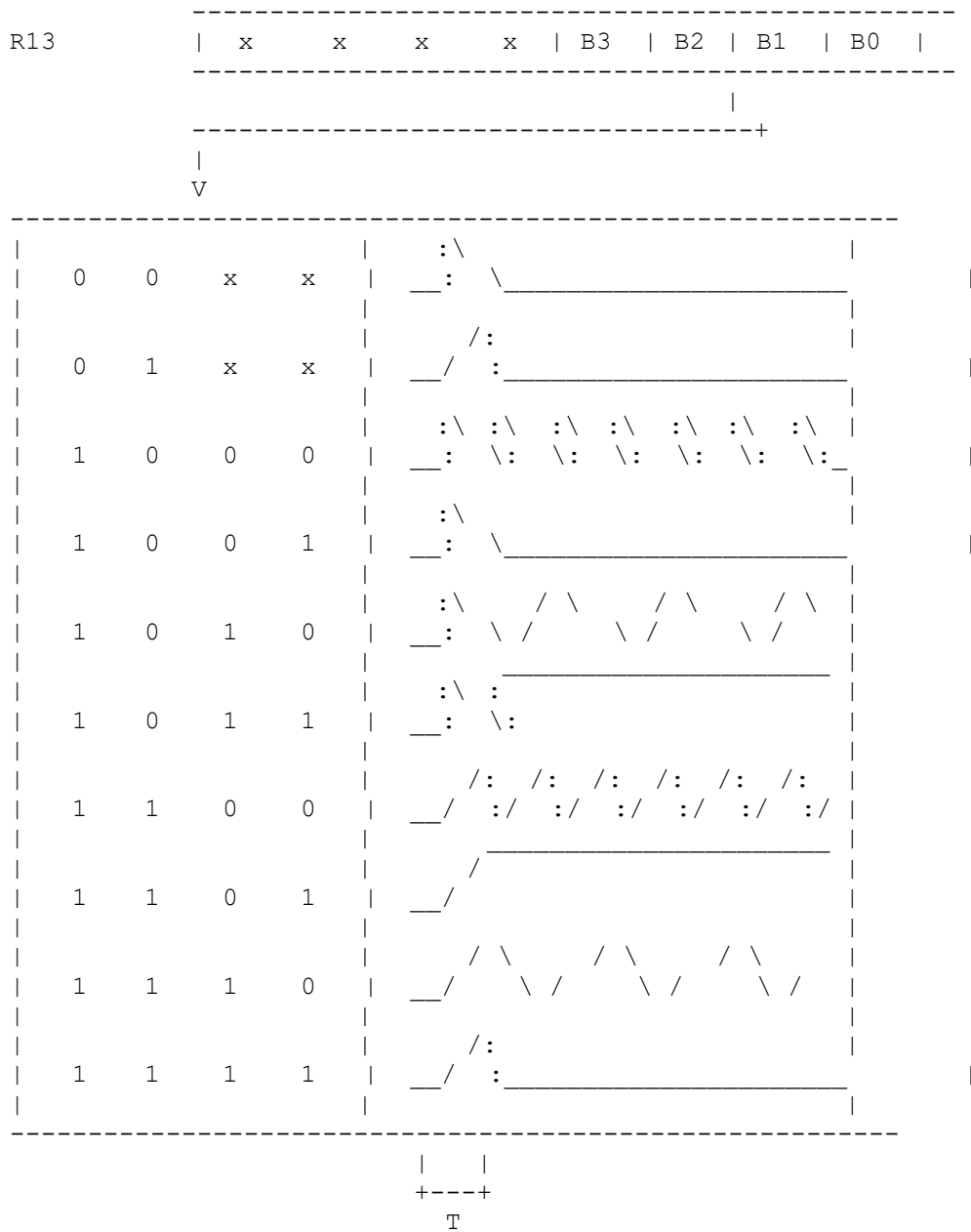
$$= 143.03493 * EP \text{ [micro second]}$$

* Setting the envelope pattern (R13)

R13 sets the envelope pattern by the 4 low order bit data as shown in Figure

5.8. The intervals of T specified in the figure correspond to the envelope cycle specified by R11 and R12.

Figure 5.8 Setting the wave forms of the envelopes



* I/O port (R14, R15)

R14 and R15 are the ports to send and receive 8-bit data in parallel. MSX

uses these as the general-purpose I/O interface. For more information, see section 5.

1.2 Access to the PSG

For access the PSG from assembly language programs, several BIOS routines described below are available.

* GICINI (0090H/MAIN) PSG initialization

Input: ---
Output: ---
Function: initializes PSG registers and does the initial settings of the work area in which PLAY statement of BASIC is executed. Each register of PSG is set to the value as shown in Figure 5.9.

Figure 5.9 Initial values of PSG registers

		Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Register										
R0	Channel A		0	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
R1	frequency		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
R2	Channel B		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
R3	frequency		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
R4	Channel C		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
R5	frequency		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
R6	Noise frequency		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
R7	Channel setting		1	0	1	1	1	0	0	0
R8	Chan. A volume		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
R9	Chan. B volume		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
R10	Chan. C volume		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

-----+-----+-----																			
-																			
R11	|		|	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1								
|-----| Envelope Cycle |-----|																			
-																			
R12	|		|	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0								
-----+-----+-----																			
-																			
R13	|	Env. pattern	|	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0								
-----+-----+-----																			
-																			
R14	|	I/O port A	|																
-----+-----+-----																			
-																			
R15	|	I/O port B	|																
-----+-----+-----																			
--																			

* WRTPSG (0093H/MAIN) writing data in PSG registers

Input: A <-- PSG register number
 E <-- data to be written
 Output: ---
 Function: writes the contents of the E register in the PSG register
 whose number is specified by the A register.

* RDPSG (0096H/MAIN) reading PSG register data

Input: A <-- PSG register number
 Output: A <-- contents of the specified register
 Function: reads the contents of PSG register whose number is specified
 by the A register and stores the value in the A register.

* STRTMS (0099H/MAIN) starting the music

Input: (Queue) <-- MML which is translated into the intermediate
 language
 Output: ---
 Function: examines whether the music is played as the background task,
 and plays the music which is set in the queue, if the music
 has not yet been played.

List 5.1 Single tone generation

=====

```
;*****
;
; List 5.1 440 Hz tone
;
;*****
;
WRTPSG EQU 0093H

ORG 0B000H

;----- program start -----
```



```

LD      A,7          ;Select Channel
LD      E,00111110B  ;Channel A Tone := On
CALL    WRTPSG

LD      A,8          ;Set Volume
LD      E,10
CALL    WRTPSG

LD      A,0          ;Set Fine Tune Channel A
LD      E,0FEH       ;Data 0FEH
CALL    WRTPSG

LD      A,1          ;Set Coarse Tune Channel A
LD      E,0          ;Data 0H
CALL    WRTPSG

RET

END

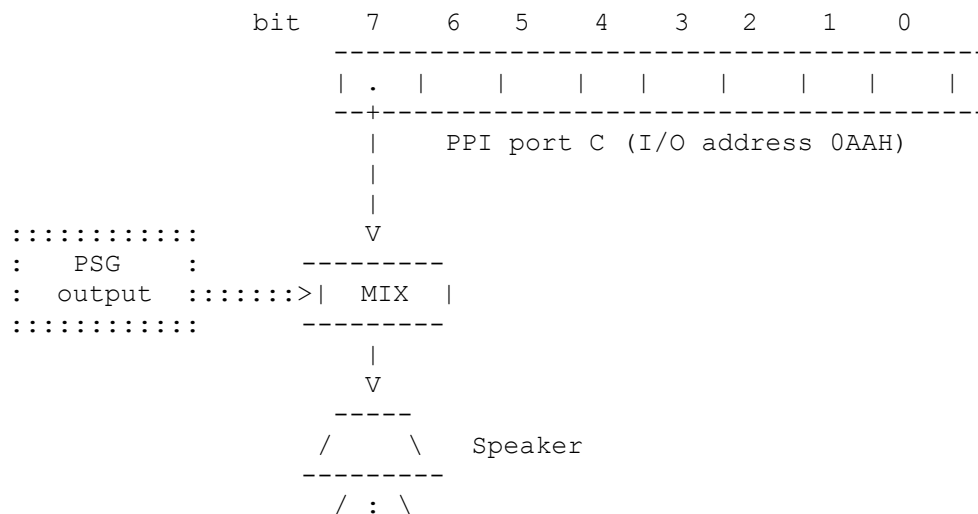
```

=====

1.3 Tone Generation by 1-bit Sound Port

MSX has another sound generator in addition to the PSG. This is a simple one that generates sound by turning ON/OFF the 1-bit I/O port output repeatedly using software.

Figure 5.10 1-bit sound port



1.4 Access to 1-bit Sound Port

To access to the 1-bit sound port, the following BIOS routine is offered.

* CHGSND (0135H/MAIN)

Input: A <-- specification of ON/OFF (0 = OFF, others = ON)
Output:

Function: calling this routine with setting 0 in the A register turns
 the bit of the sound port OFF; calling it with another value
 turns it ON.

List 5.2 Reading from cassette tape

```
=====
;*****
;
; List 5.2    Read from cassette tape
;
;            Set music tape into tape-recorder
;            and run this program.
;            Then your MSX will replay it.
;
;*****
;
CHGSNG EQU     0135H
STMOTR EQU     00F3H
RDPSG EQU     0096H
BREAKX EQU     00B7H

              ORG     0B000H

;----- program start -----        Note:    Play tape using 1-bit sound port.

START: LD        A,1                    ;motor on
      CALL       STMOTR

LBL01: LD        A,14                   ;register 14
      CALL       RDPSG                 ;read PSG

              AND     80H               ;check CSAR
              CALL     CHGSNG           ;change SOUND PORT

              CALL     BREAKX           ;check Ctrl-STOP
              JR        NC,LBL01

              XOR     A                 ;stop cassette motor
              CALL     STMOTR
              RET

              END

=====
```

2. CASSETTE INTERFACE

Cassette tape recorders are the least expensive external storage devices available for the MSX. Knowledge of the cassette interface is required to treat information in cassette tapes within assembly language programs. This section offers the necessary information.

2.1 Baud Rate

The following two baud rates can be used by the MSX cassette interface (see Table 5.2). When BASIC is invoked, 1200bps is set by default.

Table 5.2 MSX baud rate

Baud rate	Characteristics
1200 bps	Low speed / high reliability
2400 bps	High speed / low reliability

The baud rate is specified by the fourth parameter of the SCREEN instruction or the second parameter of the CSAVE instruction. Once the baud rate is set, it stays at that value.

```
SCREEN      ,,,<baud rate>
CSAVE      "filename",<baud rate>
           (<baud rate> is 1 for 1200bps, 2 for 2400 bps)
```

2.2 One bit composition

One bit data, the basis of I/O, is recorded as shown in Figure 5.11. The pulse width is determined by counting the T-STATE of the CPU, so, while the cassette interface is active, any interrupt is inhibited.

The bit data from the cassette can be read through the seventh bit of port B of the general-purpose I/O interface (register 15 of the PSG). This function was used in the program example of List 5.3, section 1 of chapter 5.

Figure 5.11 One bit composition

Baud rate	Bit	Wave form
1200 baud	0	(1200Hz x 1)
	1	(2400Hz x 2)
2400 baud	0	(2400Hz x 1)
	1	(4800Hz x 2)
: : : : : 2963 T-states (833 micro-sec) +---+---+---+---+ : : : : : 1491 T-states (417 micro-sec) +---+---+---+---+		

```

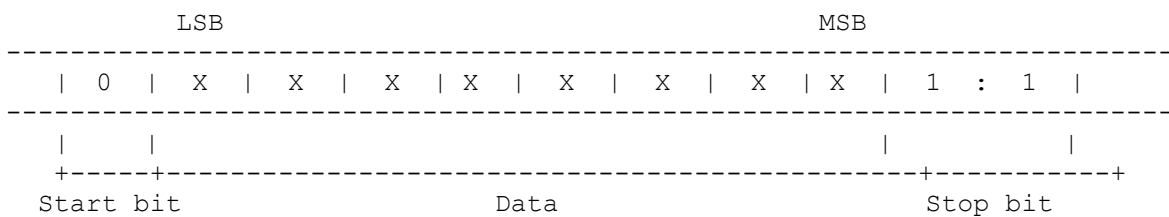
| : | 746 T-states (208 micro-sec)
+---:--+
| | 373 T-states (104 micro-sec)
+---+

```

2.3 One byte composition

One byte data is recorded in the array of bits as shown in Figure 5.12. There is one "0" bit as the start bit, followed by the 8-bit data body from LSB to MSB and by two "1" bit as the stop bits, so 11 bits are used.

Figure 5.12 One byte composition



2.4 Header Composition

The header is the portion where the signal of the specific frequency is recorded on the tape for a certain period. This allows the cassette tape speed to stabilize after it is started, or divides two files. There is a long header and a short header. The long header is used to wait until the motor is stabilized. The baud rate at reading the tape is determined by reading the long header. The short header is used to divide file bodies. Table 5.3 shows the compositions of both.

Table 5.3 Header composition

Baud rate	Header	Header composition
1200 baud	Long header	2400 Hz x 16000 (about 6.7 sec)
	Short header	2400 Hz x 4000 (about 1.7 sec)
2400 baud	Long header	4800 Hz x 32000 (about 6.7 sec)
	Short header	4800 Hz x 8000 (about 1.7 sec)

2.5 File Formats

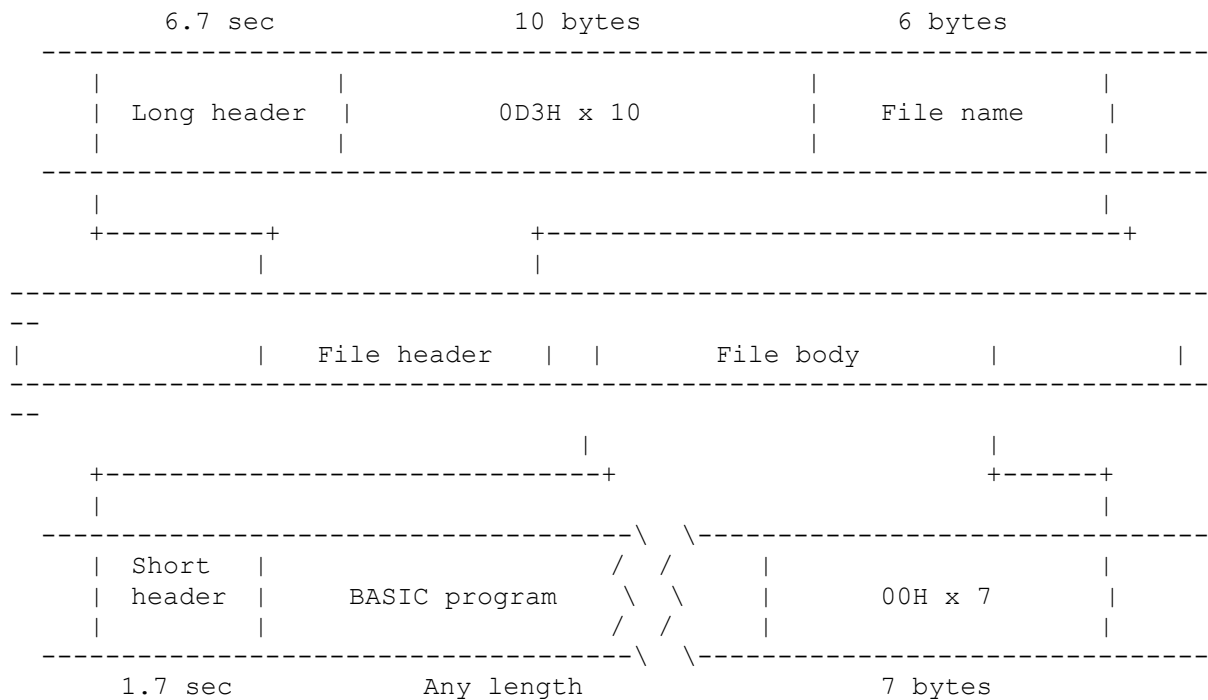
MSX BASIC supports the following three kinds of cassette format files.

(1) BASIC text file

BASIC programs saved with the CSAVE command are recorded in this format. The

file is divided into the preceding file header and the succeeding the body.

Figure 5.13 Binary file format

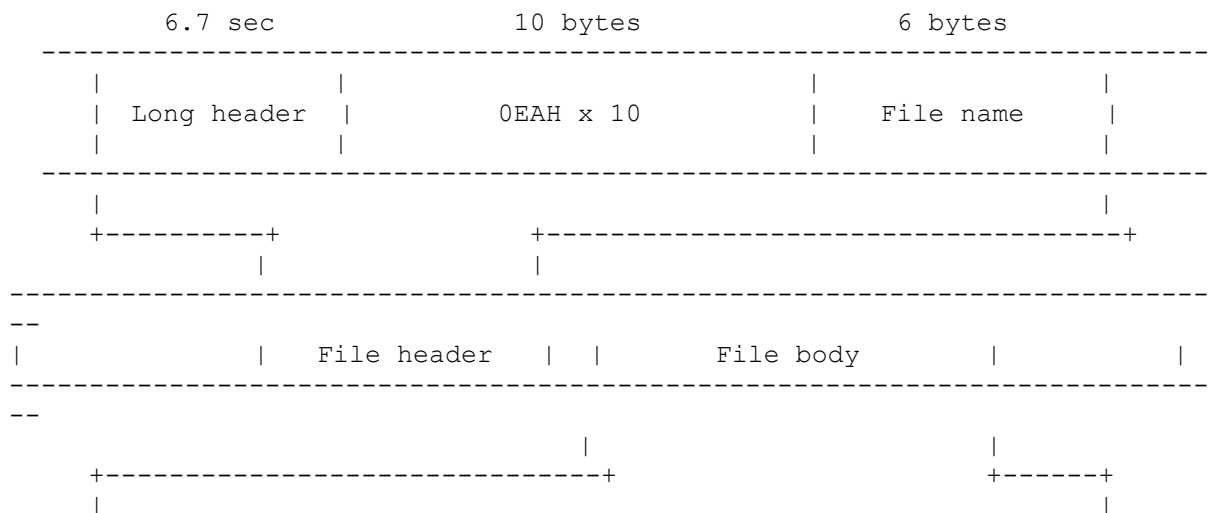


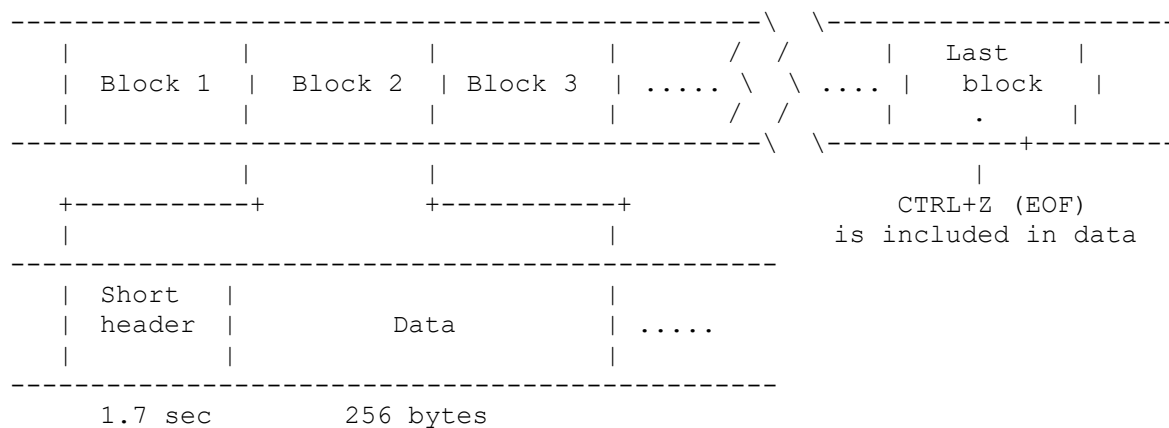
In the file header, ten bytes each of the value 0D3H follow after the long header and six bytes containing the file name are placed after them. In the file body, program body follows the short header and the end of the file is indicated by seven bytes of 00H.

(2) ASCII text file

BASIC programs saved in ASCII format by the SAVE command and data files created by the OPEN command are recorded in this format.

Figure 5.14 ASCII file format



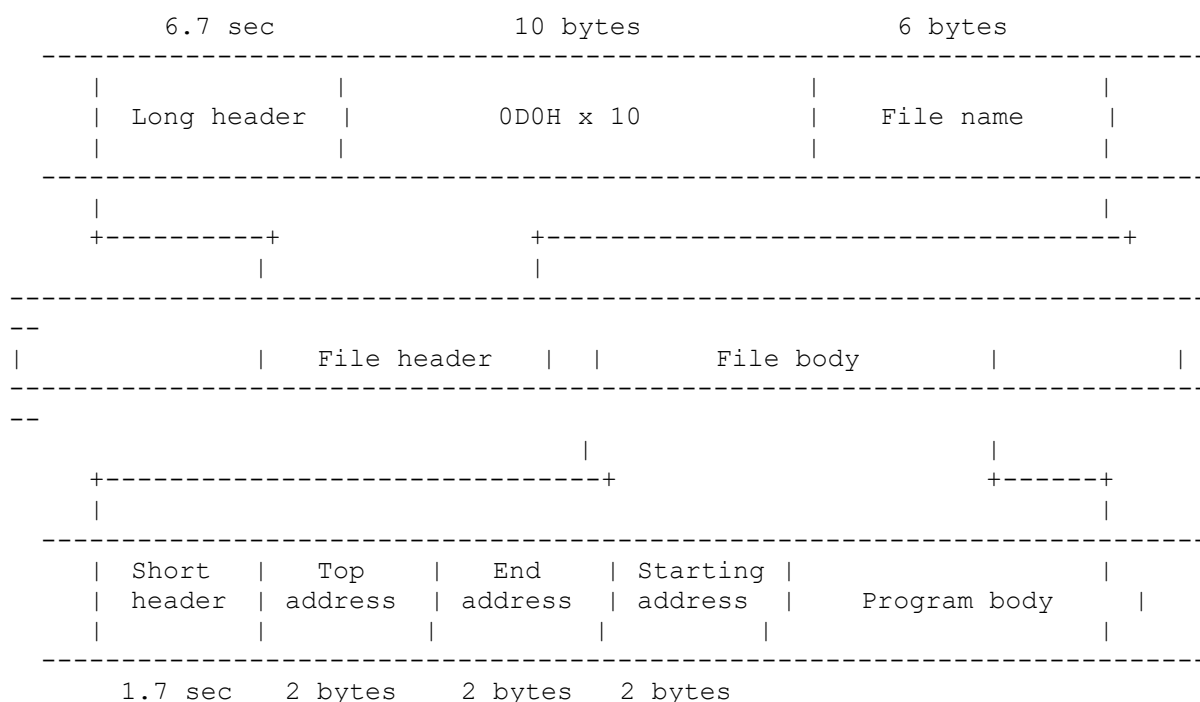


(3) Machine code file

Machine code files saved by the BSAVE command are recorded in the following format. In the file header, 10 bytes each of the value 0D0H follow after the long header and 6 bytes containing the file name are placed after them.

In the file body, the starting address, the end address, and the entry address are recorded in order after the short header, and the machine codes follow after them. Since the amount of data can be calculated from the starting and ending addresses, there is no special mark for the end of the file. The entry address is the address where the program is executed when the R option of the BLOAD command is used.

Figure 5.15 Machine code file format



2.6 Access to cassette files

The following BIOS routines are offered to access cassette files.

* TAPION (00E1H/MAIN) OPEN for read

Input: ---
Output: CY flag = ON at abnormal terminations
Function: starts the motor of the tape recorder and reads the long header or the short headset. At the same time, the baud rate in which the file is recorded is detected and the work area is set according to it. Interrupts are inhibited.

* TAPIN (00E4H/MAIN) read one byte

Input: ---
Output: A <-- data which has been read
CY flag = ON at abnormal terminations
Function: reads one byte of data from the tape and stores it in the A register.

* TAPIOF (00E7H/MAIN) CLOSE for read

Input: ---
Output: ---
Function: ends reading from the tape. At this point, interrupts are allowed.

* TAPOON (00EAH/MAIN) OPEN for write

Input: A <-- type of header (0 = short header, others = long header)
Output: CY flag = ON at abnormal terminations
Function: starts the motor of the tape recorder and writes the header of the type specified in the A register to the tape. Interrupts are inhibited.

* TAPOUT (00EDH/MAIN) write one byte

Input: A <-- data to be written
Output: CY flag = ON at abnormal terminations
Function: writes the contents of the A register to the tape.

* TAPOOF (00F0H/MAIN) CLOSE writing

Input: ---
Output: ---
Function: ends writing the tape. At this point, interrupts are allowed.

* STMOTR (00F3H/MAIN) specify the actions of the motor

Input: A <-- action (0 = stop, 1 = start, 255 = reverse the current status)
Output: ---

Function: sets the status of the motor according to the value
specified in the A register.

When READ/WRITE routines for the cassette files are created using these BIOS calls, only READ or WRITE, without any other action, should be done. For example, reading data from the tape and displaying it on the CRT might cause a READ error.

List 5.3 is a sample program which uses BIOS routines.

List 5.3 Listing names of files saved in the cassette

```
=====
;*****
;
; List 5.3        Cassette files
;
;        Set cassette tape into recorder and run this program.
;        Then all the names and attributes of the programs
;        in that tape will be listed.
;
;*****
;
CHPUT    EQU       00A2H
TAPION   EQU       00E1H
TAPIN    EQU       00E4H
TAPIOF   EQU       00E7H

          ORG       0C000H

;----- program start -----        Note: View program names on cassette tape.

START:   CALL       TAPION            ;motor on and read header

          LD        B,16
          LD        HL,WORK           ;work area address
LBL01:   PUSH       HL
          PUSH       BC
          CALL       TAPIN            ;read a byte of data from tape
          POP        BC
          POP        HL
          JR        C,ERROR           ;set carry flag if read error
          LD        (HL),A
          INC        HL
          DJNZ       LBL01

          LD        HL,FILNAM        ;write file name
          CALL       PUTSTR
          LD        HL,WORK+10
          CALL       PUTSTR
          CALL       CRLF

          LD        A,(WORK)        ;check file attributes

          LD        HL,BINFIL
          CP        0D3H            ;check binary file
```



```

        JR      Z,LBL03

        LD      HL,ASCFIL
        CP      0EAH          ;check ascii file
        JR      Z,LBL03

        LD      HL,MACFIL
        CP      0D0H          ;check machine code file
        JR      Z,LBL03

ERROR:  LD      HL,ERRSTR

LBL03:  CALL     PUTSTR
        CALL     TAPIOF
        RET

;----- put CRLF -----

CRLF:  LD      HL,STCRLF
        CALL     PUTSTR
        RET

;----- put string -----

PUTSTR: LD      A,(HL)          ;get a character from strings
        CP      '$'           ;check end of strings
        RET      Z
        CALL     CHPUT         ;write a character to CRT
        INC      HL
        JR      PUTSTR

;----- strings data -----

FILNAM: DB      'FILE NAME :$'
ASCFIL: DB      'ASCII FILE',0DH,0AH,'$'
BINFIL: DB      'BINARY FILE',0DH,0AH,'$'
MACFIL: DB      'BSAVE FILE',0DH,0AH,'$'
ERRSTR: DB      'TAPE READ ERROR',0DH,0AH,'$'
STCRLF: DB      0DH,0AH,'$'

;----- WORK AREA -----

WORK:  DS      16,0
        DB      '$'           ;end of strings

        END

```

=====

3. KEYBOARD INTERFACE

Although the MSX2 keyboard has the same design as that of the MSX1, it is more convenient to use because of the Romand-to-kana translation available for kana input. This chapter describes the keyboard interface of the MSX2.

Descriptions of the key arrangement are based on the Japanese keyboard standard; note that data is slightly different for the international MSX versions.

3.1 Key Scanning

MSX uses the key matrices as shown in Figure 5.16, Figure 5.17 and Figure 5.17B. The key status can be obtained in real time by examining this key matrix and is available for reading input.

Scanning the key matrix is done by the following BIOS routine.

* SNSMAT (0141H/MAIN) reads the specified line of the key matrix

Input: A <-- key matrix line to be read (0 to 10)
Output: A <-- status of the specified line of the key matrix
(when pressed, the bit of the key is 0)
Function: specifies a line of the key matrix shown in Figure 5.16, Figure 5.17 or Figure 5.17B and stores its status in the A register. The bit corresponding with the key being pressed is "0", and "1" for the key not being pressed.

Figure 5.16 MSX USA version key matrix

MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB
0	B	L		/	1	S	X	,	
1	V	J	=	`	Q	A	C	N	
2	G	8	0	]	W	F	Z	M	
3	T	I	~	;	2	D	U	\	
4	6	K	P	'	3	R	7	H	
5	5	0	9	[	4	E	Y	.	
6	F3	F2	F1	CODE	CAPS	GRAPH	CTRL	SHIFT	
7	RETURN	SELECT	BS	STOP	TAB	ESC	F5	F4	
8	RIGHT	DOWN	UP	LEFT	DEL	INS	HOME	SPACE	
[TEN KEY]									
9	4	3	2	1	0	option	option	option	
10	.	,	-	9	8	7	6	5	

Figure 5.17 MSX International version key matrix

MSB	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	LSB
0	B	L	deadkey	/	1	S	X	,	

1	|	V	|	J	|	^	|	]	|	Q	|	A	|	C	|	N	|
2	|	G	|	8	|	0	|	[	|	W	|	F	|	Z	|	M	|
3	|	T	|	I	|	~	|	;	|	2	|	D	|	U	|	\	|
4	|	6	|	K	|	P	|	:	|	3	|	R	|	7	|	H	|
5	|	5	|	0	|	9	|	@	|	4	|	E	|	Y	|	.	|
6	|	F3	|	F2	|	F1	|	CODE	|	CAPS	|	GRAPH	|	CTRL	|	SHIFT	|
7	|	RETURN	|	SELECT	|	BS	|	STOP	|	TAB	|	ESC	|	F5	|	F4	|
8	|	RIGHT	|	DOWN	|	UP	|	LEFT	|	DEL	|	INS	|	HOME	|	SPACE	|

[TEN KEY]																	
9	|	4	|	3	|	2	|	1	|	0	|	option	|	option	|	option	|
10	|	.	|	,	|	-	|	9	|	8	|	7	|	6	|	5	|

Figure 5.17B MSX European version key matrix

MSB																	LSB
	7		6		5		4		3		2		1		0		
0	|	7	|	6	|	5	|	4	|	3	|	2	|	1	|	0	|
1	|	;	|	]	|	[	|	\	|	=	|	-	|	9	|	8	|
2	|	B	|	A	|	accent	|	/	|	.	|	,	|	`	|	'	|
3	|	J	|	I	|	H	|	G	|	F	|	E	|	D	|	C	|
4	|	R	|	Q	|	P	|	O	|	N	|	M	|	L	|	K	|
5	|	Z	|	Y	|	X	|	W	|	V	|	U	|	T	|	S	|
6	|	F3	|	F2	|	F1	|	CODE	|	CAPS	|	GRAPH	|	CTRL	|	SHIFT	|
7	|	RETURN	|	SELECT	|	BS	|	STOP	|	TAB	|	ESC	|	F5	|	F4	|
8	|	RIGHT	|	DOWN	|	UP	|	LEFT	|	DEL	|	INS	|	HOME	|	SPACE	|

[TEN KEY]																	
9	|	4	|	3	|	2	|	1	|	0	|	option	|	option	|	option	|
10	|	.	|	,	|	-	|	9	|	8	|	7	|	6	|	5	|

List 5.4 Use of the key scanning routine

```
=====
;*****
```

```

;
; List 5.4 scan key-matrix and display it
;
;*****
;
CHPUT EQU 00A2H
BREAKX EQU 00B7H
POSIT EQU 00C6H
SNSMAT EQU 0141H

ORG 0B000H

;----- program start ----- Note: read key matrix and display key
                                pattern.

SCAN: LD C,0 ;C := line of key matrix

SC1: LD A,C
CALL SNSMAT ;Read key matrix

LD B,8
LD HL,BUF ;HL := buffer address
SC2: LD D,'.'
RLA ;Check bit
JR C,SC3
LD D,'#'

SC3: LD (HL),D ;store '.' or '#' to buffer
INC HL
DJNZ SC2

LD H,05H ;x := 5
LD L,C ;y := C+1
INC L
CALL POSIT ;set cursor position

LD B,8 ;put out bit patterns to CRT
LD HL,BUF
SC4: LD A,(HL)
CALL CHPUT
INC HL
DJNZ SC4

CALL BREAKX ;check Ctrl-STOP
RET C

INC C ;line No. increment
LD A,C
CP 09
JR NZ,SC1
JR SCAN

;----- work area -----

BUF: DS 8

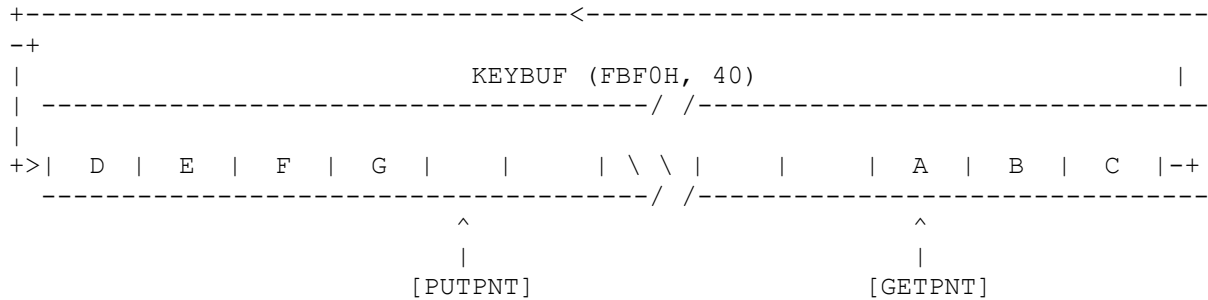
END
=====

```

3.2 Character Input

MSX scans the key matrix every 1/60 second using the timer interrupt and, when a key is pressed, stores the character code in the keyboard buffer as shown in Figure 5.18. Key input to MSX is generally done by reading this keyboard buffer.

Figure 5.18 Keyboard ring buffer



GETPNT (F3FAH, 2) points to the next character to be obtained in CHGET routine.

PUTPNT (F3F8H, 2) points to the next location for the character to be put when the keyboard is pressed next time.

BIOS routines having functions for key input using this keyboard buffer and functions related to it are described below. Inhibiting the timer interrupt renders them useless, of course.

* CHSNS (009CH/MAIN) checks the keyboard buffer

Input: ---
 Output: Z flag = ON when the buffer is empty
 Function: examines whether any characters remain in the keyboard buffer
 and sets the Z flag when the buffer is empty.

* CHGET (009FH/MAIN) one character input from the keyboard
 buffer

Input: ---
 Output: A <-- character code
 Function: reads one character from the keyboard buffer and stores it in
 the A register. When the buffer is empty, it displays the cursor and waits for a key input. While a key input is
 waited
 for, the CAP lock, KANA lock, and Roman-to-kana translation lock are valid. The related work area is listed below. In
 the
 list, since SCNCNT and REPCNT are initialised after the execution of CHGET routine, this area should be set at each CHGET call to change the interval of the auto-repeat.

Work area

CLIKSW (F3DBH, 1)	key click sound (0 = OFF, others = ON)
SCNCNT (F3F6H, 1)	key scanning interval (1, normally)
REPCNT (F3F7H, 1)	delay until beginning auto-repeat (50, normally)
CSTYLE (FCAAH, 1)	figure of the cursor (0 = block, others = underline)
CAPST (FCABH, 1)	CAPS lock (0 = OFF, others = ON)
DEADST (FCACH, 1)	dead key lock 0 = on preceding dead key 1 = dead key 2 = shifted dead key 3 = code dead key 4 = code shift dead key

* KILBUF (0156H/MAIN) empty the keyboard buffer

Input: ---
Output: ---
Function: empties the keyboard buffer.

List 5.5 Use of one character input routine

```

=====
;*****
;
;   List 5.5   get key code
;
;           this routine doesn't wait for key hit
;
;*****
;
CHSNS EQU 009CH      ;check keyboard buffer
CHGET EQU 009FH      ;get a character from buffer
CHPUT EQU 00A2H      ;put a character to screen
BREAKX EQU 00B7H     ;check Ctrl-STOP
KILBUF EQU 0156H     ;clear keyboard buffer
REPCNT EQU 0F3F7H    ;time interval until key-repeat
KEYBUF EQU 0FBF0H    ;keyboard buffer address

      ORG 0B000H

;----- program start -----      Note: Real-time input using CHGET

KEY:  CALL CHSNS      ;check keyboard buffer
      JR    C,KEY1

      LD     A,1
      LD     (REPCNT),A ;not to wait until repeat
      CALL  CHGET      ;get a character (if exists)
      JR    KEY2

KEY1: LD     A,'-'      ;A := '-'

KEY2: CALL  CHPUT      ;put the character
      CALL  KILBUF     ;clear keyboard buffer
      CALL  BREAKX     ;check Ctrl-STOP
      JR    NC,KEY

      END

```


BUF	(F55EH, 258)	the line buffer where the string is stored
LINTTB	(FBB2H, 24)	00H when the one physiscal line is the succession of the line above

* INLIN (00B1H/MAIN) one line input (prompt available)

Input: ---
Output: same as PINLIN
Function: stores input string in the line buffer BUF (F55EH), as
PINLIN routine. Note that the portion before the cursor
location at the time when the routine begins to execute is
not received. List 5.6 shows the difference between PINLIN
and INLIN.

List 5.6 Difference between INLIN and PINLIN

=====

```
;*****
;
; List 5.6 INLIN and PINLIN
;
;*****
;
CHPUT EQU 00A2H
INLIN EQU 00B1H
PINLIN EQU 00AEH
KILBUF EQU 0156H

BUF EQU F55EH

ORG 0B000H

;----- program start -----

LD HL,PRMPT1
CALL PUTMSG ;put prompt message
CALL INLIN ;use INLIN routine
LD HL,BUF
CALL PUTMSG

LD HL,PRMPT2
CALL PUTMSG ;put prompt message
CALL PINLIN ;use PINLIN routine
LD HL,BUF
CALL PUTMSG

RET

;----- put a string -----

PUTMSG: LD A,(HL)
CP '$'
RET Z
CALL CHPUT
INC HL
JR PUTMSG

;----- string data -----
```



```
PRMPT1: DB      0DH,0AH,'INLIN:$'
PRMPT2: DB      0DH,0AH,'PINLIN:$'
```

```
END
```

```
=====
```

3.3 Function Keys

MSX has ten function keys, which can be defined by the user at will. A 16 byte work area is allocated for the definition of each key. The following list shows their addresses.

```
FNKSTR (F87FH, 16) ..... F1 key definition address
+ 10H (F88FH, 16) ..... F2 key definition address
+ 20H (F89FH, 16) ..... F3 key definition address
+ 30H (F8AFH, 16) ..... F4 key definition address
+ 40H (F8BFH, 16) ..... F5 key definition address
+ 50H (F8CFH, 16) ..... F6 key definition address
+ 60H (F8DFH, 16) ..... F7 key definition address
+ 70H (F8EFH, 16) ..... F8 key definition address
+ 80H (F8FFH, 16) ..... F9 key definition address
+ 90H (F90FH, 16) ..... F10 key definition address
```

Pressing a function key causes the string defined in that key to be stored in [KEYBUF]. The end of the string is indicated by 00H and a maximum of 15 keystrokes can be defined for one function key (definitions longer than 16 keystrokes are defined over more than one function key definition area). To restore the initial settings of the function keys, use the following BIOS routine.

```
* INIFNK (003EH/MAIN) ..... initialize function keys
```

```
Input:      ---
Output:     ---
Function:    restores the function key definition to the setting when
             BASIC starts.
```

3.4 STOP Key During Interrupts

CHGET, the one-character input routine described in 3.3, determines the pressed key in the timer interrupt routine. Thus, when the timer interrupt is inhibited, such as during cassette data I/O, pressed keys cannot be detected.

By using the BIOS routine described below, the CTRL key + STOP key combination can be detected even when interrupts are inhibited.

```
* BREAKX (00B7H/MAIN) ..... CTRL + STOP detection
```

```
Input:      ---
Output:     CY flag = ON, when CTRL + STOP is pressed
Function:    scans keys and decides whether CTRL key and STOP key are
             pressed at the same time. When both are pressed, this
             routine
```

sets "1" to the CY flag and returns. Otherwise, it resets "0" to the CY flag and returns. This routine is available while interrupts are inhibited.

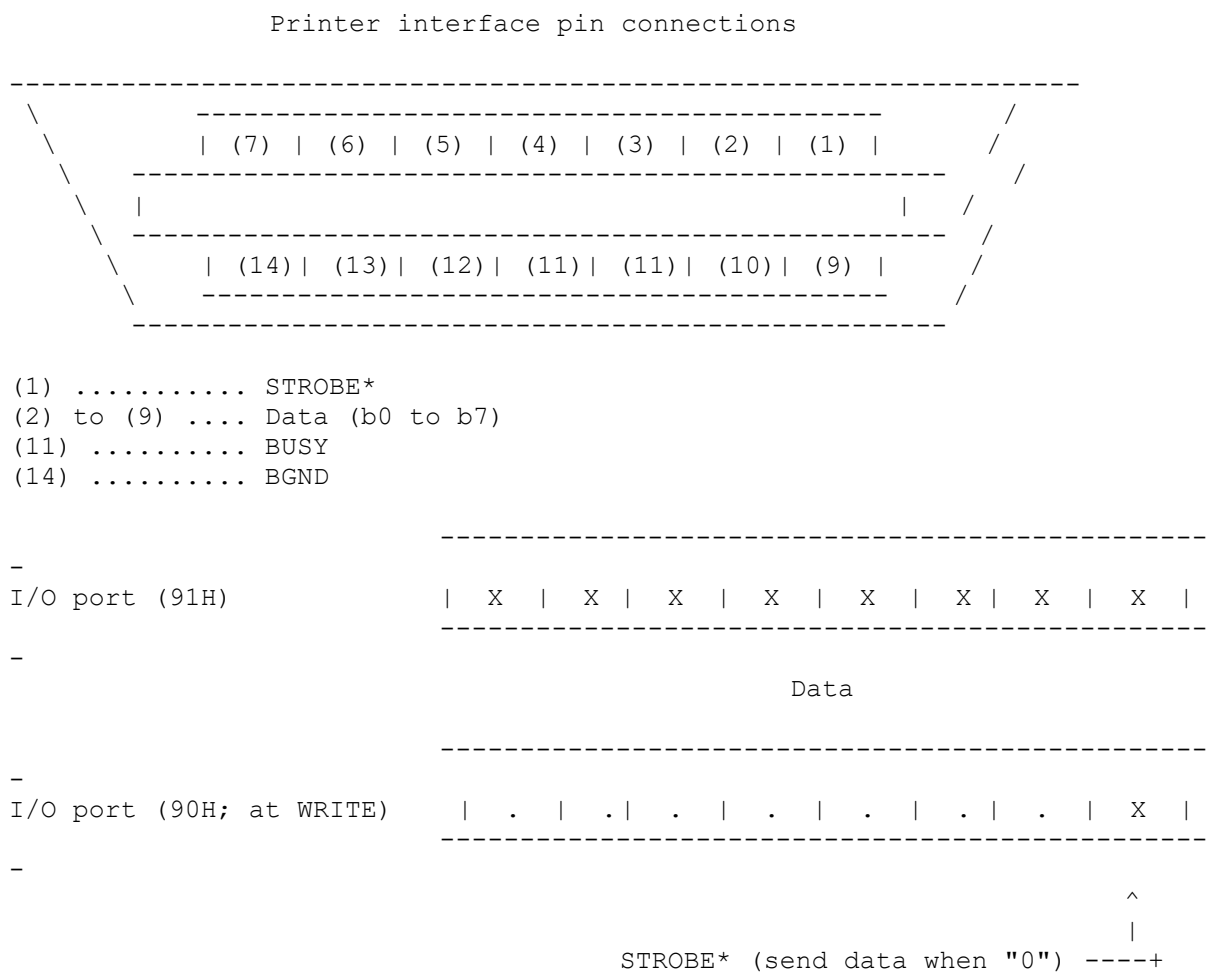
4. PRINTER INTERFACE

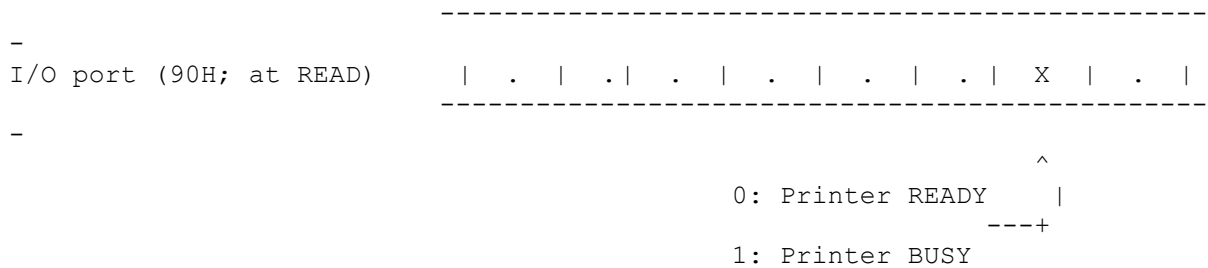
This section describes how to access the MSX printer interface from assembly language. The information described here is helpful if the printer is going to be used to print bit image graphics.

4.1 Print Interface Overview

The printer interface is supported by BIOS and BASIC. MSX drives the printer through an 8-bit parallel output port and uses a handshaking method with BUSY and STROBE signals. The standard connector is also defined (Amphenol 14-pin, female side to the machine). Figure 5.20 shows the signal lines.

Figure 5.20 Printer interface





4.2 Output to the MSX Standard Printer

If data is sent from MSX to the printer, the action depends on whether the printer receiving the data is of the MSX standard. The use of MSX standard printers is described in this section. Descriptions about other printers are in the next section.

An MSX standard printer can print any character that can be displayed on the screen. Special graphic characters corresponding to character codes $n = 01H$ to $1FH$ can be also printed by sending the code $40H + n$ after the graphic character header ($01H$). In addition to these, the control codes shown in Table 5.4 can be used with MSX standard printers (see the manual of the printer for controlling a printer which has other functions such as printing Chinese characters).

To feed lines in MSX standard printers, send $0DH$ and $0AH$ successively. To print the bit image, send $nnnn$ bytes data, where $nnnn$ means four decimal figures, after the escape sequence $ESC + "Snnnn"$. Note that, MSX has a function to transform the tab code ($09H$) to the adequate number of space codes ($20H$) for printers not having a tab function. This transformation is normally done. To print a bit image which includes the value $09H$ correctly, change the following work area.

* RAWPRT (F418H, 1) replaces a tab by spaces when the contents are $00H$, otherwise not.

Table 5.4 Control codes of the printer

code	function
0AH	line feed
0CH	form feed
0DH	carriage return
ESC + "A"	normal line spacing

```

|           | (spaces between lines; characters are read easily)
|
|-----+-----
-|
| ESC + "B" | line spacing for graphics (no space between lines)
|
|-----+-----
-|
| ESC + "Snnnn" | bit image printing
|
|-----
--

```

4.3 Access to the printer

To send output to the printer, the following BIOS routines are offered.

* LPTOUT (00A5H/MAIN)

```

Input:      A register <-- character code
Output:     CY flag = ON at abnormal termination
Function:    sends a character specified by the A register to the
printer.

```

* LPTSTT (00A8/MAIN)

```

Input:      ---
Output:     A register <-- printer status
Function:    examines the current printer status. After calling this
routine, the printer can be used when the A register is 255
and the Z flag is 0; when the A register is 0 and the Z flag
is 1, the printer cannot be used.

```

* OUTDLP (014DH,MAIN)

```

Input:      A register <-- character code
Output:     CY flag = ON at abnormal termination
Function:    sends a character specified by the A register to the
printer.

Differences between this routine and LPTOUT routine is as
following:
* prints corresponding number of spaces for TAB code
* transforms hiragana to katakana for printers other than
  MSX standard
* returns Device I/O error at abnormal termination

```

5. UNIVERSAL I/O INTERFACE

As described in section 1, the PSG used by MSX has two 8-bit I/O ports, port

A and port B, in addition to the sound output function. In MSX, these two ports are connected to the universal I/O interface (joystick port) and are used to exchange data with the joystick or the paddle (see Figure 5.21). Various devices to be connected to this universal I/O interface have the necessary BIOS routine in ROM, so they are easily accessible.

Port B (PSG#15)

```

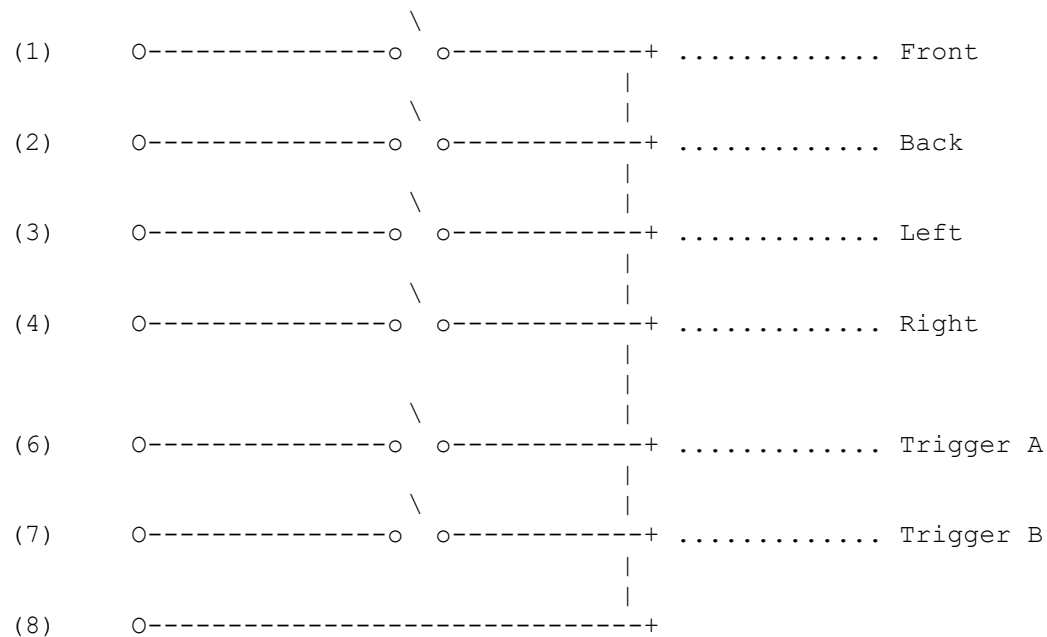
-----
|      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|      |      |      |      +-----+-----+-----+----> Unused
|      |      |      |      +----> Connected to 8th terminal of univ. I/O interface
1
|      |      +-----> Connected to 8th terminal of univ. I/O interface
2
|      |
|      +----> 0: b0-b5 of port A to be connected to univ. I/O interface 1
|      1: b0-b5 of port A to be connected to univ. I/O interface 2
|
+-----> 0: Arabic or kana mode display lamp on
          1: Arabic or kana mode display lamp off

```

5.2 Joystick Use

Figure 5.23 shows the joystick circuit. As the circuit shows, sending "0" to the 8th terminal and reading the 1st to 4th and 6th to 7th terminals enable information about the stick and the trigger buttons to be obtained. However, it is advisable to use BIOS for accessing the joystick, in order to give portability to the program.

figure 5.23 Joystick circuit



The following BIOS routines are offered for accessing the joystick. These routines have similar functions to the STICK function and STRIG function of BASIC. The status of the cursor keys or the space bar, in addition to the joystick, can be read in real time.

* GTSTCK (00D5H/MAIN) read joystick

Input: A <-- joystick number (0 = cursor key, 1 and 2 = joystick)

Output: A <-- direction of joystick or cursor key
 Function: returns the current status of the joystick or the cursor keys
 in the A register. The value is the same as the STICK function in BASIC.

* GTTRIG (00D8H/MAIN) read trigger button

Input: A <-- trigger button number (0 = space bar,
 1 and 2 = trigger button A, 3 and 4 = trigger button B)
 Output: A <-- status of trigger button or space bar
 (0FFH = pressed, 00H = released)
 Function: returns the current status of the trigger buttons or the space bar in the A register. The value is 0FFH when the trigger is pressed, otherwise it is 0.

List 5.7 Joystick use

=====

```
;*****
;
; List 5.7 Joystick and trigger access
;
;*****
;
CHPUT EQU 00A2H
BREAKX EQU 00B7H
GTSTCK EQU 00D5H
GTTRIG EQU 00D8H

ORG 0D00H

;----- program start ----- Note: display joystick status

STICK: LD A,1 ;choose joystick 1
CALL GTSTCK ;read joystick status
LD (WK1),A
LD A,1 ;choose joystick 1
CALL GTTRIG ;read trigger status

OR A
JR Z,STCK1
LD HL,WDON ;trigger ON
JR STCK2
STCK1: LD HL,WDOFF ;trigger OFF
STCK2: CALL PUTSTR
LD A,(WK1)
OR A
JR Z,BRKCH0 ;do not use joystick
LD C,0
STCK3: DEC A
JR NZ,STCK4
INC C
JR STCK3

STCK4: SLA C ;C := C*16
SLA C
SLA C
```

```

        SLA      C
        LD       B,0                ;Accounting Strings data address
        LD       HL,WDSTK
        ADD      HL,BC
        CALL     PUTSTR

BRKCH0: LD       A,0DH              ;put carriage return
        CALL     CHPUT              ;code := 0DH

BRKCHK: CALL     BREAKX             ;break check
        RET      C
        JR       STICK

;----- put strings to screen -----

PUTSTR: LD       A,(HL)
        CP       '$'
        RET      Z
        INC      HL
        CALL     CHPUT
        JR       PUTSTR

;----- string area -----

WDON:   DB       'Trigger ON: $'
WDOFF:  DB       'Trigger OFF: $'
WDSTK:  DB       'UP only      ',0DH,0AH,'$'
        DB       'Up and Right ',0DH,0AH,'$'
        DB       'Right only   ',0DH,0AH,'$'
        DB       'Right & Down ',0DH,0AH,'$'
        DB       'Down only    ',0DH,0AH,'$'
        DB       'Down and Left',0DH,0AH,'$'
        DB       'Left only    ',0DH,0AH,'$'
        DB       'Left and Up  ',0DH,0AH,'$'

WK1:    DW       0

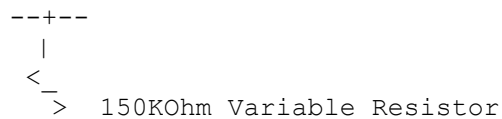
        END

```

5.3 Paddle Use

Figure 5.24 shows the paddle circuit. Sending a pulse to the 8th terminal causes the single stable multi-vibrator to generate a pulse with a specified interval. This interval depends on the value of the variable register which can range from 10 to 3000 microseconds (0.01 to 3.00 ms). Measuring the pulse length enables the value in the variable register and the turning angle to be obtained.

Figure 5.24 Paddle circuit



"XXX2" means the one connected to the universal I/O interface #2.

Table 5.5 GTPAD BIOS Function

Device ID	Device specified	Information returned
0	Touch panel 1	0FFH when touching panel surface, 00H when not
1		X-coordinate (0 to 255)
2		Y-coordinate (0 to 255)
3		0FFH when button is pressed, 00H when not
4		
5	Touch panel 2	Same as above
6		
7		
8		
9	Light pen	X-coordinate (0 to 255)
10		Y-coordinate (0 to 255)
11		0FFH when switch is pressed, 00H when not
12	Mouse 1 or track ball 1	Always 0FFH (used to request for input)
13		X-coordinate (0 to 255)
14		Y-coordinate (0 to 255)
15		Always 00H (no meaning)
16		
17	Mouse 2 or track ball 2	Same as above
18		
19		

Note 1: Though information of the coordinate of the light pen (A = 9, 10) and

the switch (A = 11) are read at the same time when BIOS is called with A = 8, other values are valid only when the result is 0FFH.

In the case that the result of BIOS which is called with A = 8 is 00H, the coordinate values and the status of the switch contained after that are meaningless.

Note 2: Mouse and track ball are automatically distinguished.

Note 3: To obtain the coordinate value of the mouse or the track ball, do the

input request call (A = 12 or A = 16), then execute the call to obtain the coordinate value actually. In this case, the interval of these two calls must be minimized as possible. Too much interval between the input request and the coordinate input causes the obtained data to be unreliable.

Note 4: To obtain the status of the trigger button of the mouse or the trigger button of the track ball, use GTTRIG (00D8H/MAIN), not GTPAD routine.

List 5.8 Touch panel use

=====

```
;*****
;
; List 5.8 touch pad access
;
;*****
;
BREAKX EQU 00B7H
GTPAD EQU 00D8H
WRTVRM EQU 004DH
```

```
ORG 0B000H
```

```
;----- program start -----      Note: Displays "*" at position specified
                                     by touch pad.
```

```
PAD:  XOR    A           ;check sense
      CALL   GTPAD
      OR     A
      JR     NZ,PAD1
      LD     A,3
      CALL   GTPAD      ;break check
      OR     A
      RET    NZ
      JR     PAD

PAD1:  LD     A,1         ;get X axis
      CALL   GTPAD
      SRL    A           ;A := A/8
      SRL    A
      SRL    A
      LD     (WORK),A    ;reserve X axis
      LD     A,2         ;get Y axis
      CALL   GTPAD
      LD     L,A         ;HL := Y data (0-255)
      LD     H,0
      LD     C,A
      LD     B,0
      ADD    HL,BC       ;HL := HL*3 (HL := 0-767)
      ADD    HL,BC
      LD     A,L
      AND    11100000B
```

```

LD      L,A
LD      A,(WORK)
ADD     A,L
LD      L,A
LD      BC,1800H      ;VRAM start address
ADD     HL,BC
LD      A,2AH
CALL    WRTVRM        ;write VRAM
LD      A,3
CALL    GTPAD         ;break check
OR      A
RET     NZ
JR      PAD

```

;----- work area -----

```
WORK:    DW      0      ;work
```

```
END
```

=====

List 5.9 Mouse and track ball use

=====

```

;*****
;
; List 5.9 mouse and track ball access
;
;*****
;
GTPAD    EQU      00DBH
WRTVRM   EQU      004DH
RDVRM    EQU      004AH
BREAKX   EQU      00B7H

ORG      0D000H

```

;----- program start ----- Note: Displays "*" at position specified
by mouse or track ball.

```

TEST:    CALL     VADR      ;Put old data
LD       A,(WKOLD)
CALL     WRTVRM
LD       A,12
CALL     GTPAD            ;Request mouse/track ball data
LD       A,13
CALL     GTPAD            ;Read X val.
LD       (WKXVAL),A
LD       A,14
CALL     GTPAD            ;Read Y val.
LD       (WKYVAL),A

LD       A,(WKX)
LD       B,A
LD       A,(WKXVAL)
ADD      A,B
CP       245              ;X<0?
JR       C,TEST01
XOR      A                ;X=0

```

```

        JR      TEST02

TEST01: CP      32                ;X>31?
        JR      C,TEST02
        LD      A,31

TEST02: LD      (WKX),A

        LD      A,(WKY)
        LD      B,A
        LD      A,(WKYVAL)
        ADD     A,B
        CP      245              ;Y<0?
        JR      C,TEST03
        XOR     A                ;Y=0
        JR      TEST04

TEST03: CP      24                ;Y>23?
        JR      C,TEST04
        LD      A,23

TEST04: LD      (WKY),A

        CALL    VADR
        CALL    RDVRM            ;Read old data
        LD      (WKOLD),A

        CALL    VADR
        LD      A,2AH
        CALL    WRTVRM          ;Put cursor ("*").

        CALL    BREAKX          ;Break check
        RET     C

        CALL    WAIT

        JR      TEST

VADR:   LD      A,(WKY)          ;Make SCREEN Address:
        LD      H,A              ; From X,Y axis on WORK AREA
        LD      L,0              ; To Hl reg.
        SRL     H
        RR      L
        SRL     H
        RR      L
        SRL     H
        RR      L
        LD      A,(WKX)
        ADD     A,L              ; Y=32+X
        LD      L,A
        LD      BC,1800H        ; VRAM start address
        ADD     HL,BC
        RET

WAIT:   LD      A,0              ;WAIT routine
WLP1:   INC     A
        LD      B,(IX+0)
        LD      B,(IX+0)
        LD      B,(IX+0)
        JR      NZ,WLP1
        RET

```

;----- data -----

```
WKX:    DB      10          ;X axis
WKY:    DB      10          ;Y axis
WKOLD:  DB      0           ;Character code on (X,Y)
WKXVAL: DB      0           ;X variable
WKYVAL: DB      0           ;Y variable
```

END

=====

6. CLOCK AND BATTERY-POWERED MEMORY

MSX2 uses a CLOCK-IC to for its timer function. Since this IC is battery-powered, it remains active even after MSX2 is turned off. MSX2 uses a small amount of RAM inside to set the PASSWORD or to set the screen mode at startup automatically, in addition to the CLOCK functions.

6.1 CLOCK-IC Functions

This IC has the following three functions:

* CLOCK function

- set/read the settings of "year, month, day, day of week, hour, minute, second"
- for the expression of time, 24-hour clock/12-hour clock available
- for months, months of 31 days and of 30 days are distinguished (leap years are also recognised)

* Alarm function

- when the time for alarm is set, CLOCK generates signals at that time.
- the time for alarm is set as "XXday XXhour XXminute".

* Battery-powered memory function

- has 26 sets of 4-bit memory, and can be battery-powered.
- MSX2 stores the following data in this memory:
 1. adjustment value of CRT display width and height
 2. initial values of SCREEN, WIDTH, colour
 3. BEEP tone and volume
 4. title screen colour
 5. country code
 6. password --+
 7. BASIC prompt | (one of 6 to 8)
 8. title caption --+

6.2 Structure of the CLOCK-IC

The CLOCK-IC has four blocks inside as shown in Figure 5.25. Each block consists of 13 sets of 4-bit registers, which are specified by addresses from 0 to 12. In addition, it has three 4-bit registers for selecting the block or controlling functions; they are specified by the addresses from 13 to 15.

The registers inside the block (#0 to #12) and the MODE register (#13) can be read from and written to. The TEST register (#14) and RESET register (#15) can only be written to.

Figure 5.25 Clock IC structure

	BLOCK 0 (CLOCK)	BLOCK 1 (ALARM)	BLOCK 2 (RAM-1)	BLOCK 2 (RAM-2)
0	| Seconds (the | 1st decimal | place) |	| |	| |	| |
1	| Seconds (the | 2nd decimal | place) |	| |	| |	| |
.	| |	| |	| Any data |	| Any data |
.				
.				
.				
12	| Year (the | 2nd decimal | place) |	| |	| |	| |
	:<-- 4 bits -->:	:<-- 4 bits -->:	:<-- 4 bits -->:	:<-- 4 bits -->:
13	| MODE |			
14	| TEST |	| Write only |		
15	| RESET |			
	:<-- 4 bits -->:			

6.3 MODE Register Functions

The MODE register has the following 3 functions:

* Selecting block

To read from or write to registers from #0 to #12, select the block to be used and then access the objective address. The 2 low order bits of the MODE register are used to select the block.

Registers from #13 to #15 are accessible whichever block is selected.

* Alarm output ON/OFF

To switch the alarm input ON/OFF, use bit 2 of the MODE register. Since the standard MSX2 does not support the alarm, modifying this bit causes nothing to happen in general.

* Terminating CLOCK count

By writing "0" in bit 3 of the MODE register, the count in seconds is stopped (the stages before the seconds are not stopped) and the clock function is terminated. By writing "1" in bit 3, the count is resumed.

Figure 5.26 MODE register functions

B3	B2	B1	B0	
TE	AE	M1	M0	MODE register (#13)
|	|	|	|	00: select block 0
|	|	|	|	01: select block 1
|	|	+	----	10: select block 2
|	|	|	|	11: select block 3
|	|	+	-----	0: alarm output OFF
|	|	|	|	1: alarm output ON
|	+	-----	----	0: CLOCK count stop (in seconds)
|	|	|	|	1: CLOCK count start

6.4 TEST Register functions

The TEST register (#14) is used to increment the upper counter quickly and to confirm that date and time carries are done correctly. Setting "1" in each bit of the register, the pulse of 2^{14} (=16384) [Hz] is directly set in day, hour, minute, and second counters.

Figure 5.27 TEST register functions

B3	B2	B1	B0	
T3	T2	T1	T0	TEST register (#14)
|	Hours	Minutes	Seconds	..... the location for the pulse to be placed
Day				

6.5 RESET Register Functions

The RESET register (#15) has the following functions:

* Resetting the alarm

Setting "1" in bit 0 causes all alarm registers to be reset to 0.

* Setting the seconds

Setting "1" in bit 1 causes the stage before the seconds to be reset. Use this function to set the seconds correctly.

* Clock pulse ON/OFF

Setting "1" in bit 2 turns the 16Hz clock pulse output ON, and setting "0" in bit 3 turns the 1Hz clock pulse output ON. Note that both are not supported by the MSX2 standard.

Figure 5.28 RESET register function

B3	B2	B1	B0	
-----	-----	-----	-----	
| C1 |	C16|	CR |	AR |	RESET register (#15)
-----	-----	-----	-----	
|	|	|	+	When "1", all alarm registers are reset
|	|	+	+	When "1", fractions smaller than a second are reset
|	+	+	+	When "0", 16[Hz] clock pulse is ON
+	+	+	+	When "0", 1[Hz] clock pulse is ON

6.6 Setting the Clock and Alarm

* Setting date and time

Block 0 is used to set the clock. Selecting block 0 in the MODE register and writing data in the objective register causes the date and the time to be set. The current time is acquired by reading the contents of the register. See Figure 5.29 for the meaning of the register and its address.

Block 1 is used to set the alarm. Note that the time of the alarm can be set only in days, hours, and minutes. Nothing happens, in general, when the time of the clock meets the time of the alarm.

In the clock, the year is represented by 2 digits (registers #11 and #12). In MSX-BASIC, the 2 low order digits of the year is represented by adding the offset 80 to this value. For example, after setting register #11 to 0 and register #12 to 0, the year would be 80, as "80/XX/XX", when the date is read by using the GET DATE instruction of BASIC.

The day of the week is represented by 0 to 6. This is only a mod 7 counter which is renewed along with the date, and the correspondence between the actual day of the week and the number value 0 to 6 is not defined.

Figure 5.29 Setting the CLOCK and ALARM

block 0 : CLOCK					
		B3	B2	B1	B0
0	Seconds (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
1	Seconds (the 2nd decimal place)	.	X	X	X
2	Minutes (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
3	Minutes (the 2nd decimal place)	.	X	X	X
4	Hours (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
5	Hours (the 2nd decimal place)	.	.	X	X
6	Day of the week	.	X	X	X
7	Day (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
8	Day (the 2nd decimal place)	.	.	X	X
9	Month (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
10	Month (the 2nd decimal place)	.	.	.	X
11	Year (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
12	Year (the 2nd decimal place)	X	X	X	X
block 1 : ALARM					
		B3	B2	B1	B0
0		.	.	.	.
1		.	.	.	.
2	Minutes (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
3	Minutes (the 2nd decimal place)	.	X	X	X

4	Hours (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
5	Hours (the 2nd decimal place)	.	.	X	X
6	Day of the week	.	X	X	X
7	Day (the 1st decimal place)	X	X	X	X
8	Day (the 2nd decimal place)	.	.	X	X
9		.	.	.	.
10	12 or 24 hours	.	.	.	X
11	Leap year counter	.	.	X	X
12		.	.	.	.

Bits indicated by an "." are always 0 and cannot be modified.

* Selecting 12-hour clock/24-hour clock

Two clocks can be selected; one is a 24-hour clock which represents one o'clock in the afternoon as 13 o'clock, and the other is a 12-hour clock which represents it as 1 p.m. Register #10 is used to select between them. As shown in Figure 5.30, the 12-hour clock is selected when B0 is "0" and the 24-hour clock when B0 is "1".

Figure 5.30 Selecting 12-hour clock/24-hour clock

B3	B2	B1	B0	
.	.	.	B0	Register #10 (block 1)
				+--> 0: 12-hour clock
				1: 24-hour clock

Figure 5.31 Morning/afternoon flag for 12-hour clock

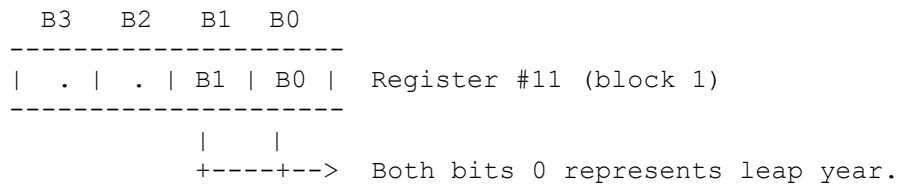
B3	B2	B1	B0	
.	.	B1	X	register #5 (block 0)
				+-----> 0: before noon

1: after noon

* Leap year counter

Register #11 of block 1 is a mod 4 counter which is renewed along with the count of the year. When the 2 low order bits of this register are 00H, that is considered as a leap year and 29 days are counted in February.

Figure 5.32 Leap year determination



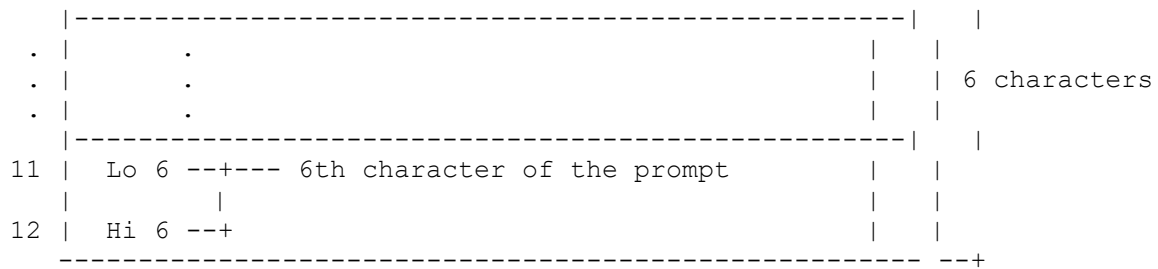
6.7 Contents of the Battery-powered Memory

Blocks 2 and 3 of the CLOCK-IC are used as the battery-powered 4-bit x 13 memory blocks. MSX2 uses this area as shown below.

* Contents of block 2

Figure 5.33 Contents of block 2

	B3	B2	B1	B0
0	ID			
1	Adjust X (-8 to +7)			
2	Adjust Y (-8 to +7)			
3			Interlace mode	Screen mode
4	WIDTH value (Lo)			
5	WIDTH value (Hi)			
6	Foreground color			
7	Background color			
8	Border color			
9	Cassette speed	Printer mode	Key click	Key ON/OFF
10	BEEP tone		BEEP volume	
11			Title colour	
12	Native code			



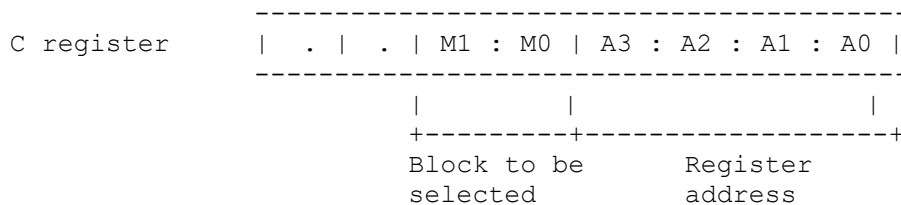
6.8 Access to the CLOCK-IC

The following BIOS routines are offered to access the clock and the battery-powered memory. Since these routines reside in SUB-ROM, they are called by using the inter-slot call.

* REDCLK (015FH/SUB) read CLOCK-IC data

Input: C <-- CLOCK-IC address (see Figure 5.35)
Output: A <-- data obtained (only 4 low order bits valid)
Function: reads CLOCK-IC register in the address specified by the C register and stores in the A register. Since the address specification includes the block selection information as shown in Figure 5.35, it is not necessary to set the MODE register and then read the objective register.

Figure 5.35 CLOCK-IC register specification method



* WRTCLK (01F9H/SUB) write CLOCK-IC data

Input: C <-- CLOCK-IC address (see Figure 5.35)
A <-- data to be written (4 low order bits)
Output: ---
Function: write the contents of the A register in the CLOCK-IC at the address specified by the C register. The address is specified in the format shown in Figure 5.35 as REDCLK.

List 5.10 shows an example of this BIOS routine.

List 5.10 Setting the prompt

```
=====
;*****
;
; List 5.10 set prompt message
;
```

```

;*****
;
WRTCLK: EQU    01F9H
EXTROM: EQU    015FH

        ORG     0B000H

;----- program start -----      ;Note: Set prompt message for BASIC.

START:  LD      C,00110000B        ;address data
        LD      A,2                ;ID := prompt mode
        CALL    WRTRAM             ;write to back-up RAM

        LD      B,6                ;loop counter
        LD      HL,STRING          ;prompt data
L01:    LD      A,(HL)             ;read string data
        AND     0FH                ;A := hi 4 bit
        INC     C                  ;increment address
        CALL    WRTRAM             ;write data to back-up RAM
        LD      A,(HL)
        RRCA
        RRCA
        RRCA
        RRCA
        AND     0FH
        INC     C                  ;increment address
        CALL    WRTRAM             ;write low 4 bits
        INC     HL
        DJNZ    L01
        RET

;----- write data to back-up RAM -----

WRTRAM: PUSH    HL
        PUSH    BC
        LD      IX,WRTCLK
        CALL    EXTROM             ;use interslot call
        POP     BC
        POP     HL
        RET

;----- string data -----

STRING: DB      'Ready?'

        END

```

```

=====

```

MSX2 TECHNICAL HANDBOOK

Edited by: ASCII Systems Division
Published by: ASCII Corporation - JAPAN
First edition: March 1987

Text file typed by: Nestor Soriano (Konami Man) - SPAIN
October 1997

Changes from the original:

- In description of SUBROM routine, comment "see page 352" has been changed to "see appendix 2..."
- In description of SLTATR and SLTWRK work areas, expressions for calculate the concrete work area for a given slot and page have been added.
- In the first line after beginning of section 7.2.3, "The following routines..." has been corrected to "The following addresses..."
- In Figure 5.52, indication of F380H address was placed in the middle of the user's area. It has been moved to the beginning of system work.

==

CHAPTER 5 - ACCESS TO PERIPHERALS THROUGH BIOS (Part 7)

7. SLOTS AND CARTRIDGES

The CPU (Z80) used in the MSX can access an address space of only 64K bytes (0000H to FFFFH). MSX is set up to access an effective space of 1M bytes. This is accomplished by using "slots", which allocate more than one memory byte or device to the same address.

This chapter introduces the use of the slot and information necessary to connect the cartridge software or the new device to MSX via the slot.

7.1 Slots

A slot is an interface to effectively use a large address space, and to interface any memory or devices connected to the MSX address bus installed via the slot. The BASIC ROM inside the machine or RAM at MSX-DOS mode are not exceptions. The place at which the cartridge software is installed is also one of the slots. The following descriptions introduce how the software and the devices are connected to the slot.

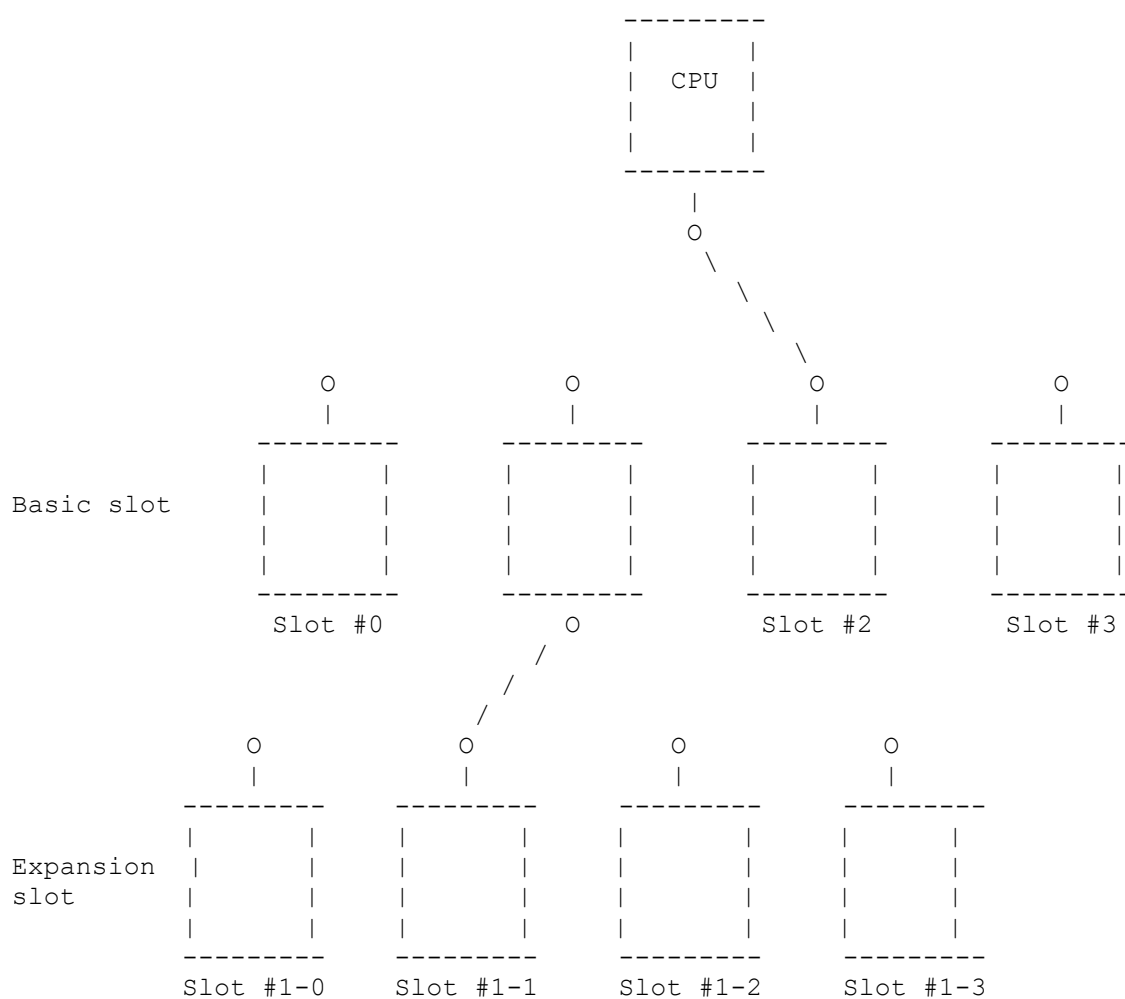
7.1.1 Basic slot and expansion slot

The slot is either a basic slot or a expansion slot. A "basic slot" is a slot directly connected to the CPU address bus, as shown in Figure 5.36. The standard MSX machine can have up to four basic slots. The basic slot can be

expanded up to four slots by connecting a slot expansion box (in some cases, the expansion is already done inside the machine), and is called "expansion slots". When each of four basic slots is expanded to four expansion slots, the maximum number of slots is 16. If you multiply 16 slots x 64K bytes you will get 1M bytes of accessible address space.

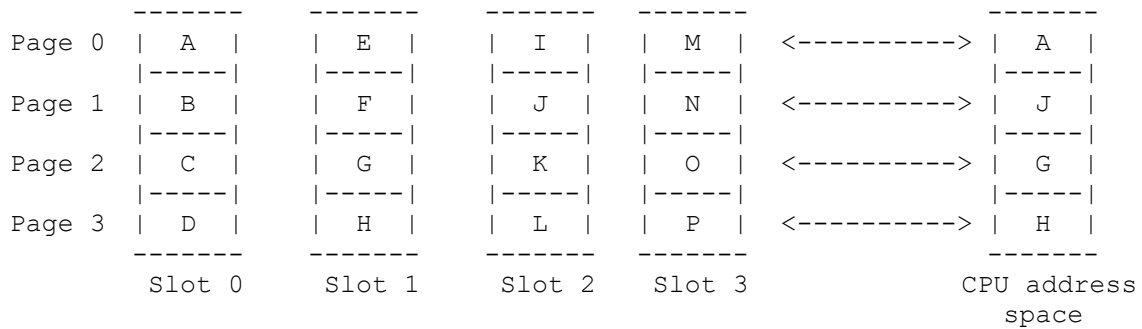
Note that the system itself cannot be started when expansion slot boxes are connected to the expansion slot. So the user should only connect expansion slot boxes to the basic slots. (Though the slot for the standard MSX cartridge is always a basic slot, in some cases the connector for the optional hardware of each machine might be connected to the expansion slot).

Figure 5.36 Basic slot and expansion slot



Each slot has 64K bytes from 0000H to FFFFH of address space and MSX manages it by dividing it into four "pages" of 16K bytes each. The CPU can select and access any slot for each page, and, as shown in Figure 5.37, it is possible to select and combine portions of several slots. Note that a pages with a given page number cannot be assigned to a page with a different page number (that is, page n of each slot is also page n to the CPU).

Figure 5.37 Example of the page selection



7.1.2 Selecting slots

Selecting slots is different for the basic slot than for the expansion slot.

For basic slots, it is done through the I/O port at A8H (see Figure 5.38), and for expansion slots, it is done through the "expansion slot selection register (FFFFH)" of the installed expansion slot (see Figure 5.39). It is not recommended to change them directly, so the user should not switch the slots without careful planning. When the program switches the slot of the page in which it resides, the action is not always predictable. To call the program in another slot, use the inter-slot call described in the next section.

Figure 5.38 Selecting the basic slot

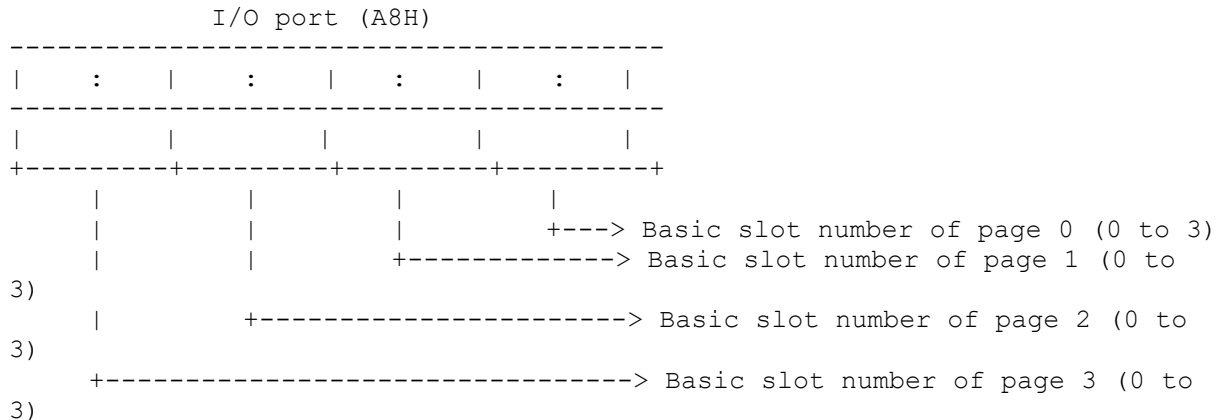
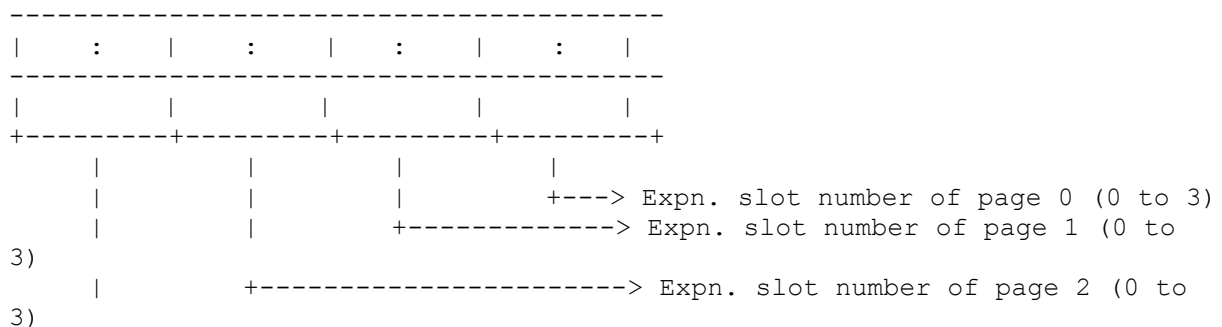


Figure 5.39 Selecting the expansion slot

Expansion slot selection (FFFFH in expansion slot)



+-----> Expn. slot number of page 3 (0 to 3)

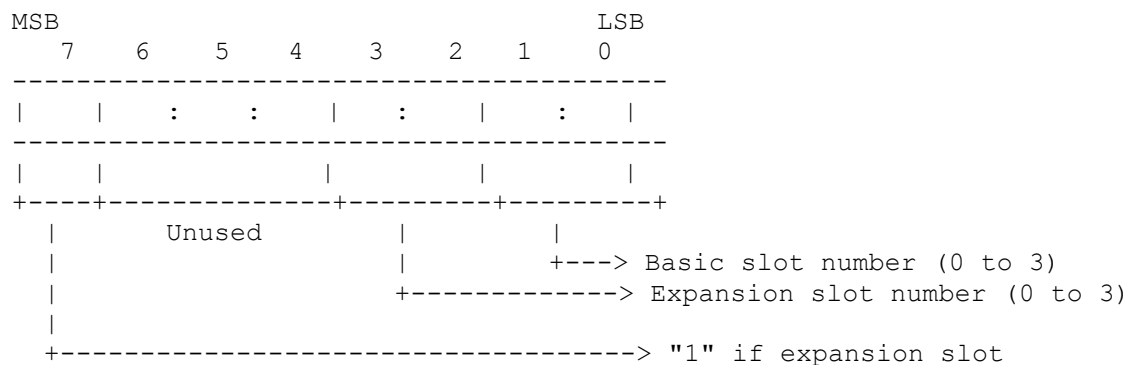
Note: to identify the kind of slot, in the case of the expansion slot, the value written is read as the reversed value. The value of this register is the same inside the basic slot.

The slot where MAIN-ROM or RAM is installed and the slot number of the slot for the cartridge depend on the machine. Refer to the appropriate manual to see how slots are used on your MSX. But the MSX standard guarantees the normal operation no matter what is in the slots, so it is not necessary to worry about the slot use, as long as you are following the standard.

In some cases, however, it is required to know the slot number of the specified software. For example, in the previous version, BASIC MAIN-ROM was placed in basic slot #0 or in expansion slot #0-0 when basic slot #0 was expanded. So when MSX1 is upgraded to have the MSX2 functions by installing MSX-VIDEO and BASIC ver 2.0 ROM, the MAIN ROM should be placed somewhere other than slot #0 or slot #0-0. The slot where MSX2 SUB-ROM resides depends on the machine, but the information about the slot where BASIC interpreter ROM resides can be obtained by referring to the work area described below (the slot information can be obtained in the format shown in Figure 5.40). When calling BIOS from DOS, examine the slot of MAIN-ROM in this way.

* EXPTBL (FCC1H, 1) the slot of MAIN-ROM
 * EXBRSA (FAF8H, 1) the slot of SUB-ROM (0 for MSX1)

Figure 5.40 Format for the slot



When a given routine resides over page 1 and page 2 (4000H to BFFFH), the same slot for page 2 as the one for page 1 should be selected when the jump from page 1 to page 2 occurs within this routine. To do this, you need to examine the slot, in page 1, where the program resides and then to switch page 2 to that slot. To obtain information about the slot where the program currently is, execute the program shown in List 5.11.

List 5.11 Program to know the current slot

```
=====
;*****
; List 5.11 to know where you are
```

```

;*****
;      Suppose your program cartridge is 32K bytes
;      long (4000h..0BFFFH). You set the ID at 4000H
;      and 4001H and the execution start address within
;      page 1 (4000h..7FFFH), MSX passes control
;      to this address so the part which resides in
;      page 2 is not yet enabled at this point. You
;      have to know where you are (in what primary
;      slot, in what secondary slot) and enable the
;      part at page 2. Below is the sample program
;      to do this.
;
ENASLT EQU    0024H          ;enable slot
RSLREG EQU    0138H          ;read primary slot select register
EXPTBL EQU    0FCC1H          ;slot is expanded or not

;----- program start -----

ENAP2:
    CALL    RSLREG          ;read primary slot #
    RRCA
    RRCA                    ;move it to bit 0,1 of [Acc]
    AND     00000011B
    LD      C,A
    LD      B,0
    LD      HL,EXPTBL        ;see if this slot is expanded or not
    ADD     HL,BC
    LD      C,A              ;save primary slot #
    LD      A,(HL)           ;See if the slot is expanded or not
    AND     80H
    OR      C                ;set MSB if so
    LD      C,A              ;save it to [C]
    INC     HL                ;Point to SLTTBL entry
    INC     HL
    INC     HL
    INC     HL
    LD      A,(HL)           ;Get what is currently output
                                ;to expansion slot register
    AND     00001100B
    OR      C                ;Finally form slot address
    LD      H,80H
    JP      ENASLT           ;enable page 2

    END

```

=====

7.2 Inter-slot Calls (calls between slots)

As described above, programs reside in different slots, so a program not in the current slot might be needed in some cases. The most common cases are listed below:

- (1) calling BIOS in MAIN-ROM from MSX-DOS level
- (2) calling BIOS in SUB-ROM from BASIC level (only the case of MSX2)
- (3) calling BIOS in MAIN-ROM or SUB-ROM from cartridge software

In doing such calls, to switch slots easily and safely, there is a group of BIOS routines called the inter-slot calls, which can be called from the

routine in any slot. This section describes the use of the inter-slot calls.

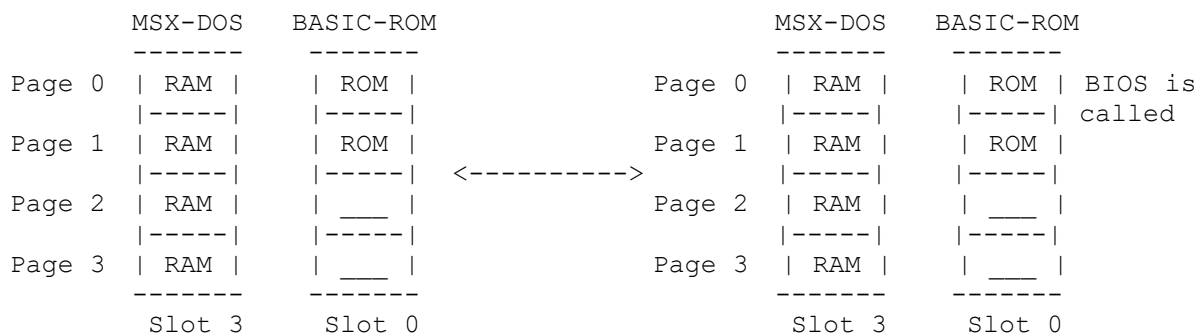
7.2.1 Inter-slot call operation

When calling BIOS in MAIN-ROM from MSX-DOS, the state of slots changes as described below.

- (1) Since, in the initial MSX-DOS mode, RAM is selected all over 64K address space, BASIC-ROM cannot be accessible in this state (see Figure 5.41-a).
- (2) To call BIOS in ROM, switch page 0 to MAIN-ROM or BASIC to access. Then, call BIOS (see Figure 5.41-b).
- (3) Restore the original status after BIOS operations and return to the initial address.

Figure 5.41 Inter-slot call

a) When using MSX-DOS



This is easily done when the program resides in other than page 0, but there can be some problem when the calling program resides in page 0 which is the same page as BIOS of the called program. Care is needed to prevent the program from disappearing itself and generating unpredictable results when it is switched to page 0. The inter-slot call settles this problem by jumping to page 3 temporarily and then switching slots.

7.2.2 Inter-slot call use

There are several ways to execute inter-slot calls, as described below. They are included in MAIN-ROM as BIOS calls. Some of them are offered in MSX-DOS, so inter-slot calls can be executed under MSX-DOS.

- (1) Inter-slot call routines in BIOS

* RDSLT (000CH/MAIN) read value at specified address of
specified slot

Input: A register <-- slot specification
HL register <-- address to be read at
Output: A register <-- value which has been read out
Use: AF, BC, DE
Function: reads the value at the specified address of the specified
slot and stores it in the A register. The slot specification
is done using the A register in the form shown in Figure
5.40. At this point, when the objective slot is the basic
slot, set "0" to the 6 high order bits and define the slot
#0 to #3 using the 2 low order bits. When specifying the
expansion slot, specify the basic slot by bit 0 and bit 1

and
the expansion slot by bit 2 and bit 3 and set bit 7 to "1".

* WRSLT (0014H/MAIN) write value at specified address of
specified slot

Input: A register <-- slot specification (same format as in
Figure 5.40)
HL register <-- address to be written in
E register <-- data to be written
Output: ---
Use: AF, BC, D
Function: writes E register value in the address specified by HL
register of the slot specified by the A register (the
specification format is the same as in Figure 5.40).

* CALSLT (001CH/MAIN) call specified address of specified
slot

Input: 8 high order bits of IY register <-- slot
(same format as in Figure 5.40)
IX register <-- address to be called
Output: depends on the result of the called program
Use: depends on the result of the called program
Function: calls the routine at the address specified by IX register
of the slot specified by the 8 high order bits of IY
register
(the specification format is the same as in Figure 5.40).

* ENASLT (0024H/MAIN) swith slots

Input: A register <-- slot (same format as in Figure 5.40)
HL register <-- specifies the page to switch the slot by
2 high order bits
Output: ---
Use: all
Function: switches the page specified by the 2 high order bits of the
HL register to the slot specified by the A register.

* CALLF (0030H/MAIN) call specified address of specified
slot

Input: specifies the slot and the address in the inline parameter

format

Output: depends on the result of the called program

Use: depends on the result of the called program

Function: calls the specified address of the specified slot, but, different from CALSLT described above, the slot and the address is specified in the inline parameter format, as described below. That is, parameters are passed by one byte (same format as RDSLT) to specify that the slot is placed just after the instruction which calls CALLF and the next two bytes to specify the address are placed. "CALL 0030H" may be replaced by the RST (restart) instruction, "RST 30H". In this case, the inter-slot call is done in 4 bytes.

Figure 5.42 Example of the inter-slot call execution

```

-----
|          RST      30H           ;interslot call          |
|          DB      00000000B      ;select slot#0         |
|          DW      006CH          ;call address = 006CH    |
|-----|

```

* RSLREG (0138H/MAIN) read the basic slot selection register

Input: ---

Output: A register <-- value which has been read

Use: ---

Function: reads the contents of the basic slot selection register and stores it in the A register.

* WSLREG (013BH/MAIN) write in the basic slot selection register

Input: A register <-- value to be written

Output: ---

Use: ---

Function: writes the A register value in the basic slot selection register and selects the slot.

* SUBROM (015CH/MAIN) call specified address in SUB-ROM

Input: IX register <-- address to be called, PUSH IX
(see Appendix 2, SUB-ROM list)

Output: depends on the result of the called program

Use: background register and IX, IY registers are reserved

Function: This is the routine to call BASIC SUB-ROM especially. The slot where SUB-ROM resides is automatically examined. Normally, EXTROM, described below, is used.

* EXTROM (015FH/MAIN) call specified address in SUB-ROM

Input: IX register <-- address to be called

Output: depends on the result of the called program

Use: background register and IY register are reserved

Function: This is the routine to call BASIC SUB-ROM. The difference between this and SUB-ROM above is the point whether the IX register value is pushed.

(2) Inter-slot call in MSX-DOS

In MSX-DOS, five kinds of inter-slot calls are offered and their entry addresses are defined at jump vectors of MSX-DOS. These are the same as ones in BIOS, so refer to BIOS above for their functions or use. Note that these routines should not be used when calling routines in SUB-ROM from MSX-DOS.

- * RDSLT (000CH) read value at specified address of specified slot
- * WRSLT (0014H) write value at specified address of specified slot
- * CALSLT (001CH) call specified address of specified slot
- * ENASLT (0024H) make specified slot available
- * CALLF (0030H) call specified address of specified slot

List 5.12 Calling BIOS from MSX-DOS

```
=====
;*****
; List 5.12 How to use BIOS from MSX-DOS.
;*****
;
CALSLT EQU 001CH ;Inter slot call
EXBRSA EQU 0FAF0H ;Slot address of BIOS (main) ROM
EXPTBL EQU 0FCC1H ;Slot address of extended ROM
;
; LD IY, (EXPTBL-1) ;Load slot address of the BIOS ROM
; ;in high byte of IY
; LD IX, address of the BIOS jump table
; CALL CALSLT
;
;----- Sample program to set text mode -----

INITXT EQU 006CH
LINL40 EQU 0F3AEH
;
TOTEXT: LD B, 40
        LD A, (EXBRSA) ;slot address of SUB-ROM
        OR A ;0 if MSX1
        JR Z, TO40
        LD B, 80

TO40: LD (LINL40), B ;set width into work area
      LD IX, INITXT
      LD IY, (EXPTBL-1) ;get expanded slot status to IYH
      CALL CALSLT ;perform an inter-slot call
      EI ;because CALSLT do DI
      RET

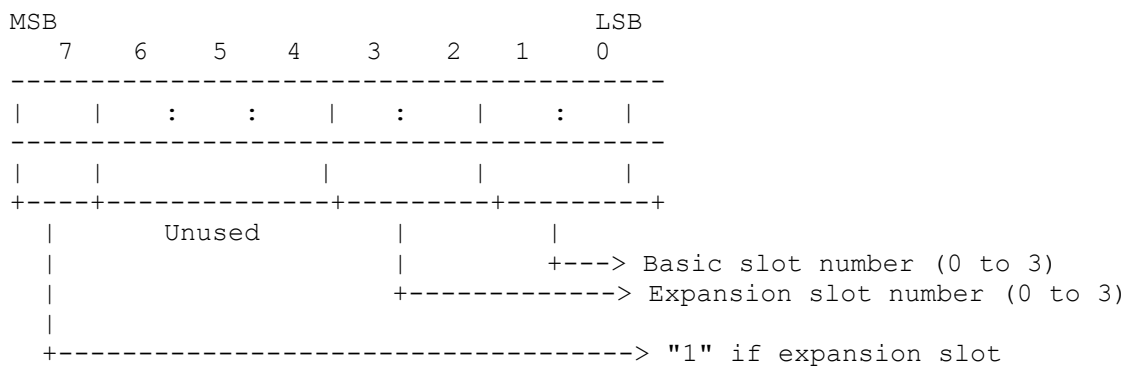
      END
=====
```

7.2.3 Work area to obtain the slot status

The following addresses involve the slot work area.

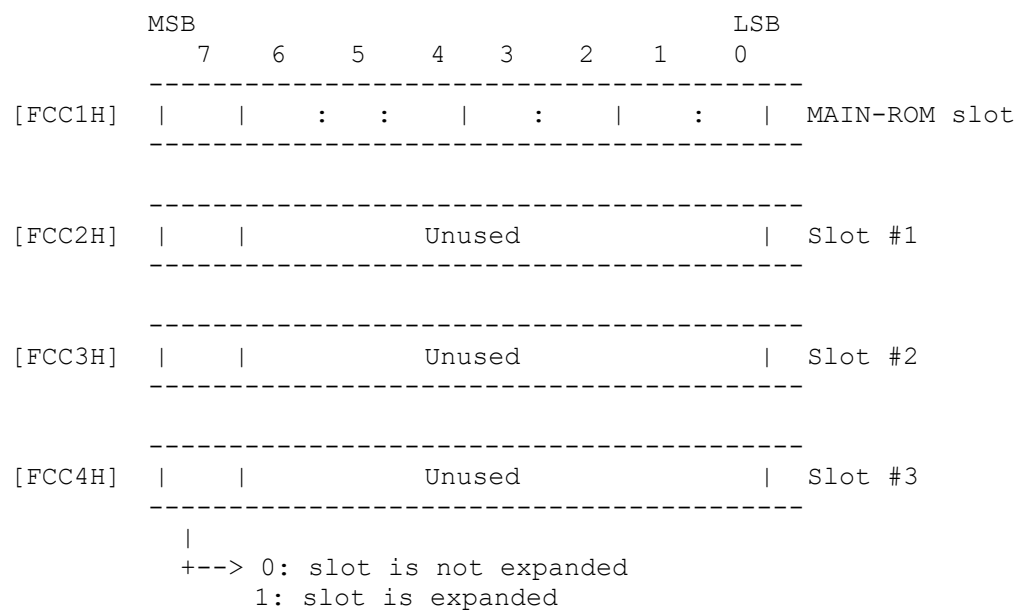
* EXBRSA (FAF8H, 1) SUB-ROM slot

Figure 5.43 SUB-ROM slot



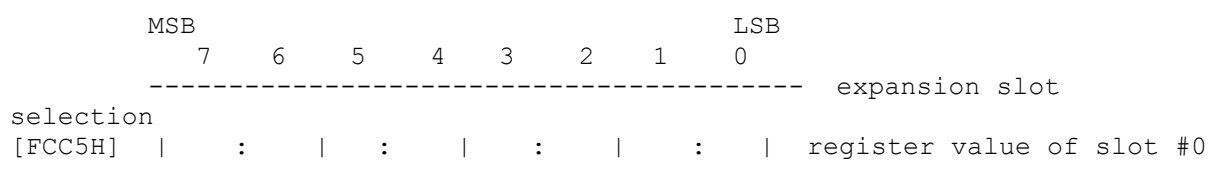
* EXPTBL (FCC1H, 4) whether the basic slot is expanded or not

Figure 5.44 Selecting the basic slot



* SLTTBL (FCC5H, 4) preservation area for the expansion
slot selection register value

Figure 5.45 Selecting the expansion slot



```

----- expansion slot
selection
[FCC6H] | : | : | : | : | register value of slot #1
-----

----- expansion slot
selection
[FCC7H] | : | : | : | : | register value of slot #2
-----

----- expansion slot
selection
[FCC8H] | : | : | : | : | register value of slot #3
-----
| | | | |
+-----+
| | | | |
| | | | | +----> exp. slot num. for page 0
| | | | | +-----> exp. slot num. for page 1
| | | | | +-----> exp. slot num. for page
2
3 +-----> exp. slot num. for page

* SLTATR (FCC9H, 64) ..... test for existence of application in each
slot/page

```

Figure 5.46 Test for existence of application

```

-----
[FCC9H] | | | | Unused | Slot #0-0, page 0
|-----+-----+-----+-----|
[FCCA H] | | | | Unused | Slot #0-0, page 1
|-----+-----+-----+-----|
| | | | |
. . . .
. . . .
. . . .
| | | | |
|-----+-----+-----+-----|
[FD08H] | | | | Unused | Slot #3-3, page 3
-----
| | |
| | | +--> Routine to process expanded statements 1:yes
0:no | +-----> Routine to process expansion device
1:yes 0:no +-----> BASIC text 1:yes 0:no

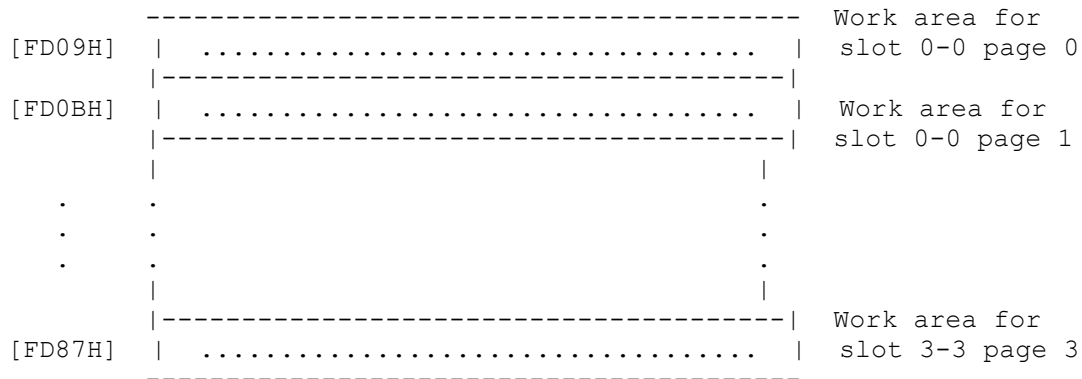
```

The concrete work area for a given slot and page can be obtained with the following expression:

SLTATR address = FCC9H + 16*basic slot + 4*expansion slot + page

* SLTWRK (FD09H, 128) work area for application

Figure 5.47 Work area for application



The concrete work area for a given slot and page can be obtained with the following expression:

$$\text{SLTWRK address} = \text{FD09H} + 32 * \text{basic slot} + 8 * \text{expansion slot} + 2 * \text{page}$$

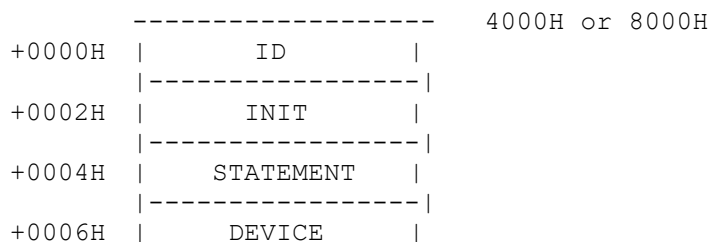
7.3 Developing Cartridge Software

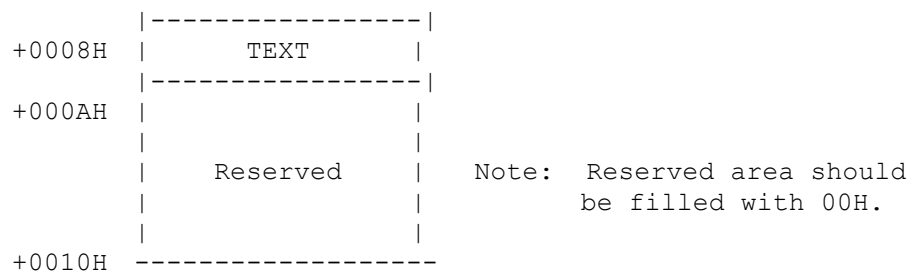
MSX machines usually have at least one external slot and the hardware to be put there is called a "cartridge". There are cartridges such as the ROM cartridges for application programs or games, input-output device cartridges for a disk or RS-232 interface, RAM expansion cartridges for expanding RAM, and slot expansion cartridges for expanding slots. These cartridges make the MSX easy to upgrade. BASIC and assembly language programs can also be stored in ROM cartridge easily. This section describes how to develop cartridge software.

7.3.1 Cartridge header

MSX cartridges have a 16-byte common header and, when the system is reset, the cartridge is initialised by the information written in this header. For ROM cartridges of BASIC or assembly language programs, they can be automatically started by using the information written in the header. Figure 5.48 shows the cartridge header configuration.

Figure 5.48 Program cartridge header





* ID

In the case of ROM cartridges, these two bytes have codes "AB" (41H, 42H). For SUB-ROM cartridges, the ID is "CD".

* INIT

When the cartridge is made to initialise the work area or I/O, these two bytes are the addresses for the initialization routine; otherwise 0000H is assumed. After instructions such as getting the work area in the initialization routine are placed, end with "RET". All registers except the SP register may be destroyed. For assembly language programs, such as games, which loop within the cartridge, it is possible to execute the object program from here.

* STATEMENT

When the cartridge is made to expand the CALL statement, these two bytes are the address for the statement expansion routine; otherwise 0000H is assumed.

If so, the statement expansion routine should reside at 4000H to 7FFFH.

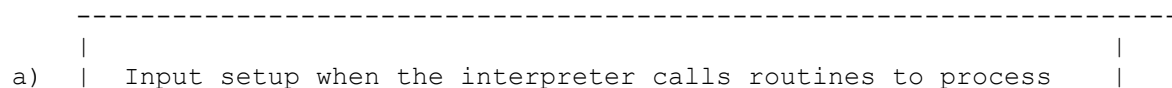
The CALL statement is described in the following format:

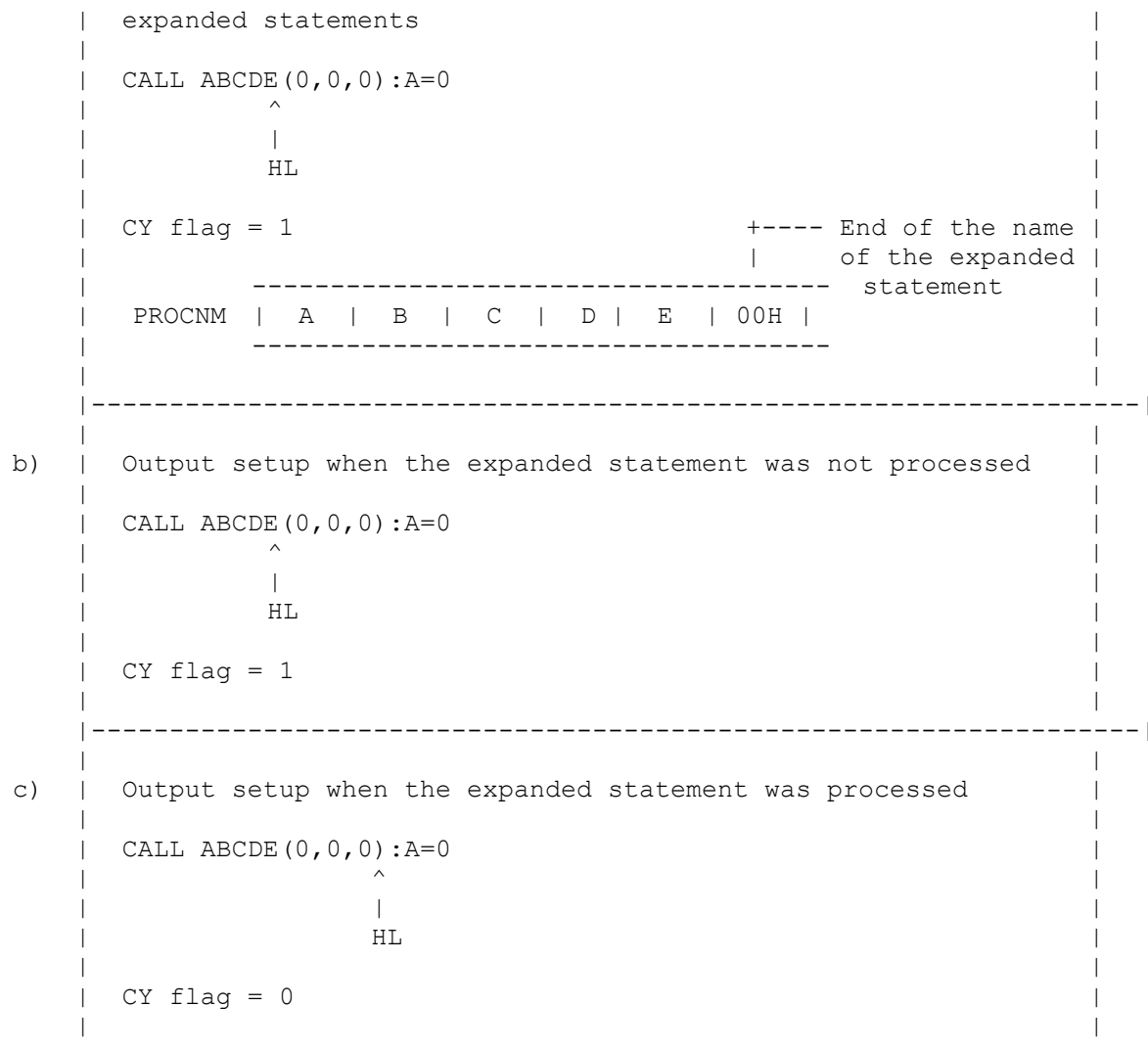
```
CALL <expression statement name> [(<argument>[, <argument>...])]
```

The expression statement name can have up to 15 characters. As an abbreviation for CALL, "_" (underscore) is available.

When the BASIC interpreter finds a CALL statement, it puts the expansion statement name in PROCNM (FD89H, 16) in the work area and passes the control to cartridges, whose contents of STATEMENT of the header is other than 0, in the order from the one with the smaller slot number. The HL register points to the text address next to the expansion statement name at this point (see Figure 5.49a).

Figure 5.49 Input-output of the operation routine of the expansion statement





To develop the statement expansion routine, recognise the name of the expansion statement written in PROCNM first, then return with setting "1" to the carry flag without modifying the HL register if the statement is not to be handled (see Figure 5.49b); otherwise, handle it properly and set the HL register (text pointer) to the next handled statement (where 00H or 3AH is placed usually), then return after setting "0" to the carry flag (see Figure 5.49c).

The BASIC interpreter determines the status of the carry flag whether a CALL statement has been executed, and, if not, calls the next cartridge. When all cartridges have not executed the statement (when the carry flag has been "1" all the time), it displays "SYNTAX ERROR". To test arguments of the statement, it is convenient to use "internal routines for the statement expansion" in section 4.4 of chapter 2.

* DEVICE

These two bytes are the addresses of the device expansion routine, when the cartridge does the device expansion (the input-output device expansion); otherwise 0000H is used. When doing the device expansion, the device expansion routine should be in 4000H-7FFFH. One cartridge can have up to 4 devices. The name of the expansion device should be less than 16 characters.

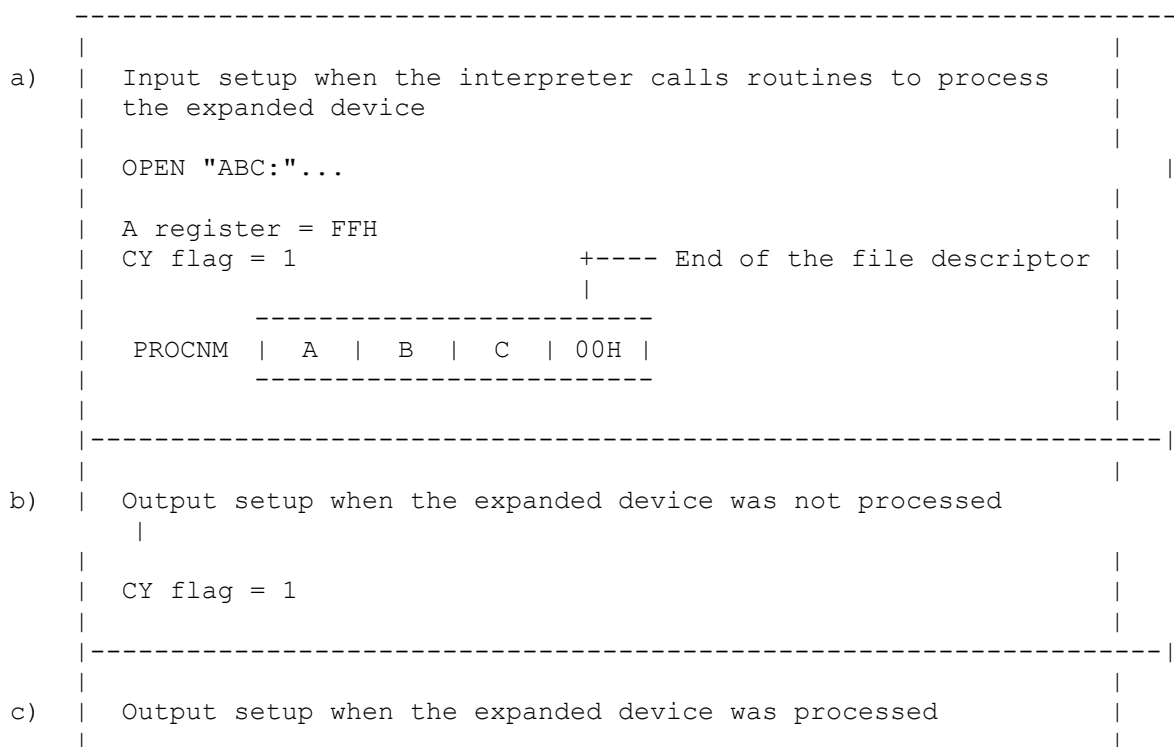
When the BASIC interpreter finds an undefined device, it stores that in PROCNM (FD89H, 16) and put FFH in the A register and passes control to the cartridge whose contents is not 0 in the order from the one with the smaller slot number (see Figure 5.50a).

When creating device expansion routines, identify the file descriptor of PROCNM first, and, when it is not for the device to be processed, return with setting 1 to the carry flag (see Figure 5.50b). Otherwise, process it and set the device ID (0-3) in the A register, then return with setting 0 to the carry flag (see Figure 5.50c).

The BASIC interpreter determines by the status of the carry flag whether or not it is processed, and, if not, call the next cartridge. When all cartridges were not processed (that is, when the carry flag was "1" all the time), "Bad file name ERROR" is displayed.

When the actual input-output operations are done, the BASIC interpreter sets the device ID (0-3) in DEVICE (FD99H) and sets the request to the device in the A register (see Table 5.6), then calls the device expansion routine. The device expansion routine should refer to it to handle the request.

Figure 5.50 Input-output to the device expansion routine



A register = device ID (0 to 3)	
CY flag = 0	

Table 5.6 Requests to the device

Register A	Request
0	OPEN
2	CLOSE
4	Random access
6	Sequential output
8	Sequential input
10	LOC function
12	LOF function
14	EOF function
16	FPOS function
18	Backup character

* TEXT

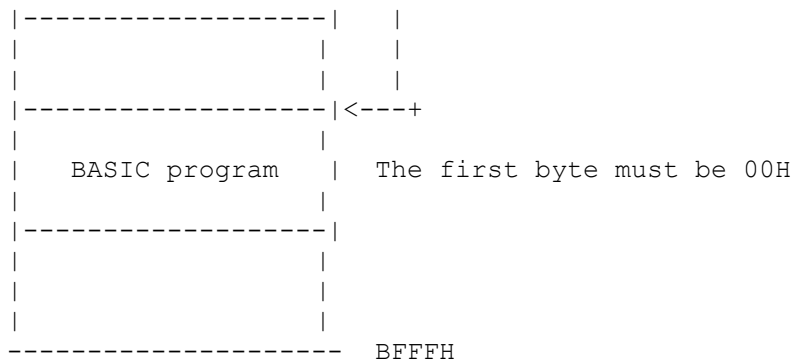
These two bytes are text pointers of the BASIC program, when the BASIC program in the cartridge would be auto-started (executed at reset); otherwise they are 0000H. The size of the program must be under 16K bytes, 8000H to BFFFFH.

The BASIC interpreter examines the contents of TEXT of the header after the initialization (INIT) and after the system is started. When they are not 0000H, it begins the execution from the address as BASIC text pointer (see Figure 5.51). BASIC programs should be stored in the form of the intermediate code and the beginning of it (the address pointed by TEXT) must be 00H, which indicates the beginning of the program.

The execution speed of the program will be improved when the objective line number of statements such as GOTO is the absolute address of the objective text pointer.

Figure 5.51 Executing BASIC program cartridge

	8000H
TEXT	



* How to place BASIC programs in ROM

1. Change the starting address of BASIC text to 8021H.

```
POKE &HF676,&H21 : POKE &HF677,&H80 : POKE &H8020,0 : NEW
```

Note: these statements must be in one line

2. Load the objective BASIC program.

```
LOAD "PROGRAM"
```

3. Create ID.

```
AD = &H8000
FOR I = 0 TO 31      ----+
  POKE AD + I, 0      | clears ID area
NEXT I              ----+
POKE &H8000,ASC("A")
POKE &H8001,ASC("B")
POKE &H8008,&H20
POKE &H8009,&H80
```

4. Put 8000H to BFFFH in ROM.

7.3.2 notes on the creation of the cartridge software

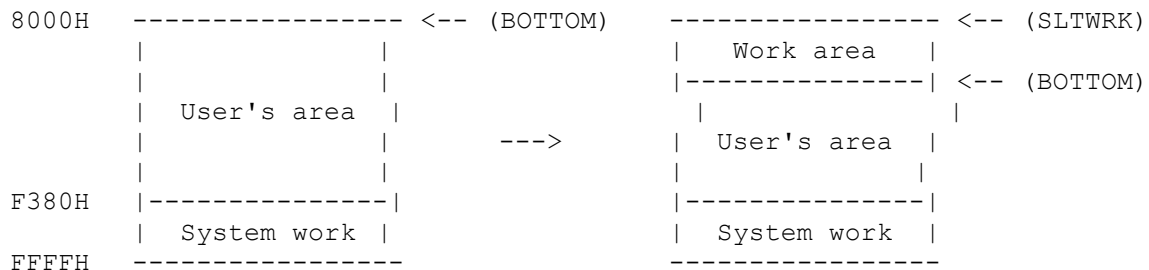
In programs not requiring software from other cartridges (stand-alone software such as games), the portion with the smaller address than the work area used by BIOS (F380H) can be used freely.

But in programs which are executed by using BASIC interpreter functions, the same area cannot be shared as the work area. To do this, there are three methods:

- (1) Place RAM on the cartridge itself (the safest and most reliable method).
- (2) When one or two bytes are needed for the work area, use two bytes corresponding to itself in SLTWRK (FD09H to ...) as the work area.

- (3) When more than three bytes are needed for the work area, allocates it from RAM used by BASIC. To do this, put the contents of BOTTOM (FC48H) to the area corresponding to SLTWRK (FD09H to ...), and increase the value of BOTTOM by the needed work area, then allocate it for the work area (see figure 5.52).

Figure 5.52 Allocating the work area



See the following list for the reference of (2) and (3).

List 5.13 Example of allocating the work area

```
=====
;*****
; List 5.13 subroutines to support slot
;           for ROM in 1 page
;*****

RSLGREG EQU    0138H
EXPTBL  EQU    0FCC1H
BOTTOM  EQU    0FC48H
HIMEM   EQU    0FC4AH
SLTWRK  EQU    0FD09H

;-----
;
; GTSL1  Get slot number of designated page
; Entry  None
; Return A      Slot address as follows
; Modify  Flags
;
;      FxxxSSPP
;      |  |||
;      |  ||+--+ primary slot # (0-3)
;      |  ++---- secondary slot # (0-3)
;      |          00 if not expanded
;      +-----  1 if secondary slot # specified
;
; This value can later be used as an input parameter
; for the RDSLT, WRSLT, CALSLT, ENASLT and 'RST 10H'
;
PUBLIC  GTSL10
GETSL10:
    PUSH    HL                ;Save registers
    PUSH    DE
    CALL    RSLREG            ;read primary slot #
    RRCA
```

```

RRCA
AND    11B                ; [A]=000000PP
LD     E,A
LD     D,0                ; [DE]=000000PP
LD     HL,EXPTBL
ADD    HL,DE              : [HL]=EXPTBL+000000PP
LD     E,A                ; [E]=000000PP
LD     A,(HL)             ; A=(EXPTBL+000000PP)
AND    80H                ; Use only MSB
JR     Z,GTSL1NOEXP
OR     E                  ; [A]=F00000PP
LD     E,A                ; save primary slot number
INC    HL                 ; point to SLTTBL entry
INC    HL
INC    HL
INC    HL
LD     A,(HL)             ; get current expansion slot register
RRCA
RRCA
AND    11B                ; [A] = 000000SS
RLCA
RLCA                      ; [A] = 0000SS00
OR     E                  ; [A] = F000SSPP
;
GTSL1END:
POP    DE
POP    HL
RET
GTSL1NOEXP:
LD     A,E                ; [A] = 000000PP
JR     GTSL1END

;-----
;
; ASLW1  Get address of slot work
; Entry  None
; Return HL      address of slot work
; Modify None
;
PUBLIC ASLW10
ASLW10:
PUSH    DE
PUSH    AF
CALL    GTSL10            ; [A] = F000SSPP, SS = 00 if not expanded
AND     00001111B        ; [A] = 0000SSPP
LD      L,A              : [A] = 0000SSPP
RLCA
RLCA
RLCA
RLCA                      ; [A] = SSPP0000
AND     00110000B        ; [A] = 00PP0000
OR      L                ; [A] = 00PPSSPP
AND     00111100B        ; [A] = 00PPSS00
OR      01B              ; [A] = 00PPSSBB
;
; Now, we have the sequence number for this cartridge
; as follows.
;
; 00PPSSBB
; |||||

```

```

;      |||++-- higher 2 bits of memory address (1)
;      ||+----- secondary slot # (0..3)
;      ++----- primary slot # (0..3)
;

```

```

RLCA          ;*=2
LD      E,A
LD      D,0    ;[DE] = 0PPSSBB0
LD      HL,SLTWRK
ADD     HL,DE
POP     AF
POP     DE
RET

```

```

;-----
;
;      RSLW1  Read slot work
;      Entry  None
;      Return HL      Content of slot work
;      Modify None
;

```

```

PUBLIC RSLW10
RSLW10:
PUSH    DE
CALL    ASLW10    ;[HL] = address of slot work
LD      E,(HL)
INC     HL
LD      D,(HL)    ;[DE] = (slot work)
EX      DE,HL     ;[HL] = (slot work)
POP     DE
RET

```

```

;-----
;
;      WSLW1  Write slot work
;      Entry  HL      Data to write
;      Return None
;      Modify None
;

```

```

PUBLIC WSLW10
WSLW10:
PUSH    DE
EX      DE,HL     ;[DE] = data to write
CALL    ASLW10    ;[HL] = address of slot work
LD      (HL),E
INC     HL
LD      (HL),D
EX      DE,HL     ;[HL] = data tow write
POP     DE
RET

```

```

;-----
;
; How to allocate work area for cartridges
; If the work area is greater than 2 bytes, make the SLTWRK point
; to the system variable BOTTOM (0FC48H), then update it by the
; amount of memory required. BOTTOM is set up by the initialization
; code to point to the bottom of equipped RAM.
;

```

```

;           Ex, if the program is at 4000H..7FFFH.
;
;           WORKB    allocate work area from BOTTOM
;                   (my slot work) <- (old BOTTOM)
;           Entry    HL        required memory size
;           Return    HL        start address of my work area = old BOTTOM
;                   0 if cannot allocate
;           Modify    None
;
;           PUBLIC    WORKB0
WORKB0:
    PUSH    DE
    PUSH    BC
    PUSH    AF

    EX      DE,HL          ;[DE] = Size
    LD      HL,(BOTTOM)    ;Get current RAM bottom
    CALL    WSLW10         ;Save BOTTOM to slot work
    PUSH    HL             ;Save old BOTTOM
    ADD     HL,DE           ;[HL] = (BOTTOM) + SIZE
    LD      A,H            ;Beyond 0DFFFH?
    CP      0E0H
    JR      NC,NOROOM      ;Yes, cannot allocate this much
    LD      (BOTTOM),HL    ;Update (BOTTOM)
    POP     HL             ;[HL] = old BOTTOM
WORKBEND:
    POP     AF
    POP     BC
    POP     DE
    RET

;
;           BOTTOM became greater than 0DFFFH, there is
;           no RAM to be allocated.
;
NOROOM:
    LD      HL,0
    CALL    WSLW10         ;Clear slot work
    JR      WORKBEND       ;Return 0 in [HL]

    END

```

* Hook

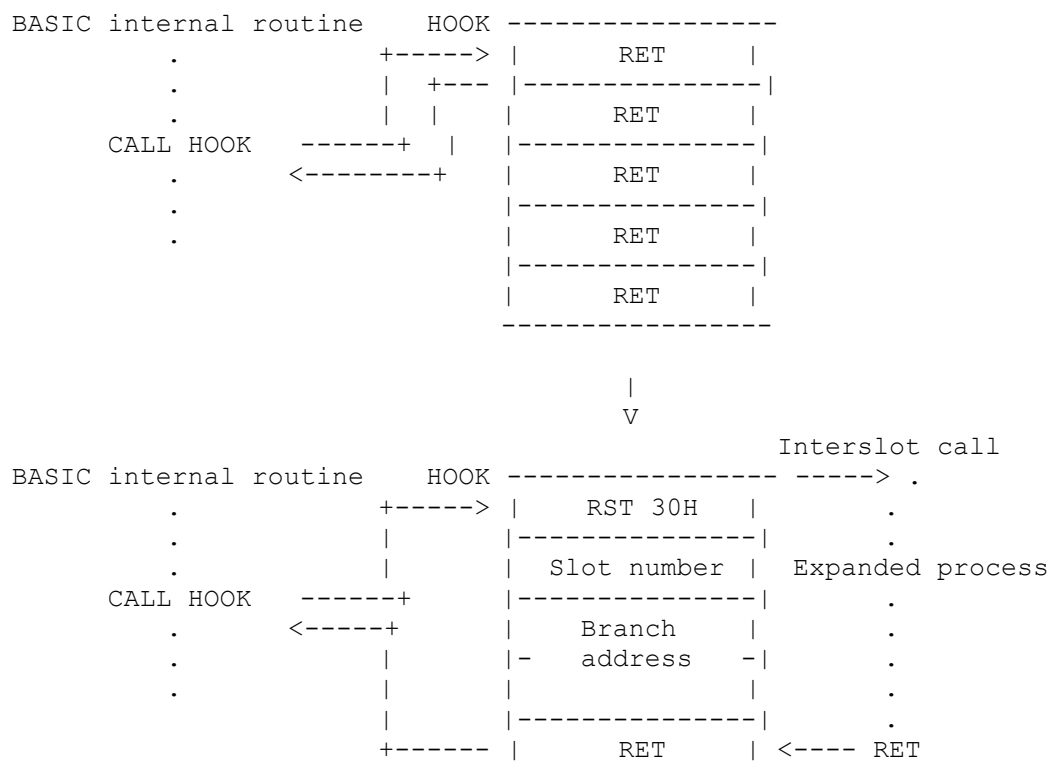
The area called "hook" is used for expanding BASIC functions in FD9AH to FFC9H of the work area used by MSX-BASIC. One hook has five bytes, which are normally "RET".

When MSX-BASIC does a certain operation (such as the one in the description about the hook of the work area), it calls this hook from there once. When the hook is "RET", the control returns immediately; but the function of BASIC can be expanded, when these five bytes were re-written to do the inter-slot call to the program inside the cartridge by the initialization routine (INIT) (see Figure 5.53).

List 5.14 shows an example of the program that the cartridge uses to hook

H.KEYI for the timer interrupt ptoess.

Figure 5.53 Setting the hook



List 5.14 Using the hook

```
=====
;*****
; List 5.14 Sample program to use HOOK
;*****
;
; Start-up initialize entry
; This program will be called when system initializing.
;
H.KEYI EQU 0FD9AH ; interrupt hook
EXPTBL EQU 0FCC1H ; slots expanded or not
PSLTRG EQU 0A8H ; I/O port address of primary slot register
EXT MYINT

INIT:
; <<< Please insert other initialization routine here, if you need.
;>>>

; Set interrupt entry

DI ; start of critical region

; Get old interrupt entry inter-slot call hook

LD DE,OLDINT ; get address of old int. hook saved area
LD HL,H.KEYI ; get address of interrupt entry hook
LD BC,5 ; lenght of hook is 5 bytes
```

```

        LDIR                      ; transfer

; Which slot address is this cartridge placed?

        CALL    GETMSLT          ; get my slot address

; Set new inter-slot call of interrupt entry

        LD      (H.KEYI+1),A      ; set slot address
        LD      A,0F7H           ; 'RST 30H' inter-slot call operation code
        LD      (H.KEYI),A       ; set new hook op-code
        LD      HL,INTENT        ; get our interrupt entry point
        LD      (H.KEYI+2),HL    ; set new interrupt entry point
        LD      A,0C9H          ; 'RET' operation code
        LD      (H.KEYI+4),A     ; set operation code of 'RET'
        EI                      ; end of critical region
        RET

;-----
; Which slot address is the cartridge placed?
; Entry: No
; Action: Compute my slot address
; Return: A = slot address
; Modify: Flag

GTMSLT:
        PUSH    BC               ; save environment
        PUSH    HL
        IN      A,(PSLTRG)       ; read primary slot register
        RRCA                    ; move it to bit 0,1 of A
        RRCA
        AND     00000011B        ; get bit 1,0
        LD      C,A             ; set primary slot No.
        LD      B,0
        LD      HL,EXPTBL       ; see if the slot is expanded or not
        ADD     HL,BC
        OR      (HL)            ; set MSB if so
        LD      C,A
        INC     HL              ; point to SLTTBL entry
        INC     HL
        INC     HL
        INC     HL
        LD      A,(HL)          ; get what is currently output to
                                ; expansion slot register

        AND     00001100B        ; get bits 3,2
        OR      C               ; finally form slot address

        POP     HL              ; restore environment
        POP     BC
        RET                    ; return to main

;----- Interrupt entry -----

INTENT:
        CALL    MYINT           ; call interrupt handler
        JP      OLDINT          ; go to old interrupt handler

;----- HOOK save area -----

```

END

=====

* Stack pointer initialisation

When MSX has an internal disk, sometimes the disk interface ROM does the initialisation before the cartridge does, depending on the slot location, and pushes down the stack pointer in the direction of the low order address to allocate the work area. In this case, software not using the disk should set the stack pointer again after the cartridge received control; otherwise, the stack area might be exhausted and a system crash might occur. Remember to initialise the stack pointer at the beginning of the program.

* Testing the preformance of the expansion slot

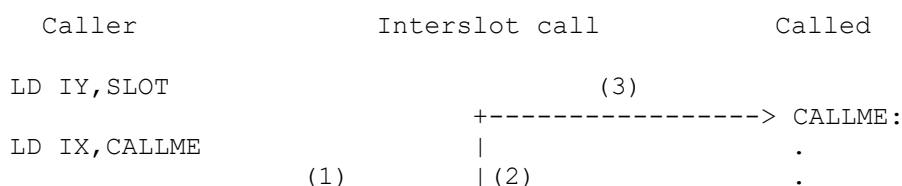
When general software in the market is put in the expansion slot or when RAM resides in the expansion slot, sometimes the application program do not work. Since most MSX2 machines use the expansion slot inside, problems may sometime result. Software to be sold in the market should be thoroughly tested in both cases that it is put in the expansion slot and that RAM resides in expansion slot.

Since the expansion slot register is placed in FFFFH, do not use it as if it were RAM. For example, setting the stack in FFFFH using "LD SP, 0" in the program causes machines using the expansion slot to go out of control.

* Notes on CALSLT use

Executing the inter-slot call in CALSLT and CALLF destroys the contents of IX, IY, and the background processing register. When returning from this routine, in MSX1 the interrupt is inhibited, but in MSX2 the state before the call is restored.

When using CALSLT or CALLF to execute the inter-slot call, the interrupt is always inhibited when calling the object program (see 2 in the figure below) and when returning to the calling program (see 6 below).



```

CALL CALSLT -----+
                                (4)
                                +-----+
                                | (5)
                                <-----+
                                RET

```

In MSX2, the state of the interrupt is reserved before and after the inter-slot call. That is, 3 in the figure is in the same state as 1, and 6 is in the same state as 4. Note when the called program executes "EI" or "DI".

MSX2 TECHNICAL HANDBOOK

Edited by: ASCII Systems Division
Published by: ASCII Corporation - JAPAN
First edition: March 1987

Text file typed by: Nestor Soriano (Konami Man) - SPAIN
October 1997

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 1:

- In description of ENASLT, the needed input in HL has been added.
- In description of GETYPR, the Input field has been added.
- In description of INITXT (MAIN), the reference to "INIPLT" has been corrected to "INIPLT".
- In description of SUBROM routine, the mark "*1" has been erased.
- In description of INITXT (SUB), the needed input in LINL40 has been added.
- Description of PHYDIO routine has been added.

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 2:

- In the explanation before Figure A.3, the indication about the excess 64 method has been added.
- In Figure A.3, in the third byte, "63rd power of 10" has been corrected to "-63rd power of 10".
- In the explanation before Figure A.3, the indication about the excess 64 method has been added.
- In Figure A.3, in the third byte, "63rd power of 10" has been corrected to "-63rd power of 10".

==

APPENDIX 1 - BIOS LISTING

This section lists the 126 BIOS entries available to the user.

There are two kinds of BIOS routines, the ones in MAIN-ROM and the ones in SUB-ROM. They each have different calling sequences which will be described later. The following is the entry notation.

Label name (address) *n
Function: descriptions and notes about the function
Input: parameters used by call
Output: parameters returned by call
Registers: registers which will be used (original contentes are lost)

The value of *n has the following meanings.

- *1 ... same as MSX1
- *2 ... call SUB-ROM internally in screen modes 5 to 8
- *3 ... always call SUB-ROM
- *4 ... do not call SUB-ROM while screen modes 4 to 8 are changed

Routines without "*n" are appended for MSX2.

MAIN-ROM

To call routines in MAIN-ROM, the CALL or RTS instruction is used as an ordinary subroutine call.

* RSTs

Among the following RSTs, RST 00H to RST 28H are used by the BASIC interpreter. RST 30H is used for inter-slot calls and RST 38H is used for hardware interrupts.

CHKRAM (0000H) *1

Function: tests RAM and sets RAM slot for the system
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

SYNCHR (0008H) *1

Funtcion: tests whether the character of [HL] is the specified character. If not, it generates SYNTAX ERROR, otherwise it goes to CHRGT (0010H).
Input: set the character to be tested in [HL] and the character to be compared next to RST instruction which calls this routine (inline parameter).

Example: LD HL, LETTER
 RST 08H
 DB "A"
 .
 .
 .
 LETTER: DB "B"

Output: HL is increased by one and A receives [HL]. When the tested character is numerical, the CY flag is set; the end of the statement (00H or 3AH) causes the Z flag to be set.

Registers: AF, HL

RDSLT (000CH) *1

Function: selects the slot corresponding to the value of A and reads one byte from the memory of the slot. When this routine is called, the interrupt is inhibited and remains inhibited even after execution ends.

Input: A for the slot number.

```

F000EEPP
-   ----
|   ||+----- Basic slot number (0 to 3)
|   ++----- Expansion slot number (0 to 3)
+----- "1" when using expansion slot

```

HL for the address of memory to be read
Output: the value of memory which has been read in A
Registers: AF, BC, DE

CHRGTR (0010H) *1
Function: gets a character (or a token) from BASIC text
Input: [HL] for the character to be read
Output: HL is incremented by one and A receives [HL]. When the character is numerical, the CY flag is set; the end of the statement causes the Z flag to be set.
Registers: AF, HL

WRSLT (0014H) *1
Function: selects the slot corresponding to the value of A and writes one byte to the memory of the slot. When this routine is called, interrupts are inhibited and remain so even after execution ends.
Input: specifies a slot with A (same as RDSLT)
Output: none
Registers: AF, BC, D

OUTDO (0018H) *2
Function: sends the value to current device
Input: A for the value to be sent
 sends output to the printer when PTRFLG (F416H) is other than 0
 sends output to the file specified by PTRFIL (F864H) when PTRFIL is other than 0
Output: none
Registers: none

CALSLT (001CH) *1
Function: calls the routine in another slot (inter-slot call)
Input: specify the slot in the 8 high order bits of the IY register (same as RDSLT). IX is for the address to be called.
Output: depends on the calling routine
Registers: depends on the calling routine

DCOMPR (0020H) *1
Function: compares the contents of HL and DE
Input: HL, DE
Output: sets the Z flag for HL = DE, CY flag for HL < DE
Registers: AF

ENASLT (0024H) *1
Function: selects the slot corresponding to the value of A and enables the slot to be used. When this routine is called, interrupts are inhibited and remain so even after execution ends.

Input: specify the slot by A (same as RDSLT)
specify the page to switch the slot by 2 high order bits
of HL
Output: none
Registers: all

GETYPR (0028H) *1
Function: returns the type of DAC (decimal accumulator)
Input: none
Output: S, Z, P/V flags are changed depending on the type of DAC:

integer type	single precision real type
C = 1	C = 1
S = 1 *	S = 0
Z = 0	Z = 0
P/V = 1	P/V = 0 *
string type	double precision real type
C = 1	C = 0 *
S = 0	S = 0
Z = 1 *	Z = 0
P/V = 1	P/V = 1

Types can be recognised by the flag marked by "*".
Registers: AF

CALLF (0030H) *1
Function: calls the routine in another slot. The following is the
calling sequence:

RST	30H	
DB	n	;n is the slot number (same as RDSLT)
DW	nn	;nn is the called address

Input: In the method described above
Output: depends on the calling routine
Registers: AF, and other registers depending on the calling routine

KEYINT (0038H) *1
Function: executes the timer interrupt process routine
Input: none
Output: none
Register: none

* I/O initialisation

INITIO (003BH) *1
Function: initialises the device
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

INIFNK (003EH) *1
Function: initialises the contents of function keys

Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

* VDP access

DISSCR (0041H) *1
Function: inhibits the screen display
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: AF, BC

ENASCR (0044H) *1
Function: displays the screen
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

WRTVDP (0047H) *2
Function: writes data in the VDP register
Input: C for the register number, B for data; the register number
is 0 to 23 and 32 to 46
Output: none
Registers: AF, BC

RDVRM (004AH) *1
Function: reads the contents of VRAM. This is for TMS9918, so only the
14 low order bits of the VRAM address are valid. To use all
bits, call NRDVRM.
Input: HL for VRAM address to be read
Output: A for the value which was read
Registers: AF

WRTVRM (004DH) *1
Function: writes data in VRAM. This is for TMS9918, so only the 14 low
order bits of the VRAM address are valid. To use all bits,
call NWRVRM.
Input: HL for VRAM address, A for data
Output: none
Registers: AF

SETRD (0050H) *1
Function: sets VRAM address to VDP and enables it to be read. This is
used to read data from the sequential VRAM area by using the
address auto-increment function of VDP. This enables faster
readout than using RDVRM in a loop. This is for TMS9918, so
only the 14 low order bits of VRAM address are valid. To use
all bits, call NSETRD.
Input: HL for VRAM address
Output: none
Registers: AF

SETWRT (0053H) *1
 Function: sets VRAM address to VDP and enables it to be written. The purpose is the same as SETRD. This is for TMS9918, so only the 14 low order bits of VRAM address are valid. To use all bits, call NSETRD.
 Input: HL for VRAM address
 Output: none
 Registers: AF

FILVRM (0056H) *4
 Function: fills the specified VRAM area with the same data. This is for TMS9918, so only the 14 low order bits of the VRAM address are valid. To use all bits, see BIGFIL.
 Input: HL for VRAM address to begin writing, BC for the length of the area to be written, A for data.
 Output: none
 Registers: AF, BC

LDIRMV (0059H) *4
 Function: block transfer from VRAM to memory
 Input: HL for source address (VRAM), DE for destination address (memory), BC for the length. All bits of the VRAM address are valid.
 Output: none
 Registers: all

LDIRVM (005CH) *4
 Function: block transfer from memory to VRAM
 Input: HL for source address (memory), DE for destination address (VRAM), BC for the length. All bits of the VRAM address are valid.
 Output: none
 Registers: all

CHGMOD (005FH) *3
 Function: changes the screen mode. The palette is not initialised. To initialise it, see CHGMDP in SUB-ROM.
 Input: A for the screen mode (0 to 8)
 Output: none
 Registers: all

CHGCLR (0062H) *1
 Function: changes the screen colour
 Input: A for the mode
 FORCLR (F3E9H) for foreground color
 BAKCLR (F3EAH) for background color
 BDRCLR (F3EBH) for border colour
 Output: none
 Registers: all

NMI (0066H) *1
 Function: executes NMI (Non-Maskable Interrupt) handling routine
 Input: none
 Output: none

Registers: none

CLRSPR (0069H) *3

Function: initialises all sprites. The sprite pattern is cleared to null, the sprite number to the sprite plane number, the sprite colour to the foreground colour. The vertical location of the sprite is set to 209 (mode 0 to 3) or 217 (mode 4 to 8).

Input: SCRMOD (FCAFH) for the screen mode

Output: none

Registers: all

INITXT (006CH) *3

Function: initialises the screen to TEXT1 mode (40 x 24). In this routine, the palette is not initialised. To initialise the palette, call INIPLT in SUB-ROM after this call.

Input: TXTNAM (F3B3H) for the pattern name table
TXTCGP (F3B7H) for the pattern generator table
LINL40 (F3AEH) for the length of one line

Output: none

Registers: all

INIT32 (006FH) *3

Function: initialises the screen to GRAPHIC1 mode (32x24). In this routine, the palette is not initialised.

Input: T32NAM (F3BDH) for the pattern name table
T32COL (F3BFH) for the colour table
T32CGP (F3C1H) for the pattern generator table
T32ATR (F3C3H) for the sprite attribute table
T32PAT (F3C5H) for the sprite generator table

Output: none

Registers: all

INIGRP (0072H) *3

Function: initialises the screen to the high-resolution graphics mode. In this routine, the palette is not initialised.

Input: GRPNAM (F3C7H) for the pattern name table
GRPCOL (F3C9H) for the colour table
GRPCGP (F3CBH) for the pattern generator table
GRPATR (F3CDH) for the sprite attribute table
GRPPAT (F3CFH) for the sprite generator table

Output: none

Registers: all

INIMLT (0075H) *3

Function: initialises the screen to MULTI colour mode. In this routine, the palette is not initialised.

Input: MLTNAM (F3D1H) for the pattern name table
MLTCOL (F3D3H) for the colour table
MLTCGP (F3D5H) for the pattern generator table
MLTATR (F3D7H) for the sprite attribute table
MLTPAT (F3D9H) for the sprite generator table

Output: none

Registers: all

SETTXT (0078H) *3
Function: set only VDP in TEXT1 mode (40x24)
Input: same as INITXT
Output: none
Registers: all

SETT32 (007BH) *3
Function: set only VDP in GRAPHIC1 mode (32x24)
Input: same as INIT32
Output: none
Registers: all

SETGRP (007EH) *3
Function: set only VDP in GRAPHIC2 mode
Input: same as INIGRP
Output: none
Registers: all

SETMLT (0081H) *3
Function: set only VDP in MULTI colour mode
Input: same as INIMLT
Output: none
Registers: all

CALPAT (0084H) *1
Function: returns the address of the sprite generator table
Input: A for the sprite number
Output: HL for the address
Registers: AF, DE, HL

CALATR (0087H) *1
Function: returns the address of the sprite attribute table
Input: A for the sprite number
Output: HL for the address
Registers: AF, DE, HL

GSPSIZ (008AH) *1
Function: returns the current sprite size
Input: none
Output: A for the sprite size (in bytes). Only when the size is
 16 x 16, the CY flag is set; otherwise the CY flag is reset.
Registers: AF

GRPPRT (008DH) *2
Function: displays a character on the graphic screen
Input: A for the character code. When the screen mode is 0 to 8,
 set the logical operation code in LOGOPR (FB02H).
Output: none
Registers: none

* PSG

GICINI (0090H) *1
 Function: initialises PSG and sets the initial value for the PLAY
 statement
 Input: none
 Output: none
 Registers: all

WRTPSG (0093H) *1
 Function: writes data in the PSG register
 Input: A for PSG register number, E for data
 Output: none
 Registers: none

RDPSG (0096H) *1
 Function: reads the PSG register value
 Input: A for PSG register number
 Output: A for the value which was read
 Registers: none

STRTMS (0099H) *1
 Function: tests whether the PLAY statement is being executed as a
 background task. If not, begins to execute the PLAY
statement
 Input: none
 Output: none
 Registers: all

* Keyboard, CRT, printer input-output

CHSNS (009CH) *1
 Function: tests the status of the keyboard buffer
 Input: none
 Output: the Z flag is set when the buffer is empty, otherwise the
 Z flag is reset
 Registers: AF

CHGET (009FH) *1
 Function: one character input (waiting)
 Input: none
 Output: A for the code of the input character
 Registers: AF

CHPUT (00A2H) *1
 Function: displays the character
 Input: A for the character code to be displayed
 Output: none
 Registers: none

LPTOUT (00A5H) *1

Function: sends one character to the printer
Input: A for the character code to be sent
Output: if failed, the CY flag is set
Registers: F

LPTSTT (00A8H) *1
Function: tests the printer status
Input: none
Output: when A is 255 and the Z flag is reset, the printer is READY.
when A is 0 and the Z flag is set, the printer is NOT READY.
Registers: AF

CNVCHR (00ABH) *1
Function: test for the graphic header and transforms the code
Input: A for the character code
Output: the CY flag is reset to not the graphic header
the CY flag and the Z flag are set to the transformed code
is set in A
the CY flag is set and the CY flag is reset to the
untransformed code is set in A
Registers: AF

PINLIN (00AEH) *1
Function: stores in the specified buffer the character codes input
until the return key or STOP key is pressed.
Input: none
Output: HL for the starting address of the buffer minus 1, the CY
flag is set only when it ends with the STOP key.
Registers: all

INLIN (00B1H) *1
Function: same as PINLIN except that AUTFLG (F6AAH) is set
Input: none
Output: HL for the starting address of the buffer minus 1, the CY
flag is set only when it ends with the STOP key.
Registers: all

QINLIN (00B4H) *1
Function: executes INLIN with displaying "?" and one space
Input: none
Output: HL for the starting address of the buffer minus 1, the CY
flag is set only when it ends with the STOP key.
Registers: all

BREAKX (00B7H) *1
Function: tests Ctrl-STOP key. In this routine, interrupts are
inhibited.
Input: none
Output: the CY flag is set when pressed
Registers: AF

BEEP (00C0H) *3
Function: generates BEEP
Input: none

Output: none
Registers: all

CLS (00C3H) *3
Function: clears the screen
Input: set zero flag
Output: none
Registers: AF, BC, DE

POSIT (00C6H) *1
Function: moves the cursor
Input: H for the X-coordinate of the cursor, L for the Y-coordinate
Output: none
Registers: AF

FNKSB (00C9H) *1
Function: tests whether the function key display is active (FNKFLG).
If so, displays them, otherwise erases them.
Input: FNKFLG (FBCEH)
Output: none
Registers: all

ERA FNK (00CCH) *1
Function: erases the function key display
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

DSPFNK (00CFH) *2
Function: displays the function keys
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

TOTEXT (00D2H) *1
Function: forces the screen to be in the text mode
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

* Game I/O access

GTSTCK (00D5H) *1
Function: returns the joystick status
Input: A for the joystick number to be tested
Output: A for the joystick direction
Registers: all

GTTRIG (00D8H) *1
Function: returns the trigger button status
Input: A for the trigger button number to be tested

Output: When A is 0, the trigger button is not being pressed.
When A is FFH, the trigger button is being pressed.
Registers: AF

GTPAD (00DBH) *1
Function: returns the touch pad status
Input: A for the touch pad number to be tested
Output: A for the value
Registers: all

GTPDL (00DEH) *2
Function: returns the paddle value
Input: A for the paddle number
Output: A for the value
Registers: all

* Cassette input-output routine

TAPION (00E1H) *1
Function: reads the header block after turning the cassette motor ON.
Input: none
Output: if failed, the CY flag is set
Registers: all

TAPIN (00E4H) *1
Function: reads data from the tape
Input: none
Output: A for data. If failed, the CY flag is set.
Registers: all

TAPIOF (00E7H) *1
Function: stops reading the tape
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: none

TAPOON (00EAH) *1
Function: writes the header block after turning the cassette motor ON
Input: A = 0, short header; A <> 0, long header
Output: if failed, the CY flag is set
Registers: all

TAPOUT (00EDH) *1
Function: writes data on the tape
Input: A for data
Output: if failed, the CY flag is set
Registers: all

TAPOOF (00F0H) *1
Function: stops writing to the tape
Input: A for data

Output: if failed, the CY flag is set
Registers: all

STMOTR (00F3H) *1
Function: sets the cassette motor action
Input: A = 0 -> stop
A = 1 -> start
A = 0FFH -> reverse the current action
Output: none
Registers: AF

* Miscellaneous

CHGCAP (0132H) *1
Function: alternates the CAP lamp status
Input: A = 0 -> lamp off
A <> 0 -> lamp on
Output: none
Registers: AF

CHGSND (0135H) *1
Function: alternates the 1-bit sound port status
Input: A = 0 -> OFF
A <> 0 -> ON
Output: none
Registers: AF

RSLREG (0138H) *1
Function: reads the contents of current output to the basic slot register
Input: none
Output: A for the value which was read
Registers: A

WSLREG (013BH) *1
Function: writes to the primary slot register
Input: A for the value to be written
Output: none
Registers: none

RDVDP (013EH) *1
Function: reads VDP status register
Input: none
Output: A for the value which was read
Registers: A

SNSMAT (0141H) *1
Function: reads the value of the specified line from the keyboard matrix
Input: A for the specified line
Output: A for data (the bit corresponding to the pressed key will be 0)

Registers: AF, C

PHYDIO (0144H)

Function: Physical input/output for disk devices
Input: A for the drive number (0 = A:, 1 = B:,...)
B for the number of sector to be read from or written to
C for the media ID
DE for the first sector number to be read from or written to
HL for the starting address of the RAM buffer to be
read from or written to specified sectors
CY set for sector writing; reset for sector reading
Output: CY set if failed
B for the number of sectors actually read or written
A for the error code (only if CY set):
0 = Write protected
2 = Not ready
4 = Data error
6 = Seek error
8 = Record not found
10 = Write error
12 = Bad parameter
14 = Out of memory
16 = Other error

Registers: all

ISFLIO (014AH)

*1

Function: tests whether the device is active
Input: none
Output: A = 0 -> active
A <> 0 -> inactive
Registers: AF

OUTDLP (014DH)

*1

Function: printer output. Different from LPTOUT in the following points:
1. TAB is expanded to spaces
2. For non-MSX printers, hiragana is transformed to katakana and graphic characters are transformed to 1-byte characters.
3. If failed, device I/O error occurs.
Input: A for data
Output: none
Registers: F

KILBUF (0156H)

*1

Function: clears the keyboard buffer
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: HL

CALBAS (0159H)

*1

Function: executes inter-slot call to the routine in BASIC interpreter
Input: IX for the calling address
Output: depends on the called routine
Registers: depends on the called routine

* Entries appended for MSX2

SUBROM (015CH)

Function: executes inter-slot call to SUB-ROM
Input: IX for the calling address and, at the same time, pushes IX on the stack
Output: depends on the called routine
Registers: background registers and IY are reserved

EXTROM (015FH)

Function: executes inter-slot call to SUB-ROM
Input: IX for the calling address
Output: depends on the called routine
Registers: background registers and IY are reserved

EOL (0168H)

Function: deletes to the end of the line
Input: H for X-coordinate of the cursor, L for Y-coordinate
Output: none
Registers: all

BIGFIL (016BH)

Function: same function as FILVRM. Differences are as follows:
In FILVRM, it is tested whether the screen mode is 0 to

3.

If so, it treats VDP as the one which has only 16K bytes VRAM (for the compatibility with MSX1). In BIGFIL, the mode is not tested and actions are carried out by the given parameters.

Input: same as FILVRM
Output: same as FILVRM
Registers: same as FILVRM

NSETRD (016EH)

Function: enables VRAM to be read by setting the address
Input: HL for VRAM address
Output: none
Registers: AF

NSTWRT (0171H)

Function: enables VRAM to be written by setting the address
Input: HL for VRAM address
Output: none
Registers: AF

NRDVRM (0174H)

Function: reads the contents of VRAM
Input: HL for VRAM address to be read
Output: A for the value which was read
Registers: F

NWRVRM (0177H)

Function: writes data in VRAM
Input: HL for VRAM address, A for data
Output: none
Registers: AF

SUB-ROM

The calling sequence of SUB-ROM is as follows:

```
      .  
      .  
      .  
LD     IX, INIPLT      ; Set BIOS entry address  
CALL   EXTROM          ; Returns here  
      .  
      .  
      .
```

When the contents of IX should not be destroyed, use the call as shown below.

```
      .  
      .  
      .  
INIPAL: PUSH   IX  
              ; Save IX  
LD     IX, INIPLT      ; Set BIOS entry address  
JP     SUBROM          ;Returns caller of INIPAL  
      .  
      .  
      .
```

GRPRT (0089H)

Function: one character output to the graphic screen (active only in screen modes 5 to 8)
Input: A for the character code
Output: none
Registers: none

NVBXLN (00C9H)

Function: draws a box
Input: start point: BC for X-coordinate, DE for Y-coordinate
end point: GXPOS (FCB3H) for X-coordinate
 GYPOS (FCB5H) for Y-coordinate
colour: ATRBYT (F3F3H) for the attribute
logical operation code: LOGOPR (FB02H)
Output: none
Registers: all

NVBXFL (00CDH)

Function: draws a painted box
Input: start point: BC for X-coordinate, DE for Y-coordinate
end point: GXPOS (FCB3H) for X-coordinate
GYPOS (FCB5H) for Y-coordinate
colour: ATRBYT (F3F3H) for the attribute
logical operation code: LOGOPR (FB02H)
Output: none
Registers: all

CHGMOD (00D1H)

Function: changes the screen mode
Input: A for the screen mode (0 to 8)
Output: none
Registers: all

INITXT (00D5H)

Function: initialises the screen to TEXT1 mode (40 x 24)
Input: TXTNAM (F3B3H) for the pattern name table
TXTCGP (F3B7H) for the pattern generator table
LINL40 (F3AEH) for the length of one line
Output: none
Registers: all

INIT32 (00D9H)

Function: initialises the screen to GRAPHIC1 mode (32x24)
Input: T32NAM (F3BDH) for the pattern name table
T32COL (F3BFH) for the colour table
T32CGP (F3C1H) for the pattern generator table
T32ATR (F3C3H) for the sprite attribute table
T32PAT (F3C5H) for the sprite generator table
Output: none
Registers: all

INIGRP (00DDH)

Function: initialises the screen to the high-resolution graphics mode
Input: GRPNAM (F3C7H) for the pattern name table
GRPCOL (F3C9H) for the colour table
GRPCGP (F3CBH) for the pattern generator table
GRPATR (F3CDH) for the sprite attribute table
GRPPAT (F3CFH) for the sprite generator table
Output: none
Registers: all

INIMLT (00E1H)

Function: initialises the screen to MULTI colour mode
Input: MLTNAM (F3D1H) for the pattern name table
MLTCOL (F3D3H) for the colour table
MLTCGP (F3D5H) for the pattern generator table
MLTATR (F3D7H) for the sprite attribute table
MLTPAT (F3D9H) for the sprite generator table
Output: none
Registers: all

SETTXT (00E5H)

Function: sets VDP in the text mode (40x24)

Input: same as INITXT
Output: none
Registers: all

SETT32 (00E9H)

Function: sets VDP in the text mode (32x24)
Input: same as INIT32
Output: none
Registers: all

SETGRP (00EDH)

Function: sets VDP in the high-resolution mode
Input: same as INIGRP
Output: none
Registers: all

SETMLT (00F1H)

Function: sets VDP in MULTI COLOUR mode
Input: same as INIMLT
Output: none
Registers: all

CLRSR (00F5H)

Function: initialises all sprites. The sprite pattern is set to null, sprite number to sprite plane number, and sprite colour to the foreground colour. The vertical location of the sprite is set to 217.
Input: SCRMOD (FCAFH) for the screen mode
Output: none
Registers: all

CALPAT (00F9H)

Function: returns the address of the sprite generator table (this routine is the same as CALPAT in MAIN-ROM)
Input: A for the sprite number
Output: HL for the address
Registers: AF, DE, HL

CALATR (00FDH)

Function: returns the address of the sprite attribute table (this routine is the same as CALATR in MAIN-ROM)
Input: A for the sprite number
Output: HL for the address
Registers: AF, DE, HL

GSPSIZ (0101H)

Function: returns the current sprite size (this routine is the same as GSPSIZ in MAIN-ROM)
Input: none
Output: A for the sprite size. The CY flag is set only for the size 16 x 16.
Registers: AF

GETPAT (0105H)

Function: returns the character pattern
Input: A for the character code
Output: PATWRK (FC40H) for the character pattern
Registers: all

WRTVRM (0109H)

Function: writes data in VRAM
Input: HL for VRAM address (0 TO FFFFH), A for data
Output: none
Registers: AF

RDVRM (010DH)

Function: reads the contents of VRAM
Input: HL for VRAM address (0 TO FFFFH) to be read
Output: A for the value which was read
Registers: AF

CHGCLR (0111H)

Function: changes the screen colour
Input: A for the mode
FORCLR (F3E9H) for the foreground color
BAKCLR (F3EAH) for the background color
BDRCLR (F3EBH) for the border colour
Output: none
Registers: all

CLSSUB (0115H)

Function: clears the screen
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

DSPFNK (011DH)

Function: displays the function keys
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

WRTVDP (012DH)

Function: writes data in the VDP register
Input: C for the register number, B for data
Output: none
Registers: AF, BC

VDPSTA (0131H)

Function: reads the VDP register
Input: A for the register number (0 to 9)
Output: A for data
Registers: F

SETPAG (013DH)

Function: switches the page

Input: DPPAGE (FAF5H) for the display page number
ACPAGE (FAF6H) for the active page number
Output: none
Registers: AF

INIPLT (0141H)
Function: initialises the palette(the current palette is saved in VRAM)
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: AF, BC, DE

RSTPLT (0145H)
Function: restores the palette from VRAM
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: AF, BC, DE

GETPLT (0149H)
Function: obtains the colour code from the palette
Input: D for the palette number (0 to 15)
Output: 4 high order bits of B for red code
4 low order bits of B for blue code
4 low order bits of C for green code
Registers: AF, DE

SETPLT (014DH)
Function: sets the colour code to the palette
Input: D for the palette number (0 to 15)
4 high order bits of A for red code
4 low order bits of A for blue code
4 low order bits of E for green code
Output: none
Registers: AF

BEEP (017DH)
Function: generates BEEP
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

PROMPT (0181H)
Function: displays the prompt
Input: none
Output: none
Registers: all

NEWPAD (01ADH)
Function: reads the status of mouse or light pen
Input: call with setting the following data in A;
descriptions in parenthesis are return values.
8 light pen check (valid at 0FFH)
9 returns X-coordinate
10 returns Y-coordinate

11 returns the light pen switch status
 (0FFH, when pressed)
 12 whether the mouse is connected to the
 port 1 (valid at 0FFH)
 13 returns the offset in X direction
 14 returns the offset in Y direction
 15 (always 0)
 16 whether the mouse is connected to the
 port 2 (valid at 0FFH)
 17 returns the offset in X direction
 18 returns the offset in Y direction
 19 (always 0)

Output: A
 Registers: all

CHGMDP (01B5H)

Function: changes VDP mode. The palette is initialised.
 Input: A for the screen mode (0 to 8)
 Output: none
 Registers: all

KNJPRT (01BDH)

Function: sends a kanki to the graphic screen (modes 5 to 8)
 Input: BC for JIS kanji code, A for the display mode. The display
 mode has the following meaning, similar to the PUT KANJI
 command of BASIC.
 0 display in 16 x 16 dot
 1 display even dots
 2 display odd dots

REDCLK (01F5H)

Function: reads the clock data
 Input: C for RAM address of the clock

00MMAAAA

 ||++++--- Address (0 to 15)
 ++----- Mode (0 to 3)

Output: A for the data which were read (only 4 low order bits are
 valid)
 Registers: F

WRTCLK (01F9H)

Function: writes the clock data
 Input: A for the data to be written, C for RAM address of the clock
 Output: none
 Registers: F

=====
 ==

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 2:

- In the explanation before Figure A.3, the indication about the excess 64 method has been added.

- In Figure A.3, in the third byte, "63rd power of 10" has been corrected to
"-63rd power of 10".
- In the explanation before Figure A.3, the indication about the excess 64 method has been added.
- In Figure A.3, in the third byte, "63rd power of 10" has been corrected to
"-63rd power of 10".

=====

APPENDIX 2 - MATH-PACK

The Math-Pack is the core for the mathematical routines of MSX-BASIC and, by calling these routines from an assembly language program, floating-point operations and trigonometrical functions are available.

Any operations involving real numbers in Math-Pack are done in BCD (Binary Coded Decimal). There are two ways of expressing a real number, "single precision" and "double precision"; a single precision real number (6 digits) is expressed by 4 bytes and a double precision real number (14 digits) by 8 bytes (see Figure A.1 and Figure A.2).

Figure A.1 BCD format for expressing real numbers

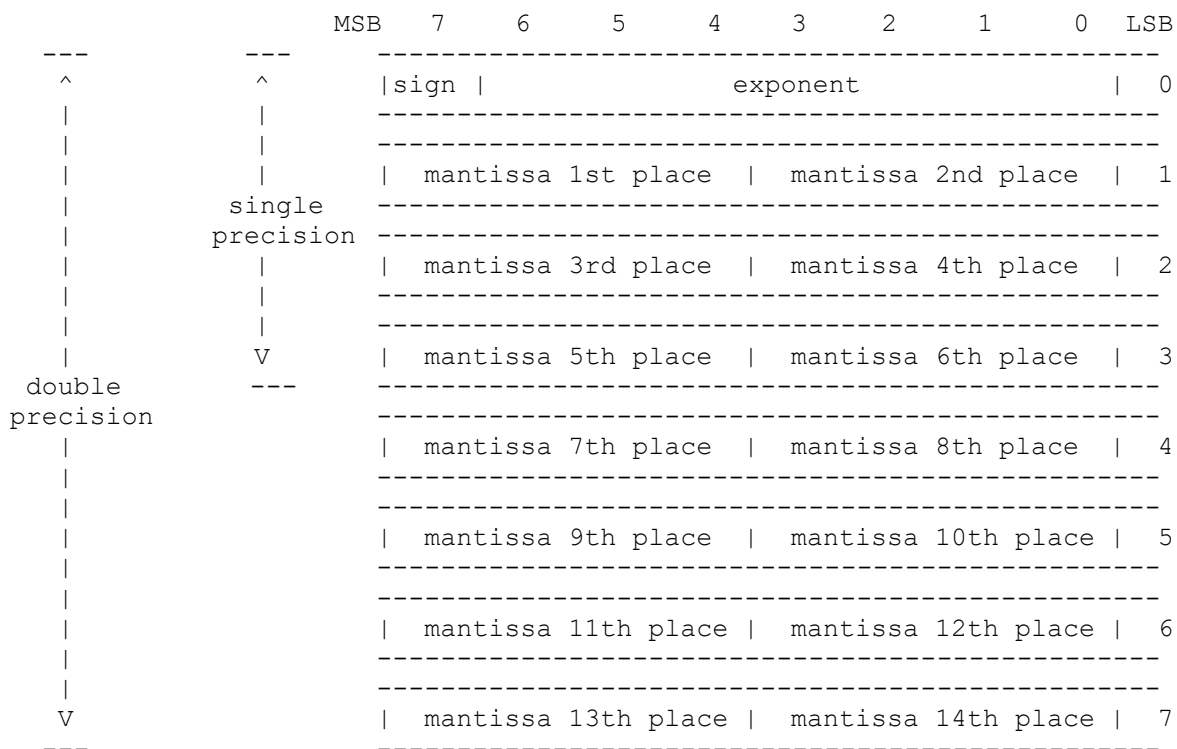


Figure A.2 Examples of expressions for real numbers

Example of the single precision expression

123456 --> 0.123456 E+6

	1	2	3	4

DAC	| 46 |	| 12 |	| 34 |	| 56 |

Example of the double precision expression

123456.78901234 --> 0.12345678901234 E+6

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

DAC	| 46 |	| 12 |	| 34 |	| 56 |	| 78 |	| 90 |	| 12 |	| 34 |

A real number consists of a sign, an exponent, and a mantissa. The sign represents the sign of the mantissa; 0 for positive, 1 for negative. The exponent is a binary expression and can be expressed as a power from +63 to -63, with an excess of 64 (see Figure A.3). Figure A.4 shows the valid range of double precision real numbers.

Figure A.3 Exponent format

| sign	| <-----	exponent	----->	|	meaning				
| 0	| 0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	| ..... 0
| 1	| 0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	| ..... undefined (-0?)
| x	| 0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	| ..... -63rd power of 10
| x	| 1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	| ..... 0th power of 10
| x	| 1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	| ..... +63rd power of 10

Note: "x" is 1 or 0, both of which are allowed.

Figure A.4 Valid range for double precision real numbers

	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	(byte)

DAC	| FF |	| 99 |	| 99 |	| 99 |	| 99 |	| 99 |	| 99 |	| 99 |	-0.9999999999999999
E+63									

			.						
			.						
			.						

```

63 | 81 | 10 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | -0.1000000000000000 E-
-----
| 00 | x | x | x | x | x | x | x | x | 0
-----
63 | 01 | 10 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | 00 | +0.1000000000000000 E-
-----
                                     .
                                     .
                                     .
-----
| 7F | 99 | 99 | 99 | 99 | 99 | 99 | 99 | 99 | +0.9999999999999999
E+63
-----

```

In Math-Pack, the memory is predefined for operation. This memory area is called "DAC (Decimal ACumulator (F7F6H))" and the area which reserves the numerical value to be operated is called "ARG (F847H)". For example, in multiplication, the product of the numbers in DAC and ARG is calculated and the result is returned in the DAC.

In the DAC, single precision real numbers, double precision real numbers, and two-byte integers can be stored. In order to distinguish them, "VALTYP (F663H)" is used and its value is 4 for single precision real numbers, 8 for double precision real numbers, and 2 for two-byte integers.

Single and double precision numbers must be stored from the top of the DAC. For two-byte integers, the low and high bytes should be stored in DAC + 2 and DAC + 3.

Since Math-Pack is an internal routine of BASIC, when an error occurs (such as division by 0 or overflow), control automatically jumps to the corresponding error routine, then returns to BASIC command level. To prevent this, change H.ERRO (FFB1H).

* Math-Pack work area

```

-----
--
| Label | Address | Size | Meaning |
|-----+-----+-----+-----|
-|
| VALTYP | F663H | 1 | format of the number in DAC |
| DAC | F7F6H | 16 | floating point accumulator in BCD format |
| ARG | F847H | 16 | argument of DAC |
-----
--

```

* Math-Pack entry

Basic operation

Label	Address	Function
DECSUB	268CH	DAC <-- DAC - ARG
DECADD	269AH	DAC <-- DAC + ARG
DECNRM	26FAH	normalises DAC (*1)
DECROU	273CH	rounds DAC
DECMUL	27E6H	DAC <-- DAC * ARG
DECDIV	289FH	DAC <-- DAC / ARG

Note: These operations treat numbers in DAC and ARG as the double precision number. Registers are not preserved.

*1 Excessive zeros in mantissa are removed. (0.00123 --> 0.123 E-2)

Function 1

Label	Address	Function	Register modified
COS	2993H	DAC <-- COS(DAC)	all
SIN	29ACH	DAC <-- SIN(DAC)	all
TAN	29FBH	DAC <-- TAN(DAC)	all
ATN	2A14H	DAC <-- ATN(DAC)	all
LOG	2A72H	DAC <-- LOG(DAC)	all
SQR	2AFFH	DAC <-- SQR(DAC)	all
EXP	2B4AH	DAC <-- EXP(DAC)	all
RND	2BDFH	DAC <-- RND(DAC)	all

Note: These processing routines all have the same function names as those in

BASIC. "All" registers are A, B, C, D, E, H, and L.

Function 2

Label	Address	Function	Register modified
SIGN	2E71H	A <-- sign of DAC	A
ABSFN	2E82H	DAC <-- ABS(DAC)	all
NEG	2E8DH	DAC <-- NEG(DAC)	A,HL
SGN	2E97H	DAC <-- SGN(DAC)	A,HL

Note: Except for SIGN, these processing routines all have the same function names as those in BASIC. Registers are A, B, C, D, E, H, and L.

Note that for SGN, the result is represented as a 2-byte integer.

Movement

Label	Address	Function	Object	Reg. mod.
-------	---------	----------	--------	-----------

|	MAF	|	2C4DH	|	ARG <-- DAC	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	MAM	|	2C50H	|	ARG <-- (HL)	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	MOV8DH	|	2C53H	|	(DE) <-- (HL)	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	MFA	|	2C59H	|	DAC <-- ARG	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	MFM	|	2C5CH	|	DAC <-- (HL)	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	MMF	|	2C67H	|	(HL) <-- DAC	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	MOV8HD	|	2C6AH	|	(HL) <-- (DE)	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	XTF	|	2C6FH	|	(SP) <--> DAC	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	PHA	|	2CC7H	|	ARG <-- (SP)	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	PHF	|	2CCCH	|	DAC <-- (SP)	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	PPA	|	2CDCH	|	(SP) <-- ARG	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	PPF	|	2CE1H	|	(SP) <-- DAC	|	double prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	PUSHF	|	2EB1H	|	DAC <-- (SP)	|	single prec.	|	D,E	|
|	MOVFM	|	2EBEH	|	DAC <-- (HL)	|	single prec.	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	MOVFR	|	2EC1H	|	DAC <-- (CBED)	|	single prec.	|	D,E	|
|	MOVRF	|	2ECCH	|	(CBED) <-- DAC	|	single prec.	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	MOVRFMI	|	2ED6H	|	(CBED) <-- (HL)	|	single prec.	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	MOVRFM	|	2EDFH	|	(BCDE) <-- (HL)	|	single prec.	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	MOVFMF	|	2EE8H	|	(HL) <-- DAC	|	single prec.	|	A,B,D,E,H,L	|
|	MOVE	|	2EEBH	|	(HL) <-- (DE)	|	single prec.	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	VMOVAM	|	2EEFH	|	ARG <-- (HL)	|	VALTYP	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	MOVVFM	|	2EF2H	|	(DE) <-- (HL)	|	VALTYP	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	VMOVE	|	2EF3H	|	(HL) <-- (DE)	|	VALTYP	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	VMOVFA	|	2F05H	|	DAC <-- ARG	|	VALTYP	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	VMOVFM	|	2F08H	|	DAC <-- (HL)	|	VALTYP	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	VMOVAF	|	2F0DH	|	ARG <-- DAC	|	VALTYP	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|
|	VMOVFMF	|	2F10H	|	(HL) <-- DAC	|	VALTYP	|	B,C,D,E,H,L	|

-

Note: (HL), (DE) means the values in memory pointed to by HL or DE. Four register names in the parentheses are the single precision real numbers which indicate (sign + exponent), (mantissa 1st and 2nd places), (mantissa 3th and 4th places), (mantissa 5th and 6th places) from left to right. Where the object is VALTYP, the movement (2, 4, 8 bytes) is according to the type indicated in VALTYP (F663H).

Comparison

--										
|	Label	|	Address	|	Object	|	Left	|	Right	|Reg. mod. |
	-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+		-----+	
-										
|	FCOMP	|	2F21H	|	single prec. real number	|	CBED	|	DAC	| HL
|	ICOMP	|	2F4DH	|	2-byte integer	|	DE	|	HL	| HL
|	XDCOMP	|	2F5CH	|	double prec. real number	|	ARG	|	DAC	| all
--										

Note: Results will be in A register. Meanings of A register are:

A = 1 --> left < right
A = 0 --> left = right
A = -1 --> left > right

In the comparison of single precision real numbers, CBED means that each register has single precision (sign + exponent), (mantissa 1st and 2nd places), (mantissa 3th and 4th places), and (mantissa 5th and 6th places).

Floating-point input/output

--			
Label	Address	Function	
-----+-----+-----			
-			
FIN	3299H	Stores a string representing the floating-point	
		number in DAC, converting it in real.	

-			
Entry condition	HL	<-- Starting address of the string	
	A	<-- First character of the string	
Return condition	DAC	<-- Real number	
	C	<-- FFH: without a decimal point	
		0: with a decimal point	
	B	<-- Number of places after the decimal point	
	D	<-- Number of digits	

--			

--			
Label	Address	Function	
-----+-----+-----			
-			
FOUT	3425H	Converts the real number in DAC to the string	
		(unformatted)	
PUFOUT	3426H	Converts the real number in DAC to the string	
		(formatted)	

-			
Entry condition	A	<-- format	
bit 7	0: unformatted	1: formatted	
bit 6	0: without commas	1: with commas every three digits	
bit 5	0: meaningless	1: leading spaces are padded with "."	
bit 4	0: meaningless	1: "\$" is added before the numerical value	
bit 3	0: meaningless	1: "+" is added even for positive values	
bit 2	0: meaningless	1: the sign comes after the value	
bit 1	unused		
bit 0:	0: fixed point	1: floating-point	
	B	<-- number of digits before and not including the decimal point	
	C	<-- number of digits after and including the decimal point	
Return condition	HL	<-- starting address of the string	

--			

--			
Label	Address	Function	

-----+-----+-----			
-			
|	FOUTB	| 371AH	| Converts 2-byte integer in DAC+2, 3 to a
|		|	| binary expression string.
|	FOUTO	| 371EH	| Converts 2-byte integer in DAC+2, 3 to an
|		|	| octal expression string.
|	FOUTH	| 3722H	| Converts 2-byte integer in DAC+2, 3 to a
|		|	| hexadecimal expression string.

-			
|	Entry condition	DAC + 2 <-- 2-byte integer	|
|		VALTYP <-- 2	|
|	Return condition	HL <-- starting address of the string	|

--			

Note: no strings are reserved. The starting address of the string in the output routine is normally in FBUFFR (from F7C5H). In some cases it may differ slightly. For the integer in DAC + 2, VALTYP (F663H) must be 2, even in cases other than FOUTB, FOUTO and FOUTH.

Type conversion

--			
|	Label	| Address	| Function
-----+-----+-----			
-			
|	FRCINT	| 2F8AH	| Converts DAC to a 2-byte integer (DAC + 2, 3)
|	FRCSNG	| 2FB2H	| Converts DAC to a single precision real number
|	FRCDBL	| 303AH	| Converts DAC to a double precision real number
|	FIXER	| 30BEH	| DAC <-- SGN(DAC) * INT(ABS(DAC))

--			

Note: after execution, VALTYP (F663H) will contain the number (2, 4 or 8) representing DAC type. No registers are reserved.

Integer operation

|	Label	| Address	| Function
-----+-----+-----			
|	UMULT	| 314AH	| DE <-- BC * DE
|			| A, B, C, D, E
|	ISUB	| 3167H	| HL <-- DE - HL
|			| all
|	IADD	| 3172H	| HL <-- DE + HL
|			| all
|	IMULT	| 3193H	| HL <-- DE * HL
|			| all
|	IDIV	| 31E6H	| HL <-- DE / HL
|			| all
|	IMOD	| 323AH	| HL <-- DE mod HL
|			| alle
|			| (DE <-- DE/HL)

Power

```

-----
--
| Label | Address | Function | Base | Exp. | Result |
|-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
-|
| SGNEXP | 37C8H | power of single-prec. real | DAC | ARG | DAC
|
| DBLEXP | 37D7H | power of double-prec. real | DAC | ARG | DAC
|
| INTEXP | 383FH | power of 2-byte integer | DE | HL | DAC
|
-----
--

```

Note: No registers are reserved.

```

=====
==

```

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 3:

none

```

-----
==

```

APPENDIX 3 - BIT BLOCK TRANSFER

The bit block transfer corresponds to the COPY command in BASIC and is used to transfer data from RAM, VRAM, and the disk. It is easily executed by the routine in expansion ROM and available from the assembly language program. Since it is in expansion ROM, use SUBROM or EXTROM of BIOS for this routine.

1. Transferring in VRAM

* BLTVV (0191H/SUB)

Function: transfers data in VRAM area

Input: HL register <-- F562H
The following parameters should be set:

* SX (F562H, 2)	X-coordinate of the source
* SY (F564H, 2)	Y-coordinate of the source
* DX (F566H, 2)	X-coordinate of the destination
* DY (F568H, 2)	Y-coordinate of the destination
* NX (F56AH, 2)	number of dots in the X direction
* NY (F56CH, 2)	number of dots in the Y direction
* CDUMMY (F56EH, 1)	dummy (not required to be set)
* ARG (F56FH, 1)	selects the direction and expansion RAM (same as VDP R#45)
* LOGOP (F570H, 1)	logical operation code (same as the logical operation code of VDP)

Output: the CY flag is reset

Registers: all

2. Transferring data between RAM and VRAM

To use the routines below, the following memory space should be allocated as graphic area for screen modes.

- * screen mode 6
number of dots in X direction times number of dots in Y direction/4 + 4
- * screen mode 5 or 7
number of dots in X direction times number of dots in Y direction/2 + 4
- * screen mode 8
number of dots in X direction times number of dots in Y direction/2 + 4

Note to raise fractions.

For disk or RAM, data to indicate the size is added as the array data. The first two bytes of data indicate the number of dots in X direction; the next two bytes indicate the number of dots in the Y direction.

* BLTVM (0195H/SUB)

Function: transfers the array to VRAM

Input: HL register <-- F562H
The following parameters should be set:

- * DPTR (F562H, 2) source address of memory
- * DUMMY (F564H, 2) dummy (not required to be set)
- * DX (F566H, 2) X-coordinate of the destination
- * DY (F568H, 2) Y-coordinate of the destination
- * NX (F56AH, 2) number of dots in the X direction
(not required to be set; this is already in the top of data to be transferred)
- * NY (F56CH, 2) number of dots in the Y direction
(not required to be set; this is already in the top of data to be transferred)
- * CDUMMY (F56EH, 1) dummy (not required to be set)
- * ARG (F56FH, 1) selects the direction and expansion RAM (same as VDP R#45)
- * LOGOP (F570H, 1) logical operation code (same as the logical operation code of VDP)

Output: the CY flag is set when the number of data bytes to be transferred is incorrect

Registers: all

* BLTMV (0199H/SUB)

Function: transfers to the array from VRAM

Input: HL register <-- F562H
The following parameters should be set:

* SX (F562H, 2)	X-coordinate of the source
* SY (F564H, 2)	Y-coordinate of the source
* DPTR (F566H, 2)	destination address of memory
* DUMMY (F568H, 2)	dummy (not required to be set)
* NX (F56AH, 2)	number of dots in the X direction
* NY (F56CH, 2)	number of dots in the Y direction
* CDUMMY (F56EH, 1)	dummy (not required to be set)
* ARG (F56FH, 1)	selects the direction and expansion RAM (same as VDP R#45)

Output: the CY flag is reset

Registers: all

3. Transferring between the disk and RAM or VRAM

The filename should be set first to use the disk (specify the filename as BASIC). The following is an example:

```
      .
      .
      .
LD     HL, FNAME           ; Get pointer to file name
LD     (FNPTR), HL        ; Set it to parameter area
      .
      .
      .
FNAME: DB 22H, "B:TEST.PIC", 22H, 0      ; "TEST.PIC", end mark
```

When an error occurs, control jumps to the error handler of the BASIC interpreter. Set the hook to handle the error in the user program or to call this routine from MSX-DOS or a ROM cartridge. This hook is H.ERRO (FFB1H).

* BLTVD (019DH/SUB)

Function: transfers from disk to VRAM

Input: HL register <-- F562H
The following parameters should be set:

* FNPTR (F562H, 2)	address of the filename
* DUMMY (F564H, 2)	dummy (not required to be set)
* DX (F566H, 2)	X-coordinate of the destination
* DY (F568H, 2)	Y-coordinate of the destination
* NX (F56AH, 2)	number of dots in the X direction (not required to be set; this is already in the top of data to be transferred)
* NY (F56CH, 2)	number of dots in the Y direction (not required to be set; this is already in the top of data to be transferred)

* CDUMMY (F56EH, 1)	dummy (not required to be set)
* ARG (F56FH, 1)	selects the direction and expansion RAM (same as VDP R#45)
* LOGOP (F570H, 1)	logical operation code (same as the logical operation code of VDP)

Output: the CY flag is set when there is an error in the parameter

Registers: all

* BLTDV (01A1H/SUB)

Function: transfers from VRAM to disk

Input: HL register <-- F562H
The following parameters should be set:

* SX (F562H, 2)	X-coordinate of the source
* SY (F564H, 2)	Y-coordinate of the source
* FNPTR (F566H, 2)	address of the filename
* DUMMY (F568H, 2)	dummy (not required to be set)
* NX (F56AH, 2)	number of dots in the X direction
* NY (F56CH, 2)	number of dots in the Y direction
* CDUMMY (F56EH, 1)	dummy (not required to be set)

Output: the CY flag is reset

Registers: all

* BLTMD (01A5H/SUB)

Function: loads array data from disk

Input: HL register <-- F562H
The following parameters should be set:

* FNPTR (F562H, 2)	address of the filename
* SY (F564H, 2)	dummy (not required to be set)
* SPTR (F566H, 2)	the starting address for loading
* EPTR (F568H, 2)	the end address for loading

Output: the CY flag is reset

Registers: all

* BLTDM (01A9H/SUB)

Function: saves array data to disk

Input: HL register <-- F562H
The following parameters should be set:

* SPTR (F562H, 2)	the starting address for saving
* EPTR (F564H, 2)	the end address for saving
* FNPTR (F566H, 2)	address of the filename

Output: the CY flag is reset

Registers: all

=====
==

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 4:

- Address of FLAGS variable is corrected from FB1BH to FB1CH.
- Address of MCLLEN variable is corrected from FB39H to FB3BH.
- Address of H.FIEL hook is corrected from DE2BH to FE2BH.

==

APPENDIX 4 - WORK AREA LISTING

Figure A.5 shows the map of the MSX2 work area. In this section, the system work area and hook from F380H to FFCAH in the figure are described. The following notation is used. Length is in bytes.

Label name (address, length)

Initial value, contents, purpose

Figure A.5 Work area

FFFF	-----
	| slot selection register |
FFFC	|-----|
	| reserved |
FFF8	|-----|
FFF7	| MAIN-ROM slot address |

	| register reservation |
	| area for new |
FFE7	| VDP (9938) |

	| program for |
FFCA	| expansion BIOS calls |

	| hook area |
FD9A	| |

	| system work area |
F380	| |

* Subroutines for read/write calls of the inter-slot

RDPRIM (F380H, 5)

contents: read from basic slot

WRPRIM (F385H, 7)
contents: write to basic slot

CLPRIM (F38CH, 14)
contents: basic slot call

* Starting address of assembly language program of USR function, text screen

USRTAB (F39AH, 20)
initial value: FCERR
contents: starting address of assembly language program of USR function
(0 to 9); the value before defining assembly language program
points to FCERR (475AH).

LINL40 (F3AEH, 1)
initial value: 39
contents: screen width per line at SCREEN 0 (set by WIDTH statement at SCREEN 0)

LINL32 (F3AfH, 1)
initial value: 32
contents: screen width per line at SCREEN 1 (set by WIDTH statement at SCREEN 1)

LINLEN (F3B0H, 1)
initial value: 29
contents: current screen width per line

CRTCNT (F3B1H, 1)
initial value: 24
contents: number of lines of current screen

CLMLST (F3B2H, 1)
initial value: 14
contents: horizontal location in the case that items are divided by commas in PRINT statement

* Work for initialisation

- SCREEN 0

TXTNAM (F3B3H, 2)
initial value: 0000H

contents: pattern name table

TXTCOL (F3B5H, 2)
contents: unused

TXTCGP (F3B7H, 2)
initial value: 0800H
contents: pattern generator table

TXATTR (F3B9H, 2)
contents: unused

TXTPAT (F3BBH, 2)
contents: unused

- SCREEN 1

T32NAM (F3BDH, 2)
initial value: 1800H
contents: pattern name table

T32COL (F3BFH, 2)
initial value: 2000H
contents: colour table

T32CGP (F3C1H, 2)
initial value: 0000H
contents: pattern generator table

T32ATR (F3C3H, 2)
initial value: 1B00H
contents: sprite attribute table

T32PAT (F3C5H, 2)
initial value: 3800H
contents: sprite generator table

- SCREEN 2

GRPNAM (F3C7H, 2)
initial value: 1800H
contents: pattern name table

GRPCOL (F3C9H, 2)
initial value: 2000H
contents: colour table

GRPCGP (F3CBH, 2)
initial value: 0000H
contents: pattern generator table

GRPATR (F3CDH, 2)
initial value: 1B00H
contents: sprite attribute table

GRPPAT (F3CFH, 2)
initial value: 3800H
contents: sprite generator table

- SCREEN 3

MLTNAM (F3D1H, 2)
initial value: 0800H
contents: pattern name table

MLTCOL (F3D3H, 2)
contents: unused

MLTCGP (F3D5H, 2)
initial value: 0000H
contents: pattern generator table

MLTATR (F3D7H, 2)
initial value: 1B00H
contents: sprite attribute table

MLTPAT (F3D9H, 2)
initial value: 3800H
contents: sprite generator table

* Other screen settings

CLIKSW (F3DBH, 1)
initial value: 1
contents: key click switch (0 = OFF, otherwise = ON), set by
<key click switch> of SCREEN statement

CSRY (F3DCH, 1)
initial value: 1
contents: Y-coordinate of cursor

CSRX (F3DDH, 1)
initial value: 1
contents: X-coordinate of cursor

CNSDFG (F3DEH, 1)
initial value: 0
contents: function key display switch (0 = display, otherwise = no display), set by KEY ON/OFF statement

* Area to save VDP registers

RG0SAV (F3DFH, 1)
initial value: 0

RG1SAV (F3E0H, 1)
initial value: E0H

RG2SAV (F3E1H, 1)
initial value: 0

RG3SAV (F3E2H, 1)
initial value: 0

RG4SAV (F3E3H, 1)
initial value: 0

RG5SAV (F3E4H, 1)
initial value: 0

RG6SAV (F3E5H, 1)
initial value: 0

RG7SAV (F3E6H, 1)
initial value: 0

STATFL (F3E7H, 1)
initial value: 0
contents: stores VDP status (contents of status register 0, in MSX2)

TRGFLG (F3E8H, 1)
initial value: FFH
contents: stores trigger button status of joystick

FORCLR (F3E9H, 1)
initial value: 15
contents: foreground colour; set by colour statement

BAKCLR (F3EAH, 1)
initial value: 4
contents: background colour; set by colour statement

BDRCLR (F3EBH, 1)
initial value: 7
contents: border colour; set by colour statement

MAXUPD (F3ECH, 3)
initial value: JP 0000H (C3H, 00H, 00H)
contents: used by CIRCLE statement internally

MINUPD (F3EFH, 3)
initial value: JP 0000H (C3H, 00H, 00H)
contents: used by CIRCLE statement internally

ATRBYT (F3F2H, 1)
initial value: 15
contents: colour code in using graphics

* Work area for PLAY statement

QUEUES (F3F3H, 2)
initial value: QUETAB (F959H)
contents: points to queue table at the execution of PLAY statement

FRCNEW (F3F5H), 1)
initial value: 255
contents: used by BASIC interpreter internally

* Work area for key input

SCNCNT (F3F6H, 1)
initial value: 1
contents: interval for the key scan

REPCNT (F3F7H, 1)
initial value: 50
contents: delay until the auto-repeat of the key begins

PUTPNT (F3F8H, 2)
initial value: KEYBUF (FBF0H)
contents: points to address to write in the key buffer

GETPNT (F3FAH, 2)
initial value: KEYBUF (FBF0H)
contents: points to address to read from key buffer

* Parameters for Cassette

CS120 (F3FCH, 5*2)

- 1200 baud

contents: 83 (LOW01) Low width representing bit 0
 92 (HIGH01) High width representing bit 0
 38 (LOW11) Low width representing bit 1
 45 (HIGH11) High width representing bit 1
 HEADLEN * 2/256 High bytes (HEADLEN = 2000)
 of header bits for short
 header

- 2400 baud

contents: 37 (LOW02) Low width representing bit 0
 45 (HIGH02) High width representing bit 0
 14 (LOW12) Low width representing bit 1
 22 (HIGH12) High width representing bit 1
 HEADLEN * 4/256 High bytes (HEADLEN = 2000)
 of header bits for short
 header

LOW (F406H, 2)

initial value: LOW01, HIGH01 (by default, 1200 baud)

contents: width of LOW and HIGH which represents bit 0 of current baud
 rate; set by <cassette baud rate> of SCREEN statement

HIGH (F408H, 2)

initial value: LOW11, HIGH11 (by default, 1200 baud)

contents: width of LOW and HIGH which represents bit 1 of current baud
 rate; set by <cassette baud rate> of SCREEN statement

HEADER (F40AH, 1)

initial value: HEADLEN * 2/256 (by default, 1200 baud)

contents: header bit for the short header of current baud rate
 (HEADLEN = 2000); set by <cassette baud rate> of SCREEN
 statement

ASPCT1 (F40BH, 1)

contents: 256/aspect ratio; set by SCREEN statement to use in CIRCLE
 statement

ASPCT2 (F40DH, 1)

contents: 256 * aspect ratio; set by SCREEN statement to use in CIRCLE
 statement

ENDPRG (F40FH, 5)

initial value: ":"

contents: false end of program for RESUME NEXT statement

* Work used by BASIC internally

ERRFLG (F414H, 1)
contents: area to store the error number

LPTPOS (F415H, 1)
initial value: 0
contents: printer head location

PRTFLG (F416H, 1)
contents: flag whether to send to printer

NTMSXP (F417H, 1)
contents: printer (0 = printer for MSX, otherwise not)

RAWPRT (F418H, 1)
contents: non-zero when printing in raw-mode

VLZADR (F419H, 2)
contents: address of character to be replaced by VAL function

VLZDAT (F41BH, 1)
contents: character to be replaced with 0 by VAL function

CURLIN (F41CH, 2)
contents: currently executing line number of BASIC

KBUF (F41FH, 318)
contents: crunch buffer; translated into intermediate language from
BUF (F55EH)

BUFMIN (F55DH, 1)
initial value: ", "
contents: used in INPUT statement

BUF (F55EH, 258)
contents: buffer to store characters typed; where direct statements
are stored in ASCII code

ENDBUF (F660H, 1)
contents: prevents overflow of BUF (F55EH)

TTYPOS (F661H, 1)
contents: virtual cursor location internally retained by BASIC

DIMFLG (F662H, 1)
contents: used by BASIC internally

VALTYP (F663H, 1)
contents: used to identify the type of variable

DORES (F664H, 1)
contents: indicates whether stored word can be crunched

DONUM (F665H, 1)
contents: flag for crunch

CONTXT (F666H, 2)
contents: stores text address used by CHRGET

CONSAV (F668H, 1)
contents: stores token of constant after calling CHRGET

CONTYP (F669H, 1)
contents: type of stored constant

CONLO (F66AH, 8)
contents: value of stored constant

MEMSIZ (F672H, 2)
contents: highest address of memory used by BASIC

STKTOP (F674H, 2)
contents: address used as stack by BASIC; depending on CLEAR statement

TXTTAB (F676H, 2)
contents: starting address of BASIC text area

TEMPPT (F768H, 2)
initial value: TEMPST (F67AH)
contents: starting address of unused area of temporary descriptor

TEMPST (F67AH, 3 * NUMTMP)
contents: area for NUMTEMP

DSCTMP (F698H, 3)
contents: string descriptor which is the result of string function

FRETOP (F69BH, 2)
contents: starting address of unused area of string area

TEMP3 (F69DH, 2)
contents: used for garbage collection or by USR function

TEMP8 (F69FH, 2)
contents: for garbage collection

ENDFOR (F6A1H, 2)
contents: stores next address of FOR statement (to begin execution from
the next of FOR statement at loops)

DATLIN (F6A3H, 2)
contents: line number of DATA statement read by READ statement

SUBFLG (F6A5H, 1)
contents: flag for array for USR function

FLGINP (F6A6H, 1)
contents: flag used in INPUT or READ

TEMP (F6A7H, 2)
contents: location for temporary reservation for statement code; used for variable pointer, text address, and others

PTRFLG (F6A9H, 1)
contents: 0 if there is not a line number to be converted, otherwise not

AUTFLG (F6AAH, 1)
contents: flag for AUTO command validity (non-zero = valid, otherwise invalid)

AUTLIN (F6ABH, 2)
contents: last input line number

AUTINC (F6ADH, 2)
initial value: 10
contents: increment value of line number of AUTO command

SAVTXT (F6AFH, 2)
contents: area to store address of currently executing text; mainly used for error recovery by RESUME statement

ERRLIN (F6B3H, 2)
contents: line number where an error occurred

DOT (F6B5H, 2)
contents: last line number which was displayed in screen or entered

ERRTXT (F6B7H, 2)
 contents: text address which caused an error; mainly used for error recovery by RESUME statement

ONELIN (F6B9H, 2)
 contents: text address to which control jumps at error; set by ON ERROR GOTO statement

ONEFLG (F6BBH, 1)
 contents: flag which indicates error routine execution (non-zero = in execution, otherwise not)

TEMP2 (F6BCH, 2)
 contents: for temporary storage

OLDLIN (F6BEH, 2)
 contents: line number which was terminated by Ctrl+STOP, STOP instruction, END instruction, or was executed last

OLDTXT (F6C0H, 2)
 contents: address to be executed next

VARTAB (F6C2H, 2)
 contents: starting address of simple variable; executing NEW statement causes [contents of TXTTAB(F676H) + 2] to be set

ARYTAB (F6C4H, 2)
 contents: starting address of array table

STREND (F6C6H, 2)
 contents: last address of memory in use as text area or variable area

DATPTR (F6C8H, 2)
 contents: text address of data read by executing READ statement

DEFTBL (F6CAH, 26)
 contents: area to store type of variable for one alphabetical character; depends on type declaration such as CLEAR, DEFSTR,
 !, or #

* Work for user function parameter

PRMSTK (F6E4H, 2)
 contents: previous definition block on stack (for garbage collection)

PRMLEN (F6E6H, 2)

contents: number of bytes of objective data

PARM1 (F6E8H, PRMSIZ)

contents: objective parameter definition table; PRMSIZ is number of
 bytes of definition block, initial value is 100

PRMPRV (F74CH, 2)

initial value: PRMSTK

contents: pointer to previous parameter block (for garbage collection)

PRMLN2 (F74EH, 2)

contents: size of parameter block

PARM2 (F750H, 100)

contents: for parameter storage

PRMFLG (F7B4H, 1)

contents: flag to indicate whether PARM1 was searched

ARYTA2 (F7B5H, 2)

contents: end point of search

NOFUNS (F7B7H, 1)

contents: 0 if there is not an objective function

TEMP9 (F7B8H, 2)

contents: location of temporary storage for garbage collection

FUNACT (F7BAH, 2)

contents: number of objective functions

SWPTMP (F7BCH, 8)

contents: location of temporary storage of the value of the first
 variable of SWAP statement

TRCFLG (F7C4H, 1)

contents: trace flag (non-zero = TRACE ON, 0 = TRACE OFF)

* Work for Math-Pack

FBUFFR (F7C5H, 43)

contents: used internally by Math-Pack

DECTMP (F7F0H, 2)

contents: used to transform decimal integer to floating-point number

DECTM2 (F7F2H, 2)
contents: used at division routine execution

DECCNT (F7F4H, 2)
contents: used at division routine execution

DAC (F7F6H, 16)
contents: area to set the value to be calculated

HOLD8 (F806H, 48)
contents: register storage area for decimal multiplication

HOLD2 (F836H, 8)
contents: used internally by Math-Pack

HOLD (F83EH, 8)
contents: used internally by Math-Pack

ARG (F847H, 16)
contents: area to set the value to be calculated with DAC (F7F6H)

RNDX (F857H, 8)
contents: stores last random number in double precision real number;
set by RND function

* Data area used by BASIC interpreter

MAXFIL (F85FH, 1)
contents: maximum file number; set by MAXFILES statement

FILTAB (F860H, 2)
contents: starting address of file data area

NULBUF (F862H, 2)
contents: points to buffer used in SAVE and LOAD by BASIC interpreter

PTRFIL (F864H, 2)
contents: address of file data of currently accessing file

RUNFLG (F866H, 2)
contents: non-zero value if program was loaded and executed; used
by R option of LOAD statement

FILNAM (F866H, 11)
contents: area to store filename

FILNM2 (F871H, 11)
 contents: area to store filename

NLONLY (F87CH, 1)
 contents: non-zero value if program is being loaded

SAVEND (F87DH, 2)
 contents: end address of assembly language program to be saved

FNKSTR (F87FH, 160)
 contents: area to store function key string (16 character x 10)

CGPNT (F91FH, 3)
 contents: address to store character font on ROM

NAMBAS (F922H, 2)
 contents: base address of current pattern name table

CGPBAS (F924H, 2)
 contents: base address of current pattern generator table

PATBAS (F926H, 2)
 contents: base address of current sprite generator table

ATRBAS (F928H, 2)
 contents: base address of current sprite attribute table

CLOC (F92AH, 2)
 contents: used internally by graphic routine

CMASK (F92CH, 1)
 contents: used internally by graphic routine

MINDEL (F92DH, 1)
 contents: used internally by graphic routine

MAXDEL (F92FH, 2)
 contents: used internally by graphic routine

* Data area used by CIRCLE statement

ASPECT (F931H, 2)
 contents: aspect ratio of the circle; set by <ratio> of CIRCLE statement

CENCNT (F933H, 2)
 contents: used internally by CIRCLE statement

CLINEF (F935H, 1)
 contents: flag whether a line is drawn toward the center; specified
 by <angle> of CIRCLE statement

CNPNTS (F936H, 2)
 contents: point to be plotted

CPLOTF (F938H, 1)
 contents: used internally by CIRCLE statement

CPCNT (F939H, 2)
 contents: number of one eight of the circle

CPNCNT8 (F93BH, 2)
 contents: used internally by CIRCLE statement

CPCSUM (F93DH, 2)
 contents: used internally by CIRCLE statement

CSTCNT (F93FH, 2)
 contents: used internally by CIRCLE statement

CSCLXY (F941H, 1)
 contents: scale of x and y

CSAVEA (F942H, 2)
 contents: reservation area of ADVGRP

CSAVEM (F944H, 1)
 contents: reservation area of ADVGRP

CXOFF (F945H, 2)
 contents: x offset from the center

CYOFF (F947H, 2)
 contents: y offset from the center

* Data area used in PAINT statement

LOHMSK (F949H, 1)
 contents: used internally by PAINT statement

LOHDIR (F94AH, 1)
contents: used internally by PAINT statement

LOHADR (F94BH, 2)
contents: used internally by PAINT statement

LOHCNT (F94DH, 2)
contents: used internally by PAINT statement

SKPCNT (F94FH, 2)
contents: skip count

MIVCNT (F951H, 2)
contents: movement count

PDIREC (F953H, 1)
contents: direction of the paint

LFPROG (F954H, 1)
contents: used internally by PAINT statement

RTPROG (F955H, 1)
contents: used internally by PAINT statement

* Data area used in PLAY statement

MCLTAB (F956H, 2)
contents: points to the top of the table of PLAY macro or DRAW macro

MCLFLG (F958H, 1)
contents: assignment of PLAY/DRAW

QUETAB (F959H, 24)
contents: queue table
+0: PUT offset
+1: GET offset
+2: backup character
+3: queue length
+4: queue address
+5: queue address

QUEBAK (F971H, 4)
contents: used in BCKQ

VOICAQ (F975H, 128)

contents: queue of voice 1 (1 = a)

VOICBQ (F9F5H, 128)
contents: queue of voice 2 (2 = b)

VOICCQ (FA75H, 128)
contents: queue of voice 3 (3 = c)

* Work area added in MSX2

DPPAGE (FAF5H, 1)
contents: display page number

ACPAGE (FAF6H, 1)
contents: active page number

AVCSAV (FAF7H, 1)
contents: reserves AV control port

EXBRSA (FAF8H, 1)
contents: SUB-ROM slot address

CHRCNT (FAF9H, 1)
contents: character counter in the buffer; used in Roman-kana
translation (value is 0 <=n <=2)

ROMA (FAFAH, 2)
contents: area to store character in the buffer; used in Roman-kana
translation (Japan version only)

MODE (FAFCH, 1)
contents: mode switch for VRAM size

(0000WVV0)

|||

|+---- 00 = 16K VRAM

| 01 = 64K VRAM

| 11 = 128K VRAM

|

+----- 1 = mask, 0 = no mask

Flags whether to specify VRAM address
ANDed with 3FFFH in SCREEN 0 to 3;
in SCREEN 4 to 8, never masked

NORUSE (FAFDH, 1)
contents: unused

XSAVE (FAFEH, 2)
contents: [I 0000000 XXXXXXXX]

YSAVE (FB00H, 2)
contents: [x 0000000 YYYYYYYY]

I = 1 lightpen interrupt request
0000000 = unsigned offset
XXXXXXX = X-coordinate
YYYYYYY = Y-coordinate

LOGOPR (FB02H, 1)
contents: logical operation code

* Data area used by RS-232C

RSTMP (FB03H, 50)
contents: work area for RS-232C or disk

TOCNT (FB03H, 1)
contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

RSFCB (FB04H, 2)
contents: FB04H + 0: LOW address of RS-232C
FB04H + 1: HIGH address of RS-232C

RSIQLN (FB06H, 5)
contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

MEXBIH (FB07H, 5)
contents: FB07H +0: RST 30H (0F7H)
FB07H +1: byte data
FB07H +2: (Low)
FB07H +3: (High)
FB07H +4: RET (0C9H)

OLDSTT (FB0CH, 5)
contents: FB0CH +0: RST 30H (0F7H)
FB0CH +1: byte data
FB0CH +2: (Low)
FB0CH +3: (High)
FB0CH +4: RET (0C9H)

OLDINT (FB12H, 5)
contents: FB12H +0: RST 30H (0F7H)
FB12H +1: byte data
FB12H +2: (Low)
FB12H +3: (High)
FB12H +4: RET (0C9H)

DEVNUM (FB17H, 1)
 contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

DATCNT (FB18H, 3)
 contents: FB18H +0: byte data
 FB18H +1: byte pointer
 FB12H +2: byte pointer

ERRORS (FB1BH, 1)
 contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

FLAGS (FB1CH, 1)
 contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

ESTBLS (FB1DH, 1)
 contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

COMMSK (FB1EH, 1)
 contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

LSTCOM (FB1FH, 1)
 contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

LSTMOD (FB20H, 1)
 contents: used internally by RS-232C routine

* Data area used by DOS

reserved (FB21H to FB34H)
 contents: used by DOS

* Data area used by PLAY statement
 (the following is the same as with MSX1)

PRSCNT (FB35H, 1)
 contents: D1 to D0 string parse
 D7 = 0 1 pass

SAVSP (FB36H, 2)
 contents: reserves stack pointer in play

VOICEN (FB38H, 1)
 contents: current interpreted voice

SAVVOL (FB39H, 2)

contents: reserves volume for the pause

MCLLEN (FB3BH, 1)
 contents: used internally by PLAY statement

MCLPTR (FB3CH, 1)
 contents: used internally by PLAY statement

QUEUEN (FB3EH, 1)
 contents: used internally by PLAY statement

MUSICF (FC3FH, 1)
 contents: interrupt flag for playing music

PLYCNT (FB40H, 1)
 contents: number of PLAY statements stored in the queue

* Offset from voice static data area
 (offset is in decimal)

METREX (+0, 2)
 contents: timer count down

VCXLEN (+2, 1)
 contents: MCLLEN for this voice

VCXPTR (+3, 2)
 contents: MCLPTR for this voice

VCXSTP (+5, 2)
 contents: reserves the top of the stack pointer

QLENGX (+7, 1)
 contents: number of bytes stored in the queue

NTICSX (+8, 2)
 contents: new count down

TONPRX (+10, 2)
 contents: area to set tone period

AMPPRX (+12, 1)
 contents: discrimination of volume and enveloppe

ENVPRX (+13, 2)

contents: area to set envelope period

OCTAVX (+15, 1)

contents: area to set octave

NOTELX (+16, 1)

contents: area to set tone length

TEMPOX (+17, 1)

contents: area to set tempo

VOLUMX (+18, 1)

contents: area to set volume

ENVLPX (+19, 14)

contents: area to set envelope wave form

MCLSTX (+33, 3)

contents: reservation area of stack

MCLSEX (+36, 1)

contents: initialisation stack

VCBSIZ (+37, 1)

contents: static buffer size

* Voice static data area

VCBA (FB41H, 37)

contents: static data for voice 0

VCBB (FB66H, 37)

contents: static data for voice 1

VCBC (FB8BH, 37)

contents: static data for voice 2

* Data area

ENSTOP (FBB0H, 1)

contents: flag to enable warm start by [SHIFT+Ctrl+Kana key]
(0 = disable, otherwise enable)

BASROM (FBB1H, 1)

contents: indicates BASIC text location (0 = on RAM, otherwise in ROM)

LINTTB (FBB2H, 24)
 contents: line terminal table; area to keep information about each line of text screen

FSTPOS (FBCAH, 2)
 contents: first character location of line from INLIN (00B1H) of BIOS

CODSAV (FBCCH, 1)
 contents: area to reserve the character where the cursor is stacked

FNKSW1 (FBCDH, 1)
 contents: indicates which function key is displayed at KEY ON
 (1 = F1 to F5 is displayed, 0 = F6 to F10 is displayed)

FNKFLG (FBCEH, 10)
 contents: area to allow, inhibit, or stop the execution of the line defined in ON KEY GOSUB statement, or to reserve it for each function key; set by KEY(n)ON/OFF/STOP statement
 (0 = KEY(n)OFF/STOP, 1= KEY(n)ON)

ONGSBF (FBD8H, 1)
 contents: flag to indicate whether event waiting in TRPTBL (FC4CH) occurred

CLIKFL (FBD9H, 1)
 contents: key click flag

OLDKEY (FBDAH, 11)
 contents: key matrix status (old)

NEWKEY (FBE5H, 11)
 contents: key matrix status (new)

KEYBUF (FBF0H, 40)
 contents: key code buffer

LINWRK (FC18H, 40)
 contents: temporary reservation location used by screen handler

PATWRK (FC40H, 8)
 contents: temporary reservation location used by pattern converter

BOTTOM (FC48H, 2)
 contents: installed RAM starting (low) address; ordinarily 8000H in MSX2

HIMEM (FC4AH, 2)
 contents: highest address of available memory; set by <memory upper limit> of CLEAR statement

TRAPTBL (FC4CH, 78)
 contents: trap table used to handle interrupt; one table consists of three bytes, where first byte indicates ON/OFF/STOP status and the rest indicate the text address to be jumped to

FC4CH to FC69H	(3 * 10 bytes)	used in ON KEY GOSUB
FC6AH to FC6CH	(3 * 1 byte)	used in ON STOP GOSUB
FC6DH to FC6FH	(3 * 1 byte)	used in ON SPRITE GOSUB
FC70H to FC7EH	(3 * 5 bytes)	used in ON STRIG GOSUB
FC7FH to FC81H	(3 * 1 byte)	used in ON INTERVAL GOSUB
FC82H to FC99H		for expansion

RTYCNT (FC9AH, 1)
 contents: used internally by BASIC

INTFLG (FC9BH, 1)
 contents: if Ctrl+STOP is pressed, setting 03H here causes a stop

PADY (FC9CH, 1)
 contents: Y-coordinate of the paddle)

PADX (FC9DH, 1)
 contents: X-coordinate of the paddle)

JIFFY (FC9EH, 2)
 contents: used internally by PLAY statement

INTVAL (FCA0H, 2)
 contents: interval period; set by ON INTERVAL GOSUB statement

INTCNT (FCA2H, 2)
 contents: counter for interval

LOWLIM (FCA4H, 1)
 contents: used during reading from cassette tape

WINWID (FCA5H, 1)
 contents: used during reading from cassette tape

GRPHED (FCA6H, 1)
 contents: flag to send graphic character (1 = graphic character, 0 = normal character)

ESCCNT (FCA7H, 1)

contents: area to count from escape code

INSFLG (FCA8H, 1)
contents: flag to indicate insert mode (0 = normal mode,
otherwise = insert mode)

CSRSW (FCA9H, 1)
contents: whether cursor is displayed (0 = no, otherwise = yes);
set by <cursor swicth> of LOCATE statement

CSTYLE (FCAAH, 1)
contents: cursor shape (0 = block, otherwise = underline)

CAPST (FCABH, 1)
contents: CAPS key status (0 = CAP OFF, otherwise = CAP ON)

KANAST (FCACH, 1)
contents: kana key status (0 = kana OFF, otherwise = kana ON)

KANAMD (FCADH, 1)
contents: kana key arrangement status (0 = 50-sound arrangement,
otherwise = JIS arrangement)

FLBMEM (FCAEH, 1)
contents: 0 when loading BASIC program

SCRMOD (FCAFH, 1)
contents: current screen mode number

OLDSCR (FCB0H, 1)
contents: screen mode reservation area

CASPRV (FCB1H, 1)
contents: character reservation area used by CAS:

BRDATR (FCB2H, 1)
contents: border colour code used by PAINT; set by <border colour>
in PAINT statement

GXPOS (FCB3H, 2)
contents: X-coordinate

GYPOS (FCB5H, 2)
contents: Y-coordinate

GRPACX (FCB7H, 2)
contents: graphic accumulator (X-coordinate)

GRPACY (FCB9H, 2)
 contents: graphic accumulator (Y-coordinate)

DRWFLG (FCBBH, 1)
 contents: flag used in DRAW statement

DRWSCL (FCBCH, 1)
 contents: DRAW scaling factor (0 = no scaling, otherwise = scaling)

DRWANG (FCBDH, 1)
 contents: angle at DRAW

RUNBNF (FCBEH, 1)
 contents: flag to indicate BLOAD in progress, BSAVE in progress,
 or neither

SAVENT (FCBFH, 2)
 contents: starting address of BSAVE

EXPTBL (FCC1H, 4)
 contents: flag table for expansion slot; whether the slot is expanded

SLTTBL (FCC5H, 4)
 contents: current slot selection status for each expansion slot
 register

SLTATR (FCC9H, 64)
 contents: reserves attribute for each slot

SLTWRK (FD09H, 128)
 contents: allocates specific work area for each slot

PROCNM (FD89H, 16)
 contents: stores name of expanded statement (after CALL statement) or
 expansion device (after OPEN); 0 indicates the end

DEVICE (FD99H, 1)
 contents: used to identify cartridge device

* Hooks

H.KEYI (FD9AH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO interrupt handling
 purpose: adds the interrupt operation such as RS-232C

H.TIMI (FD9FH)
 meaning: MSXIO timer interrupt handling
 purpose: adds the timer interrupt handling

H.CHPH (FDA4H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO CHPUT (one character output)
 purpose: connects other console device

H.DSPC (FDA9H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO DSPCSR (cursor display)
 purpose: connects other console device

H.ERAC (FDAEH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO ERACSR (erase cursor)
 purpose: connects other console device

H.DSPF (FDB3H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO DSPFNK (function key display)
 purpose: connects other console device

H.ERAF (FDB8H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO ERAFNK (erase function key)
 purpose: connects other console device

H.TOTE (FDBDH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO TOTEXT (set screen in text mode)
 purpose: connects other console device

H.CHGE (FDC2H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO CHGET (get one character)
 purpose: connects other console device

H.INIP (FDC7H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO INIPAT (character pattern initialisation)
 purpose: uses other character set

H.KEYC (FDCCH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO KEYCOD (key code translation)
 purpose: uses other key arrangement

H.KYEA (FDD1H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO NMI routine (Key Easy)
 purpose: uses other key arrangement

H.NMI (FDD6H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO NMI (non-maskable interrupt)
 purpose: handles NMI

H.PINL (FDDBH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXIO PINLIN (one line input)
 purpose: uses other console input device or other input method

H.QINL (FDE0H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXINL QINLIN (one line input displaying "?")
 purpose: uses other console input device or other input method

H.INLI (FDE5H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXINL INLIN (one line input)
 purpose: uses other console input device or other input method

H.ONGO (FDEAH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS INGOTP (ON GOTO)
 purpose: uses other interrupt handling device

H.DSKO (FDEFH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS DSKO\$ (disk output)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.SETS (FDF4H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS SETS (set attribute)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.NAME (FDF9H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS NAME (rename)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.KILL (FDFEH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS KILL (delete file)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.IPL (FE03H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS IPL (initial program loading)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.COPY (FE08H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS COPY (file copy)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.CMD (FE0DH)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS CMD (expanded command)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.DSKF (FE12H)
 meaning: beginning of MSXSTS DSKF (unusde disk space)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.DSKI (FE17H)

meaning: beginning of MSXSTS DSKI (disk input)
purpose: connects disk device

H.ATTR (FE1CH)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS ATTR\$ (attribute)
purpose: connects disk device

H.LSET (FE21H)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS LSET (left-padded assignment)
purpose: connects disk device

H.RSET (FE26H)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS RSET (right-padded assignment)
purpose: connects disk device

H.FIEL (FE2BH)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS FIELD (field)
purpose: connects disk device

H.MKI\$ (FE30H)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS MKI\$ (create integer)
purpose: connects disk device

H.MKS\$ (FE35H)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS MKS\$ (create single precision real)
purpose: connects disk device

H.MKD\$ (FE3AH)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS MKD\$ (create double precision real)
purpose: connects disk device

H.CVI (FE3FH)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS CVI (convert integer)
purpose: connects disk device

H.CVS (FE44H)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS CVS (convert single precision real)
purpose: connects disk device

H.CVD (FE49H)
meaning: beginning of MSXSTS CVS (convert double precision real)
purpose: connects disk device

H.GETP (FE4EH)
meaning: SPDSK GETPTR (get file pointer)
purpose: connects disk device

H.SETF (FE53H)
meaning: SPCDSK SETFIL (set file pointer)

purpose: connects disk device

H.NOFO (FE58H)

meaning: SPDSK NOFOR (OPEN statement without FOR)
purpose: connects disk device

H.NULO (FE5DH)

meaning: SPDSK NULOPN (open unused file)
purpose: connects disk device

H.NTFL (FE62H)

meaning: SPDSK NTFLO (file number is not 0)
purpose: connects disk device

H.MERG (FE67H)

meaning: SPDSK MERGE (program file merge)
purpose: connects disk device

H.SAVE (FE6CH)

meaning: SPDSK SAVE (save)
purpose: connects disk device

H.BINS (FE71H)

meaning: SPDSK BINSAB (save in binary)
purpose: connects disk device

H.BINL (FE76H)

meaning: SPDSK BINLOD (load in binary)
purpose: connects disk device

H.FILE (FD7BH)

meaning: SPDSK FILES (display filename)
purpose: connects disk device

H.DGET (FE80H)

meaning: SPDSK DGET (disk GET)
purpose: connects disk device

H.FILO (FE85H)

meaning: SPDSK FILOU1 (file output)
purpose: connects disk device

H.INDS (FE8AH)

meaning: SPDSK INDSKC (disk attribute input)
purpose: connects disk device

H.RSLF (FE8FH)

meaning: SPDSK; re-select previous drive
purpose: connects disk device

H.SAVD (FE94H)
 meaning: SPCDSK; reserve current disk
 purpose: connects disk device

H.LOC (FE99H)
 meaning: SPCDSK LOC function (indicate location)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.LOF (FE9EH)
 meaning: SPCDSK LOC function (file length)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.EOF (FEA3H)
 meaning: SPCDSK EOF function (end of file)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.FPOS (FEA8H)
 meaning: SPCDSK FPOS function (file location)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.BAKU (FEADH)
 meaning: SPCDSK BAKUPT (backup)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.PARD (FEB2H)
 meaning: SPCDEV PARDEV (get peripheral name)
 purpose: expands logical device name

H.NODE (FEB7H)
 meaning: SPCDEV NODEVN (no device name)
 purpose: sets default device name to other device

H.POSD (FEBCH)
 meaning: SPCDEV POSDSK
 purpose: connects disk device

H.DEVN (FEC1H)
 meaning: SPCDEV DEVNAM (process device name)
 purpose: expands logical device name

H.GEND (FEC6H)
 meaning: SPCDEV GENDSP (FEC6H)
 purpose: expands logical device name

H.RUNC (FECBH)
 meaning: BIMISC RUNC (clear for RUN)

H.CLEAR (FED0H)
 meaning: BIMISC CLEARC (clear for CLEAR statement)

H.LOPD (FED5H)
 meaning: BIMISC LOPDFT (set loop and default value)
 purpose: uses other default value for variable

H.STKE (FEDAH)
 meaning: BIMISC STKERR (stack error)

H.ISFL (FEDFH)
 meaning: BIMISC ISFLIO (file input-output or not)

H.OUTD (FEE4H)
 meaning: BIO OUTDO (execute OUT)

H.CRDO (FEE9H)
 meaning: BIO CRDO (execute CRLF)

H.DSKC (FEEEH)
 meaning: BIO DSKCHI (input disk attribute)

H.DOGR (FEF3H)
 meaning: GENGRP DOGRPH (execute graphic operation)

H.PRGE (FEF8H)
 meaning: BINTRP PRGEND (program end)

H.ERRP (FEFDH)
 meaning: BINTRP ERRPTR (error display)

H.ERRF (FF02H)
 meaning: BINTRP

H.READ (FF07H)
 meaning: BINTRP READY

H.MAIN (FF0CH)
 meaning: BINTRP MAIN

H.DIRD (FF11H)
 meaning: BINTRP DIRDO (execute direct statement)

H.FINI (FF16H)
 meaning: BINTRP

H.FINE (FF1BH)
meaning: BINTRP

H.CRUN (FF20H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.CRUN (FF20H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.CRUS (FF25H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.ISRE (FF2AH)
meaning: BINTRP

H.NTFN (FF2FH)
meaning: BINTRP

H.NOTR (FF34H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.SNGF (FF39H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.NEWS (FF3EH)
meaning: BINTRP

H.GONE (FF43H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.CHRG (FF48H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.RETU (FF4DH)
meaning: BINTRP

H.PRTF (FF52H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.COMP (FF57H)
meaning: BINTRP

H.FINP (FF5CH)
meaning: BINTRP

H.TRMN (FF61H)

meaning:	BINTRP
H.FRME (FF66H)	
meaning:	BINTRP
H.NTPL (FF6BH)	
meaning:	BINTRP
H.EVAL (FF70H)	
meaning:	BINTRP
H.OKNO (FF75H)	
meaning:	BINTRP
H.FING (FF7AH)	
meaning:	BINTRP
H.ISMI (FF7FH)	
meaning:	BINTRP ISMID\$ (MID\$ or not)
H.WIDT (FF84H)	
meaning:	BINTRP WIDTHS (WIDTH)
H.LIST (FF89H)	
meaning:	BINTRP LIST
H.BUFL (FF8EH)	
meaning:	BINTRP BUFLIN (buffer line)
H.FRQI (FF93H)	
meaning:	BINTRP FRQINT
H.SCNE (FF98H)	
meaning:	BINTRP
H.FRET (FF9DH)	
meaning:	BINTRP FRETMP
H.PTRG (FFA2H)	
meaning:	BIPTRG PTRGET (get pointer)
purpose:	uses variable other than default value
H.PHYD (FFA7H)	
meaning:	MSXIO PHYDIO (physical disk input-output)
purpose:	connects disk device

H.FORM (FFACH)
 meaning: MSXIO FORMAT (format disk)
 purpose: connects disk device

H.ERRO (FFB1H)
 meaning: BINTRP ERROR
 purpose: error handling for application program

H.LPTO (FFB6H)
 meaning: MSXIO LPTOUT (printer output)
 purpose: uses printer other than default value

H.LPTS (FFBBH)
 meaning: MSXIO LPTSTT (printer status)
 purpose: uses printer other than default value

H.SCRE (FFC0H)
 meaning: MSXSTS SCREEN statement entry
 purpose: expands SCREEN statement

H.PLAY (FFC5H)
 meaning: MSXSTS PLAY statement entry
 purpose: expands PLAY statement

* For expanded BIOS

FCALL (FFCAH)
 contents: hook used by expanded BIOS

DISINT (FFCFH)
 contents: used by DOS

ENAINIT (FFD4H)
 contents: used by DOS

=====

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 5:

- The original VRAM mapping figures have been converted to simple text tables.
- In SCREEN 0 (WIDTH 80) map, different end addresses for the blink table are indicated for 24 lines mode and 26.5 lines mode.

APPENDIX 5 - VRAM MAP

* SCREEN 0 (WIDTH 40) / TEXT 1

0000H	- 03BFH	-->	Pattern name table
0400H	- 042FH	-->	Palette table
0800H	- 0FFFH	-->	Pattern generator table

* SCREEN 0 (WIDTH 80) / TEXT 2

0000H	- 077FH	-->	Pattern name table
0800H	- 08EFH	-->	Blink table (24 lines mode)
	090DH		(26.5 lines mode)
0F00H	- 0F2FH	-->	Palette table
1000H	- 17FFH	-->	Pattern generator table

* SCREEN 1 / GRAPHIC 1

0000H	- 07FFH	-->	Pattern generator table
1800H	- 1AFFH	-->	Pattern name table
1B00H	- 1B7FH	-->	Sprite attribute table
2000H	- 201FH	-->	Colour table
2020H	- 204FH	-->	Palette table
3800H	- 3FFFH	-->	Sprite generator table

* SCREEN 2 / GRAPHIC 2

0000H	- 07FFH	-->	Pattern generator table 1
0800H	- 0FFFH	-->	Pattern generator table 2
1000H	- 17FFH	-->	Pattern generator table 3
1800H	- 18FFH	-->	Pattern name table 1
1900H	- 19FFH	-->	Pattern name table 2
1A00H	- 1AFFH	-->	Pattern name table 3
1B00H	- 1B7FH	-->	Sprite attribute table
1B80H	- 1BAFH	-->	Palette table
2000H	- 27FFH	-->	Colour table 1
2800H	- 2FFFH	-->	Colour table 2
3000H	- 37FFH	-->	Colour table 3
3800H	- 3FFFH	-->	Sprite generator table

* SCREEN 3 / MULTI COLOUR

0000H	- 07FFH	-->	Pattern generator table
0800H	- 0AFFH	-->	Pattern name table
1B00H	- 1B7FH	-->	Sprite attribute table
2020H	- 204FH	-->	Palette table
3800H	- 3FFFH	-->	Sprite generator table

* SCREEN 4 / GRAPHIC 3

0000H	- 07FFH	-->	Pattern generator table 1
0800H	- 0FFFH	-->	Pattern generator table 2
1000H	- 17FFH	-->	Pattern generator table 3
1800H	- 18FFH	-->	Pattern name table 1

1900H - 19FFH	-->	Pattern name table 2
1A00H - 1AFFH	-->	Pattern name table 3
1B80H - 1BAFH	-->	Palette table
1C00H - 1DFFH	-->	Sprite colour table
1E00H - 1E7FH	-->	Sprite attribute table
2000H - 27FFH	-->	Colour table 1
2800H - 2FFFH	-->	Colour table 2
3000H - 37FFH	-->	Colour table 3
3800H - 3FFFH	-->	Sprite generator table

* SCREEN 5, 6 / GRAPHIC 4, 5

0000H - 5FFFH	-->	Pattern name table (192 lines)
69FFH		(212 lines)
7400H - 75FFH	-->	Sprite colour table
7600H - 767FH	-->	Sprite attribute table
7680H - 76AFH	-->	Palette table
7A00H - 7FFFH	-->	Sprite generator table

* SCREEN 7, 8 / GRAPHIC 6, 7

0000H - BFFFH	-->	Pattern name table (192 lines)
D3FFH		(212 lines)
F000H - F7FFH	-->	Sprite generator table
F800H - F9FFH	-->	Sprite colour table
FA00H - FA7FH	-->	Sprite attribute table
FA80H - FAAFH	-->	Palette table

=====

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 6:

none

=====

APPENDIX 6 - I/O MAP

00H to 3FH	user defined
40H to 7FH	reserved
80H to 87H	for RS-232C
80H	8251 data
81H	8251 status/command
82H	status read/interrupt mask
83H	unused
84H	8253
85H	8253
86H	8253
87H	8253
88H to 8BH	VDP (9938) I/O port for MSX1 adaptor
	This is V9938 I/O for MSX1. To access VDP directly,

	examine 06H and 07H of MAIN-ROM to confirm the port address
8CH to 8DH	for the modem
8EH to 8FH	reserved
90H to 91H	printer port
90H	bit 0: strobe output (write)
	bit 1: status input (read)
91H	data to be printed
92H to 97H	reserved
98H to 9BH	for MSX2 VDP (V9938)
98H	VRAM access
99H	command register access
9AH	palette register access (write only)
9BH	register pointer (write only)
9CH to 9FH	reserved
A0H to A3H	sound generator (AY-3-8910)
A0H	address latch
A1H	data read
A2H	data write
A4H to A7H	reserved
A8H to ABH	parallel port (8255)
A8H	port A
A9H	port B
AAH	port C
ABH	mode set
ACH to AFH	MSX engine (one chip MSX I/O)
B0H to B3H	expansion memory (SONY specification) (8255)
A8H	port A, address (A0 to A7)
A9H	port B, address (A8 to A10, A13 to A15), control R/"
AAH	port C, address (A11 to A12), data (D0 - D7)
ABH	mode set
B4H to B5H	CLOCK-IC (RP-5C01)
B4H	address latch
B5H	data
B6H to B7H	reserved
B8H to BBH	lightpen control (SANYO specification)
B8H	read/write
B9H	read/write
BAH	read/write
BBH	write only
BCH to BFH	VHD control (JVC) (8255)
BCH	port A
BDH	port B
BEH	port C
C0H to C1H	MSX-Audio

C2H to C7H	reserved
C8H to CFH	MSX interface
D0H to D7H	floppy disk controller (FDC) The floppy disk controller can be interrupted by an external signal. Interrupt is possible only when the FDC is accessed. Thus, the system can treat different FDC interfaces.
D8 to D9H	kanji ROM (TOSHIBA specification)
D8H	b5-b0 lower address (write only)
D9H	b5-b0 upper address (write)
	b7-b0 data (read)
DAH to DBH	for future kanji expansion
DCH to F4H	reserved
F5H	system control (write only) setting bit to 1 enables available I/O devices
b0	kanji ROM
b1	reserved for kanji
b2	MSX-AUDIO
b3	superimpose
b4	MSX interface
b5	RS-232C
b6	lightpen
b7	CLOCK-IC (only on MSX2)
	Bits to void the conflict between internal I/O devices or those connected by cartridge. The bits can disable the internal devices. When BIOS is initialised, internal devices are valid if no external devices are connected. Applications may not write to or read from here.
F8H	colour bus I/O
F7H	A/V control
b0	audio R mixing ON (write)
b1	audio L mixing OFF (write)
b2	select video input 2lp RGB (write)
b3	detect video input no input (read)
b4	AV control TV (write)
b5	Ym control TV (write)
b6	inverse of bit 4 of VDP register 9 (write)
b7	inverse of bit 5 of VDP register 9 (write)
F8H to FBH	reserved
FCH to FFH	memory mapper

=====

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 8:

none

APPENDIX 8 - CONTROL CODES

Code (dec)	Code (hex)	Function	Corresponding key(s)
0	00H		CTRL + @
1	01H	header at input/output of graphic characters	CTRL + A
2	02H	move cursor to the top of the previous word	CTRL + B
3	03H	end the input-waiting state	CTRL + C
4	04H		CTRL + D
5	05H	delete below cursor	CTRL + E
6	06H	move cursor to the top of the next word	CTRL + F
7	07H	speaker output (same as the BEEP statement)	CTRL + G
8	08H	delete a character before cursor	CTRL + H or BS
9	09H	move to next horizontal tab stop	CTRL + I or TAB
10	0AH	line feed	CTRL + J
11	0BH	home cursor	CTRL + K or HOME
12	0CH	clear screen and home cursor	CTRL + L or CLS
13	0DH	carriage return	CTRL + M or RETURN
14	0EH	move cursor to the end of line	CTRL + N
15	0FH		CTRL + O
16	10H		CTRL + P
17	11H		CTRL + Q
18	12H	insert mode ON/OFF	CTRL + R or INS
19	13H		CTRL + S
20	14H		CTRL + T
21	15H	delete one line from screen	CTRL + U
22	16H		CTRL + V

| 23	| 17H	|	| CTRL + W	|
| 24	| 18H	|	| CTRL + X or SELECT	|
| 25	| 19H	|	| CTRL + Y	|
| 26	| 1AH	|	| CTRL + Z	|
| 27	| 1BH	|	| CTRL + [or ESC	|
| 28	| 1CH	| move cursor right	| CTRL + \ or RIGHT	|
| 29	| 1DH	| move cursor left	| CTRL +] or LEFT	|
| 30	| 1EH	| move cursor up	| CTRL + ^ or UP	|
| 31	| 1FH	| move cursor down	| CTRL + _ or DOWN	|
| 127	| 7FH	| delete character under cursor	| DEL	|

=====

==

Changes from the original in APPENDIX 10:

none

==

APPENDIX 10 - ESCAPE SEQUENCES

* Cursor movement

```
<ESC> A      move cursor up
<ESC> B      move cursor down
<ESC> C      move cursor right
<ESC> D      move cursor left
<ESC> H      move cursor home
<ESC> Y <Y-coordinate+20H> <X-coordinate+20H>
              move cursor to (X, Y)
```

* Edit, delete

```
<ESC> j      clear screen
<ESC> E      clear screen
<ESC> K      delete to end of line
<ESC> J      delete to end of screen
<ESC> L      insert one line
<ESC> M      delete one line
```

* Miscellaneous

```
<ESC> x4      set block cursor
```


<ESC> x5 hide cursor
<ESC> y4 set underline cursor
<ESC> y5 display cursor

=====

APPENDIX 7 - CARTRIDGE HARDWARE

and

APPENDIX 9 - CHARACTER SET

are not available here